

## A

My name is Lisa.

I'm 22.

I'm not married.

I'm American.  
I'm from Chicago.

My favorite color is blue.

I'm a student.

My favorite sports are tennis and swimming.

My father is a doctor, and my mother is a journalist.

I'm interested in art.



LISA

## B

## Positive

I	am	(I'm)
he		(he's)
she	is	(she's)
it		(it's)
we		(we're)
you	are	(you're)
they		(they're)

## Negative

I	am not	(I'm not)
he		(he's not or he isn't)
she	is not	(she's not or she isn't)
it		(it's not or it isn't)
we		(we're not or we aren't)
you	are not	(you're not or you aren't)
they		(they're not or they aren't)

- I'm cold. Can you close the window, please?
- I'm 32 years old. My sister is 29.
- My brother is very tall. He's a policeman.
- John is afraid of dogs.
- It's ten o'clock. You're late again.
- Mei Lan and I are good friends.
- Your keys are on the table.
- I'm tired, but I'm not hungry.
- Tom isn't interested in politics. He's interested in music.
- Jessica isn't at home right now. She's at work.
- Those people aren't Canadian. They're Australian.
- It's sunny today, but it isn't warm.

I'm afraid of dogs.



## C

that's = that is    there's = there is    here's = here is

- Thank you. That's very kind of you.
- Look! There's Chris.
- "Here's your key." "Thank you."



# Exercises

## 1.1 Write the short form (*she's* / *we aren't*, etc.).

1. she is she's
2. they are \_\_\_\_\_
3. it is not \_\_\_\_\_
4. that is \_\_\_\_\_
5. I am not \_\_\_\_\_
6. you are not \_\_\_\_\_

## 1.2 Write *am*, *is*, or *are*.

1. The weather is nice today.
2. I am not tired.
3. This bag \_\_\_\_\_ heavy.
4. These bags \_\_\_\_\_ heavy.
5. Look! There \_\_\_\_\_ Carol.
6. My brother and I \_\_\_\_\_ good tennis players.
7. Amy \_\_\_\_\_ at home. Her children \_\_\_\_\_ at school.
8. I \_\_\_\_\_ a taxi driver. My sister \_\_\_\_\_ a nurse.

## 1.3 Write complete sentences. Use *is/ isn't/ are/ aren't*.

1. (your shoes very dirty) Your shoes are very dirty.
2. (my brother a teacher) My \_\_\_\_\_.
3. (this house not very big) \_\_\_\_\_.
4. (the stores not open today) \_\_\_\_\_.
5. (my keys in my bag) \_\_\_\_\_.
6. (Jenny 18 years old) \_\_\_\_\_.

## 1.4 Look at Lisa's sentences (Section A). Write sentences about yourself.

1. (name?) My \_\_\_\_\_.
2. (from?) I \_\_\_\_\_.
3. (age?) I \_\_\_\_\_.
4. (job?) I \_\_\_\_\_.
5. (married?) I \_\_\_\_\_.
6. (favorite color or colors?) My \_\_\_\_\_.
7. (interested in?) I \_\_\_\_\_.

## 1.5 Write sentences for the pictures. Use these words:

afraid angry cold hot hungry thirsty



1. He's thirsty.
2. They \_\_\_\_\_.
3. He \_\_\_\_\_.
4. \_\_\_\_\_.
5. \_\_\_\_\_.
6. \_\_\_\_\_.

## 1.6 Write true sentences, positive or negative. Use *am / am not / is / isn't / are / aren't*.

1. (I / interested in politics) I'm interested in politics. OR I'm not interested in politics.
2. (I / hungry) I \_\_\_\_\_.
3. (it / warm today) It \_\_\_\_\_.
4. (I / afraid of dogs) \_\_\_\_\_.
5. (my hands / cold) \_\_\_\_\_.
6. (Canada / a very big country) \_\_\_\_\_.
7. (I / interested in soccer) \_\_\_\_\_.
8. (Tokyo / in China) \_\_\_\_\_.

# Am/is/are (Questions)

## A

## Positive

I	am
he	
she	is
it	
we	
you	are
they	

## Question

am	I?
	he?
is	she?
	it?
	we?
are	you?
	they?



What's your name?

David.

Are you married?

No, I'm single.

How old are you?

25.

Are you a student?

Yes, I am.



DAVID

- "Am I late?" "No, you're on time."
- "Is your mother at home?" "No, she's out."
- "Are your parents at home?" "No, they're out."
- "Is it cold in your room?" "Yes, a little."
- Your shoes are nice. Are they new?

We say:

- Is she at home? / Is your mother at home? (*not* Is at home your mother?)
- Are they new? / Are your shoes new? (*not* Are new your shoes?)

## B

Where ... ? / What ... ? / Who ... ? / How ... ? / Why ... ?

- Where is your mother? Is she at home?
- "Where are you from?" "Canada."
- "What color is your car?" "It's red."
- "How old is Joe?" "He's 24."
- "How are your parents?" "They're fine."
- "Why are you angry?" "Because you're late."
- "How much are these postcards?" "Fifty cents."

where's = where is    what's = what is    who's = who is    how's = how is

- Where's Sarah?
- What's the temperature?
- Who's that man?
- How's your father?

## C

Short answers

Yes,	I	am.
	he	
	she	is.
	it	
	we	
	you	are.
	they	

No,	I'm	
	he's	
	she's	
	it's	not.
	we're	
	you're	
	they're	

or

No,	he	
	she	isn't.
	it	
	we	
	you	aren't.
	they	

That's my seat.

No, it isn't.



- "Are you tired?" "Yes, I am."
- "Are you hungry?" "No, I'm not, but I'm thirsty."
- "Is your friend Japanese?" "Yes, he is."
- "Are these your keys?" "Yes, they are."
- "That's my seat." "No, it isn't."

## 2.1 Find the right answers for the questions.

- |                            |                        |             |
|----------------------------|------------------------|-------------|
| 1. Where's the camera?     | a) Toronto.            | 1. <u>g</u> |
| 2. Is your car blue?       | b) No, I'm not.        | 2. _____    |
| 3. Is Nicole from Boston?  | c) Yes, you are.       | 3. _____    |
| 4. Am I late?              | d) My sister.          | 4. _____    |
| 5. Where's Anne from?      | e) Black.              | 5. _____    |
| 6. What color is your bag? | f) No, it's black.     | 6. _____    |
| 7. Are you hungry?         | g) In your bag.        | 7. _____    |
| 8. Who's that woman?       | h) No, she's Canadian. | 8. _____    |

## 2.2 Write questions. Use *is* or *are*.

- (at home / your mother?) Is your mother at home?
- (interesting / your job?) \_\_\_\_\_
- (the stores / open today?) \_\_\_\_\_
- (interested in sports / you?) \_\_\_\_\_
- (near here / the post office?) \_\_\_\_\_
- (at school / your children?) \_\_\_\_\_
- (why / you / late?) \_\_\_\_\_

## 2.3 Write questions. Use *What/Who/Where/How . . . ?*. Read the answers first.

- |                                      |                             |
|--------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. <u>How are</u> your parents?      | They're fine.               |
| 2. _____ the bus stop?               | At the end of the block.    |
| 3. _____ your children?              | Five, six, and ten.         |
| 4. _____ these oranges?              | Seventy-nine cents a pound. |
| 5. _____ your favorite sport?        | Skiing.                     |
| 6. _____ the man in this photograph? | That's my father.           |
| 7. _____ your new shoes?             | Black.                      |

## 2.4 Write questions. Read the answers first.

- |                                     |                     |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------|
| 1. (name?) <u>What's your name?</u> | Paul.               |
| 2. (married or single?) _____       | I'm married.        |
| 3. (Australian?) _____              | No, I'm Canadian.   |
| 4. (how old?) _____                 | I'm 30.             |
| 5. (a lawyer?) _____                | No, I'm a teacher.  |
| 6. (wife a teacher?) _____          | No, she's a lawyer. |
| 7. (from?) _____                    | She's Mexican.      |
| 8. (her name?) _____                | Ana.                |
| 9. (how old?) _____                 | She's 27.           |

## 2.5 Write true short answers (*Yes, I am.* / *No, he isn't.*, etc.).

- |   |                               |
|---|-------------------------------|
| 1. Are you married? <u>No, I'm not.</u> | 4. Are your hands cold? _____ |
| 2. Are you thirsty? _____               | 5. Is it dark now? _____      |
| 3. Is it cold today? _____              | 6. Are you a teacher? _____   |



# I am doing (Present Continuous)

A



She's eating.  
She isn't reading.



It's raining.  
The sun isn't shining.



They're running.  
They aren't walking.

The *present continuous* is **am/is/are + doing/eating/running/writing**, etc.

I	am (not)	-ing
he	is (not)	
she		
it		
we	are (not)	
you		
they		

- I'm working. I'm not watching TV.
- Chris is taking a bath.
- She isn't eating. (or She's not eating.)
- The phone is ringing.
- We're having dinner.
- You're not listening to me. (or You aren't listening to me.)
- The children are doing their homework.

B

**am/is/are + -ing** = something is happening *now*

I'm working  
she's wearing a hat  
they're playing football  
I'm not watching television

*past*

*now*

*future*

- Please be quiet. I'm working. (= I'm working now)
- Look at Michiko! She's wearing her new hat. (= she is wearing it now)
- The weather is nice. It's not raining.
- "Where are the children?" "They're playing in the park."
- (on the phone) We're having dinner now. Can you call back later?
- You can turn off the television. I'm not watching it.

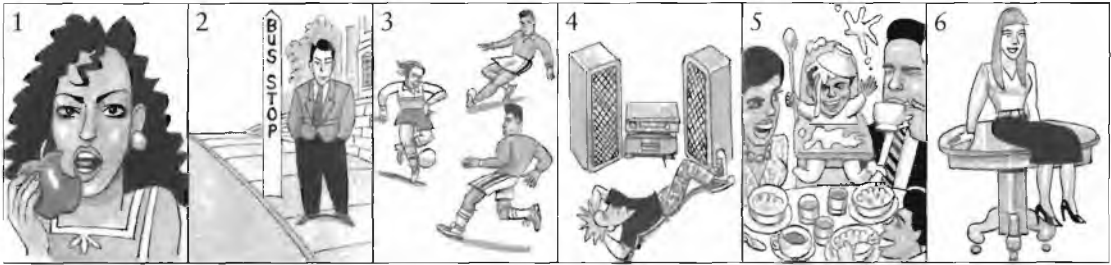
*Spelling* (see Appendix 5)

come → coming    write → writing    dance → dancing  
run → running    sit → sitting    swim → swimming  
lie → lying

# Exercises

## 3.1 What are these people doing? Use these verbs to complete the sentences:

-eat have lie play sit wait



1. *She's eating* an apple.
2. He *wait* for a bus.
3. They *play* soccer.
4. *lie* on the floor.
5. *eat* breakfast.
6. *sit* on the table.

## 3.2 Complete the sentences. Use one of these verbs:

build cook leave stand stay swim take ~~work~~

1. Please be quiet. I *'m working*.
2. "Where's John?" "He's in the kitchen. He *stand*."
3. "You *stand* on my foot." "Oh, I'm sorry."
4. Look! Somebody *swim* in the river.
5. We're here on vacation. We *stay* at the Far West Motel.
6. "Where's Erin?" "She *build* a shower."
7. They *build* a new hotel downtown.
8. I *leave* now. Goodbye.

## 3.3 Look at the picture. Write sentences about Emily. Use *She's -ing* or *She isn't -ing*.



1. (have dinner) *She isn't having dinner.*
2. (watch television) *She's watching television.*
3. (sit on the floor) *She*
4. (read a book) *isn't reading a book.*
5. (play the piano) *isn't playing the piano.*
6. (laugh) *isn't laughing.*
7. (wear a hat) *She's wearing a hat.*
8. (write a letter) *isn't writing a letter.*

## 3.4 What's happening now? Write true sentences.

1. (I / wash / my hair) *I'm not washing my hair.*
2. (it / snow) *It's snowing OR It isn't snowing.*
3. (I / sit / on a chair) *I'm sitting on a chair.*
4. (I / eat) *I'm eating.*
5. (it / rain) *It's raining.*
6. (I / study / English) *I'm studying English.*
7. (I / listen / to music) *I'm listening to music.*
8. (the sun / shine) *The sun is shining.*
9. (I / wear / shoes) *I'm wearing shoes.*
10. (I / read / a newspaper) *I'm reading a newspaper.*

# Are you doing . . . ? (Present Continuous Questions)

## A

## Positive

I	am	
he		doing
she	is	working
it		going
we		staying, etc.
you	are	
they		

## Question

am	I	
	he	doing?
is	she	working?
	it	going?
	we	staying?, etc.
are	you	
	they	

What are you doing?



- "Are you feeling OK?" "Yes, I'm fine, thanks."
- "Is it raining?" "Yes, take an umbrella."
- Why are you wearing a coat? It's not cold.
- "What's Luis doing?" "He's reading the newspaper."
- "What are the children doing?" "They're watching television."
- Look, there's Hannah! Where's she going?
- Who are you waiting for? Are you waiting for Sue?

## B

Study the word order.

is/are + subject + -ing

	Is	he	working today?
Where	Is	Luis	working today? (not Is working Luis today?)
Where	are	they	going?
	are	those people	going? (not Where are going those people?)

## C

Short answers

	I	am.		I'm					
	he			he's					
	she	is.		she's					
Yes,	it		No,	it's	not.	or	No,	he	isn't.
	we			we're				she	
	you	are.		you're				it	
	they			they're				we	aren't.
								you	
								they	

- "Are you going now?" "Yes, I am."
- "Is Luis working today?" "Yes, he is."
- "Is it raining?" "No, it isn't."
- "Are your friends staying at a hotel?" "No, they aren't. They're staying with me."

# Exercises

U N I

4

## 4.1 Look at the pictures and write the questions.

<p>1 (you / watch / it?) <i>Are you watching it?</i></p> <p>No, you can turn it off.</p>	<p>2 (you / leave / now?)</p> <p>Yes, see you tomorrow.</p>	<p>3 (it / rain?)</p> <p>No, not right now.</p>
<p>4 (you / enjoy / the movie?)</p> <p>Yes, it's very funny.</p>	<p>5 (that clock / work?)</p> <p>No, it's broken.</p>	<p>6 (you / write / a letter?)</p> <p>Yes, to my parents.</p>

## 4.2 Look at the pictures and complete the questions. Use these words:

cry eat go laugh look at read

<p>1 What <i>are you reading</i> ?</p>	<p>2 Where <i>she</i> ?</p>	<p>3 What ?</p>
<p>4 Why ?</p>	<p>5 What ?</p>	<p>6 Why ?</p>

## 4.3 Write questions with these words. Use *is* or *are* and put the words in order.

- (working / Luis / today?) *Is Luis working today?*
- (what / doing / the children?) *What are the children doing?*
- (you / listening / to me?) \_\_\_\_\_
- (where / going / your friends?) \_\_\_\_\_
- (your parents / television / watching?) \_\_\_\_\_
- (what / cooking / Jessica?) \_\_\_\_\_
- (why / you / looking / at me?) \_\_\_\_\_
- (coming / the bus?) \_\_\_\_\_

## 4.4 Write true short answers (Yes, I am. / No, he isn't., etc.).

- Are you watching TV? *No, I'm not*
- Are you wearing a watch? \_\_\_\_\_
- Are you eating something? \_\_\_\_\_
- Is it raining? \_\_\_\_\_
- Are you sitting on the floor? \_\_\_\_\_
- Are you feeling all right? \_\_\_\_\_

## A



They're looking at their books.  
They **read** a lot.



He's drinking coffee.  
He **likes** coffee.

they read / he likes / I work, etc. = the *simple present*

I/we/you/they	read	like	work	live	watch	do	have
he/she/it	reads	likes	works	lives	watches	does	has

Remember:

he **works** / she **lives** / it **rains**, etc.

- I **work** in an office. My brother **works** in a bank. (*not* My brother work)
- Anne **lives** in Canada. Her parents **live** in the U.S.
- It **rains** a lot in the winter.

he/she/it **has**

- John **has** lunch at home every day. (*not* John haves)

*Spelling* (see Appendix 5)

-es after -s/-sh/-ch	pass → passes	finish → finishes	watch → watches
-y → -ies	study → studies	try → tries	
and also	do → does	go → goes	

## B

We use the simple present for things that are true in general, or for things that happen sometimes or all the time.

- I **like** big cities.
- The stores **open** at 9 o'clock and **close** at 5:30.
- Mario **works** very hard. He **starts** at 7:30 and **finishes** at 8 o'clock at night.
- The earth **goes** around the sun.
- We **do** a lot of different things in our free time.
- It **costs** a lot of money to stay at luxury hotels.

## C

**always/never/often/sometimes/usually** + simple present

- Sue **always** gets to work early. (*not* Sue gets always)
- We **often** sleep late on weekends. (*not* We sleep often)
- I **usually** drive to work, but I **sometimes** walk.
- Julia **never** eats breakfast.

# Exercises

## 5.1 Write these verbs + -s or -es.

1. (read) she reads
3. (fly) it \_\_\_\_\_
5. (have) she \_\_\_\_\_
2. (think) he \_\_\_\_\_
4. (dance) he \_\_\_\_\_
6. (finish) it \_\_\_\_\_

## 5.2 Complete the sentences about the people in the pictures. Use these verbs:

eat go live play sleep



1. He plays the piano.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ tennis.
2. They \_\_\_\_\_ in a very big house.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ to the movies a lot.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of fruit.
6. \_\_\_\_\_ eight hours a night.

## 5.3 Complete the sentences. Use these verbs:

boil close cost cost like like meet open speak teach wash

1. Megan speaks four languages.
2. Banks usually \_\_\_\_\_ at 9:00 in the morning.
3. The Art Museum \_\_\_\_\_ at 5 o'clock in the afternoon.
4. Isabel is a teacher. She \_\_\_\_\_ mathematics to young children.
5. My job is very interesting. I \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of people.
6. Peter \_\_\_\_\_ his hair every day.
7. Food is expensive. It \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of money.
8. Shoes are expensive. They \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of money.
9. Water \_\_\_\_\_ at 100 degrees Celsius.
10. Julia and I are good friends. I \_\_\_\_\_ her and she \_\_\_\_\_ me.

## 5.4 Write sentences from these words. Put the verb in the right form (arrive or arrives, etc.).

1. (always / early / Sue / arrive) Sue always arrives early.
2. (Julia / parties / enjoy / always) Julia \_\_\_\_\_.
3. (work / Megan / hard / usually) \_\_\_\_\_.
4. (Jenny / always / nice clothes / wear) \_\_\_\_\_.
5. (dinner / we / have / always / at 6:30) \_\_\_\_\_.
6. (television / Mario / watch / never) \_\_\_\_\_.
7. (like / chocolate / children / usually) \_\_\_\_\_.
8. (basketball / I / play / often / after work) \_\_\_\_\_.

## 5.5 Write sentences about yourself. Use always/never/often/sometimes/usually.

1. (watch television) I usually watch television at night.
2. (read in bed) I \_\_\_\_\_.
3. (get up before 7 o'clock) \_\_\_\_\_.
4. (go to work/school by bus) \_\_\_\_\_.
5. (drink coffee) \_\_\_\_\_.

## A

The *simple present negative* is **don't/doesn't + verb**.



She **doesn't** drink coffee.



He **doesn't** like his job.

## Positive

## Negative

I	work	I	don't	work like do have
we	like	we	(do not)	
you	do	you	(do not)	
they	have	they		
he	works	he	doesn't	work like do have
she	likes	she	(does not)	
it	does	it	(does not)	
	has			

- I **drink** coffee, but I **don't** drink tea.
- Sue **drinks** tea, but she **doesn't** drink coffee.
- You **don't** work very hard.
- We **don't** watch television very often.
- The weather is usually nice. It **doesn't** rain very often.
- Jerry and Nicole **don't** know many people.

## B

Remember:

- |                                  |                                    |
|----------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| I/we/you/they <b>don't</b> . . . | ■ I <b>don't</b> like football.    |
| he/she/it <b>doesn't</b> . . .   | ■ He <b>doesn't</b> like football. |

- I **don't** like Fred, and Fred **doesn't** like me. (*not* Fred don't like)
- My car **doesn't** use much gas. (*not* My car don't use)
- Sometimes he's late, but it **doesn't** happen very often.

## C

We use **don't/doesn't + base form** (don't like / doesn't speak / doesn't do, etc.).

- I **don't** like washing the car. I **don't** do it very often.
- Sandra speaks Spanish, but she **doesn't** speak Italian. (*not* doesn't speaks)
- Bill **doesn't** do his job very well. (*not* Bill doesn't his job)
- Paula **doesn't** usually have breakfast. (*not* doesn't . . . has)

# Exercises

## 6.1 Write negative sentences.

1. I play the piano very well. *I don't play the piano very well*
2. Yuki plays the piano very well. Yuki \_\_\_\_\_.
3. They know my phone number. \_\_\_\_\_
4. We work very hard. \_\_\_\_\_
5. He has a car. \_\_\_\_\_
6. You do the same thing every day. \_\_\_\_\_

## 6.2 Study the information and write sentences with *like*.

Do you  
like ...



BILL &  
ROSE CAROL YOU

1. jazz?	yes	no	?
2. boxing?	no	yes	?
3. horror movies?	yes	no	?

1. *Bill and Rose like jazz.*  
Carol \_\_\_\_\_.  
I \_\_\_\_\_ jazz.
2. Bill and Rose \_\_\_\_\_.  
Carol \_\_\_\_\_.  
I \_\_\_\_\_.
3. \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

## 6.3 Write about yourself. Use *I never ...* or *I ... a lot* or *I don't ... very often*.

1. (watch TV) *I never watch TV. OR I watch TV a lot. OR I don't ... very often.*
2. (go to the theater) \_\_\_\_\_
3. (ride a bicycle) \_\_\_\_\_
4. (eat in restaurants) \_\_\_\_\_
5. (travel by train) \_\_\_\_\_

## 6.4 Complete the sentences. All of them are negative. Use *don't/doesn't* + one of these verbs: cost go know read see use wear

1. I buy a newspaper every day, but sometimes I *don't read* it.
2. Fu Chen has a car, but he \_\_\_\_\_ it very often.
3. They like films, but they \_\_\_\_\_ to the movies very often.
4. Amanda is married, but she \_\_\_\_\_ a ring.
5. I \_\_\_\_\_ much about science. I'm not interested in it.
6. It's not an expensive hotel. It \_\_\_\_\_ much to stay there.
7. Brian lives near us, but we \_\_\_\_\_ him very often.

## 6.5 Put the verb in the correct form, positive or negative.

1. Megan *speaks* four languages – English, Japanese, Arabic, and Spanish. (speak)
2. I *don't like* my job. It's very boring. (like)
3. "Where's Mark?" "I'm sorry. I \_\_\_\_\_." (know)
4. Sue is a very quiet person. She \_\_\_\_\_ very much. (talk)
5. Jim \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of coffee. It's his favorite drink. (drink)
6. It's not true! I \_\_\_\_\_ it! (believe)
7. That's a very beautiful picture. I \_\_\_\_\_ it very much. (like)
8. Mark is a vegetarian. He \_\_\_\_\_ meat. (eat)



## Do you . . . ? (Simple Present Questions)

### A

We use **do/does** in *simple present questions*.

*Positive*

I	work
we	like
you	do
they	
he	works
she	likes
it	does

*Question*

do	I	
	we	
	you	work?
	they	like?
		do?
does	he	
	she	
	it	



### B

Study the word order.

**do/does + subject + base form**

Where	Do	you	work	on Saturdays?
How often	Do	your friends	live	near here?
What	Does	Chris	play	tennis?
How much	do	your parents	live?	
	do	you	wash	your hair?
	does	this word	mean?	
	does	it	cost	to fly to Puerto Rico?

Questions with **always/usually/ever**

	Do	you	always	have	breakfast?
	Does	Chris	ever	call	you?
What	do	you	usually	do	on weekends?

**What do you do? = What's your job?**

■ "What do you do?" "I work in a bank."

Remember:

do	I/we/you/they . . .	■ Do they like music?
does	he/she/it . . .	■ Does he like music?

### C

*Short answers*

Yes,	I/we/you/they do. he/she/it does.	No,	I/we/you/they don't. he/she/it doesn't.
------	--------------------------------------	-----	--

- "Do you play cards?" "No, I don't."
- "Do your parents speak English?" "Yes, they do."
- "Does Chol Soo work hard?" "Yes, he does."
- "Does your sister live in Vancouver?" "No, she doesn't."

## 7.1 Write questions with Do ... ? and Does ... ?

1. I like chocolate. How about you? Do you like chocolate?
2. I play tennis. How about you? \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ ?
3. Paulo plays tennis. How about Lucia? \_\_\_\_\_ Lucia \_\_\_\_\_ ?
4. You live near here. How about your friends? \_\_\_\_\_
5. You speak English. How about your brother? \_\_\_\_\_
6. I do yoga every morning. How about you? \_\_\_\_\_
7. Sue often travels on business. How about Paul? \_\_\_\_\_
8. I want to be famous. How about you? \_\_\_\_\_
9. You work hard. How about Nicole? \_\_\_\_\_

## 7.2 Write questions. Use the words in parentheses ( ) + do / does. Put the words in the right order.

1. (where / live / your parents?) Where do your parents live?
2. (you / early / always / get up?) Do you always get up early?
3. (how often / TV / you / watch?) \_\_\_\_\_
4. (you / want / what / for dinner?) \_\_\_\_\_
5. (like / you / football?) \_\_\_\_\_
6. (your brother / like / football?) \_\_\_\_\_
7. (what / you / do / in your free time?) \_\_\_\_\_
8. (your sister / work / where?) \_\_\_\_\_
9. (to the movies / ever / you / go?) \_\_\_\_\_
10. (what / mean / this word?) \_\_\_\_\_
11. (ever / snow / it / here?) \_\_\_\_\_
12. (go / usually / to bed / what time / you?) \_\_\_\_\_
13. (how much / to call Mexico / it / cost?) \_\_\_\_\_
14. (you / for breakfast / have / usually / what?) \_\_\_\_\_

## 7.3 Complete the questions. Use these verbs:

~~do~~ do enjoy get like start teach work

- |                                    |                         |
|------------------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. What <u>do you do</u> _____ ?   | I work in a bookstore.  |
| 2. _____ it?                       | It's OK.                |
| 3. What time _____ in the morning? | At 9 o'clock.           |
| 4. _____ on Saturdays?             | Sometimes.              |
| 5. How _____ to work?              | Usually by bus.         |
| 6. And your husband? What _____ ?  | He's a teacher.         |
| 7. Where _____ ?                   | At Lincoln High School. |
| 8. _____ his job?                  | Yes, he loves it.       |

## 7.4 Write true short answers (Yes, he does. / No, I don't., etc.).

1. Do you live in a big city? No, I don't. OR Yes, I do.
2. Does it rain a lot where you live? \_\_\_\_\_
3. Do your friends watch TV a lot? \_\_\_\_\_
4. Do you ever ride a bicycle? \_\_\_\_\_
5. Do you play the piano? \_\_\_\_\_

# I am doing and I do (Present Continuous and Simple Present)

A

Jim is watching television.  
He is not playing the guitar.

But Jim has a guitar.  
He plays it often, and he plays very well.

Jim plays the guitar, but  
he's not playing the guitar now.

Is he playing the guitar? No, he isn't. (present continuous)  
Does he play the guitar? Yes, he does. (simple present)



B

*Present continuous (I am doing)* = now, at the time of speaking

I'm doing

past

now

future

- Please be quiet. I'm working. (not I work)
- Tom is taking a shower right now. (not Tom takes)
- Take an umbrella with you. It's raining.
- You can turn off the television. I'm not watching it.
- Why are you under the table? What are you doing?

C

*Simple present (I do)* = in general, all the time or sometimes

I do

past

now

future

- I work every day, from 9 o'clock to 5:30.
- Tom takes a shower every morning.
- It rains a lot in the winter.
- I don't watch television very often.
- What do you usually do on weekends?

D

We do not use these verbs in the present continuous (I am -ing):

like love want know understand remember depend  
prefer hate need mean believe forget

Use only the simple present (I want / do you like?, etc.) with these verbs.

- I'm tired. I want to go home. (not I'm wanting)
- "Do you know that girl?" "Yes, but I don't remember her name."
- I don't understand. What do you mean?

## 8.1 Answer the questions about the pictures.



- Does he take photographs? Yes, he does. Is he taking a photograph? No, he isn't.  
What's he doing? He's cooking.
- Is she driving a bus? \_\_\_\_\_ Does she drive a bus? \_\_\_\_\_  
What's she doing? \_\_\_\_\_
- Does he wash windows? \_\_\_\_\_ Is he washing a window? \_\_\_\_\_  
What's he doing? \_\_\_\_\_
- Are they teaching? \_\_\_\_\_ Do they teach? \_\_\_\_\_  
What do they do? \_\_\_\_\_

## 8.2 Write *am/is/are* or *do/don't/does/doesn't*.

- Excuse me, do you speak English?
- "Where's Marta?" "I \_\_\_\_\_ know."
- What's so funny? Why \_\_\_\_\_ you laughing?
- "What \_\_\_\_\_ your sister do?" "She's a dentist."
- It \_\_\_\_\_ raining. I \_\_\_\_\_ want to go out in the rain.
- "Where \_\_\_\_\_ you come from?" "Canada."
- How much \_\_\_\_\_ it cost to send a letter to Canada?
- Steve is a good tennis player, but he \_\_\_\_\_ play very often.

## 8.3 Put the verb in the present continuous (*I am doing*) or the simple present (*I do*).

- Excuse me, do you speak English? (you / speak)
- "Where's Tom?" "He's taking a shower." (he / take)
- I don't watch television very often. (I / not / watch)
- Listen! Somebody \_\_\_\_\_. (sing)
- Sandra is tired. \_\_\_\_\_ to go home now. (she / want)
- How often \_\_\_\_\_ a newspaper? (you / read)
- "Excuse me, but \_\_\_\_\_ in my place." "Oh, I'm sorry." (you / sit)
- I'm sorry, \_\_\_\_\_. Can you speak more slowly?  
(I / not / understand)
- It's late. \_\_\_\_\_ home now. (I / go)  
\_\_\_\_\_ with me? (you / come)
- What time \_\_\_\_\_ work every day? (your father / finish)
- You can turn off the radio. \_\_\_\_\_ to it. (I / not / listen)
- "Where's Paul?" "In the kitchen. \_\_\_\_\_ something." (he / cook)
- Tony \_\_\_\_\_ to work. (not / usually / drive)  
He \_\_\_\_\_. (usually / walk)
- Achara \_\_\_\_\_ coffee. (not / like) \_\_\_\_\_ tea. (she / prefer)

## I have ... and I've got ...

## A

You can say I have or I've got, he has or he's got.

I			I		(I've got)
we	<b>have</b>	or	we	<b>have got</b>	(we've got)
you			you		(you've got)
they			they		(they've got)
he			he		(he's got)
she	<b>has</b>	or	she	<b>has got</b>	(she's got)
it			it		(it's got)

I've got a headache.



- I **have** blue eyes. or I **'ve got** blue eyes.
- The house **has** six bedrooms. or The house **has got** six bedrooms.
- Li Jing isn't feeling well. She **has** a headache. or She's **got** a headache.
- They **have** a horse, three dogs, and six cats. or They've **got** a horse ...

## B

I don't have / I haven't got, etc. (negative)

You can say:

I/we/you/they	<b>don't</b>		I/we/you/they	<b>haven't</b>	
he/she/it	<b>doesn't</b>	<b>have</b>	or	he/she/it	<b>hasn't</b>
					<b>got</b>

- I **have** a bike, but I **don't have** a car. or I've **got** a bike, but I **haven't got** a car.
- Mr. and Mrs. Harris **don't have** any children. or ... **haven't got** any children.
- It's a nice house, but it **doesn't have** a garage. or ... it **hasn't got** a garage.
- Mariko **doesn't have** a job. or Mariko **hasn't got** a job.

## C

Do you have ... ? / Have you got ... ?, etc. (questions)

You can say:

do	I/we/you/they		do	I/we/you/they	
does	he/she/it	<b>have?</b>	or	has	he/she/it
					<b>got?</b>

- **Do you have** a camera? or **Have you got** a camera?
- **Does Anne have** a car? or **Has Anne got** a car?
- What kind of car **does she have?** or What kind of car **has she got?**
- What **do you have** in your bag? or What **have you got** in your bag?

## D

Short answers

- "Do you have a camera?" "Yes, I do." / "No, I don't." or  
"Have you got a camera?" "Yes, I have." / "No, I haven't."
- "Does Anne have a car?" "Yes, she does." / "No, she doesn't." or  
"Has Anne got a car?" "Yes, she has." / "No, she hasn't."

## 9.1 Rewrite these sentences with *got* (*have got* / *hasn't got* / *have . . . got?*, etc.).

1. They have a car. They've got a car.
2. Bill has a headache. \_\_\_\_\_
3. I don't have any free time. \_\_\_\_\_
4. Do you have a watch? \_\_\_\_\_
5. We have a lot of work at the office now. \_\_\_\_\_
6. My brother doesn't have a college degree. \_\_\_\_\_

Now rewrite these sentences without *got*. Use *have* / *doesn't have* / *do . . . have?*, etc.

7. Yoshi hasn't got time to go with us. Yoshi doesn't have time to go with us.
8. You've got a phone call from Japan. \_\_\_\_\_
9. Have you got any aspirin? \_\_\_\_\_
10. Sara hasn't got much money. \_\_\_\_\_
11. Have your parents got any friends in Hawaii? \_\_\_\_\_

## 9.2 Write about Tina and you. Use *has got* / *hasn't got* / *have got* / *haven't got*.

My brothers and sisters.



TINA

1. (a camera) Tina has got a camera.  
I've got a camera. OR I haven't got
2. (a bicycle) Tina \_\_\_\_\_  
I \_\_\_\_\_
3. (long hair) \_\_\_\_\_
4. (brothers / sisters) \_\_\_\_\_

## 9.3 Complete the sentences. Use *have/has* or *don't have* / *doesn't have* + one of these:

a big yard	a key	a toothache	much time
a headache	a lot of friends	four wheels	

1. I'm not feeling very well. I have a headache.
2. It's a nice house, but it doesn't have a big yard.
3. Most cars \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Everybody likes Tom. He \_\_\_\_\_.
5. I'm going to the dentist this morning. I \_\_\_\_\_.
6. He can't open the door. He \_\_\_\_\_.
7. Hurry! We \_\_\_\_\_.

## 9.4 Complete the sentences with *do*, *doesn't*, *don't*, *got*, *has*, or *have*.

1. Sarah hasn't got a car. She goes everywhere by bicycle.
2. They like animals. They have three dogs and two cats.
3. Ryan isn't happy. He \_\_\_\_\_ got a lot of problems.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ you have change for a dollar?
5. They don't read much. They \_\_\_\_\_ have many books.
6. "What's wrong?" "I've \_\_\_\_\_ something in my eye."
7. "Where's my pen?" "I don't know. I don't \_\_\_\_\_ it."
8. Julia wants to go to the concert, but she \_\_\_\_\_ have a ticket.
9. \_\_\_\_\_ you got a minute to help me?

## A



Now Arturo is at work.

At midnight last night  
he **wasn't** at work.

He **was** in bed.

He **was** asleep.

am/is (present) → was (past)

- I **am** tired. (now)
- Where **is** Beth? (now)
- The weather **is** nice today.

- I **was** tired last night.
- Where **was** Beth yesterday?
- The weather **was** nice last week.

are (present) → were (past)

- You **are** late. (now)
- They **aren't** here. (now)

- You **were** late yesterday.
- They **weren't** here last Sunday.

## B

Positive

Negative

Question

I he she it	<b>was</b>
we you they	<b>were</b>

I he she it	<b>was not (wasn't)</b>
we you they	<b>were not (weren't)</b>

<b>was</b>	I? he? she? it?
<b>were</b>	we? you? they?

- Last year Amy **was** 22, so she's 23 now.
- When I **was** a child, I **was** afraid of dogs.
- We **were** hungry after the trip, but we **weren't** tired.
- The hotel **was** comfortable, but it **wasn't** expensive.
- **Was** the weather nice when you **were** on vacation?
- Those shoes are nice. **Were** they expensive?
- Why **were** you late this morning?

## C

Short answers

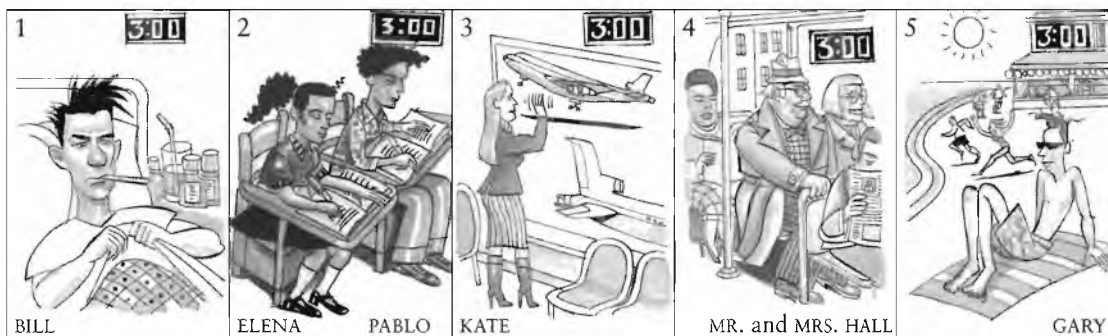
Yes, I/he/she/it **was**.  
we/you/they **were**.

No, I/he/she/it **wasn't**.  
we/you/they **weren't**.

- "Were you late?" "No, I **wasn't**."
- "Was Scott at work yesterday?" "Yes, he **was**."
- "Were Amy and Matt at the party?" "No, they **weren't**."

# Exercises

## 10.1 Where were these people at 3 o'clock yesterday afternoon? Where were you?



1. Bill was in bed .
2. Elena and Pablo \_\_\_\_\_ at \_\_\_\_\_ .
3. Kate \_\_\_\_\_ at \_\_\_\_\_ .
4. \_\_\_\_\_ on \_\_\_\_\_ .
5. \_\_\_\_\_ at \_\_\_\_\_ .
6. And you? I \_\_\_\_\_ .

## 10.2 Write *am / is / are* (present) or *was / were* (past).

1. Last year she was 22, so she is 23 now.
2. Today the weather \_\_\_\_\_ nice, but yesterday it \_\_\_\_\_ very cold.
3. I \_\_\_\_\_ hungry. Can I have something to eat?
4. I feel fine this morning, but I \_\_\_\_\_ very tired last night.
5. Where \_\_\_\_\_ you at 11 o'clock last Friday morning?
6. Don't buy those shoes. They \_\_\_\_\_ very expensive.
7. I like your new jacket. \_\_\_\_\_ it expensive?
8. "Where \_\_\_\_\_ the children?" "I don't know. They \_\_\_\_\_ here ten minutes ago."

## 10.3 Write *was / wasn't* or *were / weren't*.

1. We weren't happy with the hotel. Our room was very small, and it wasn't very clean.
2. Bill \_\_\_\_\_ at work last week because he \_\_\_\_\_ sick. He's better now.
3. Yesterday \_\_\_\_\_ a holiday, so the banks \_\_\_\_\_ closed. They're open today.
4. " \_\_\_\_\_ Kate and John at the party?" "Kate \_\_\_\_\_ there, but John \_\_\_\_\_ ."
5. "Where are my keys?" "I don't know. They \_\_\_\_\_ on the table, but they're not there now."
6. You \_\_\_\_\_ at home last night. Where \_\_\_\_\_ you?

## 10.4 Write questions. Use the words in parentheses ( ) in the correct order + *was / were*.

1. (late / you / this morning / why?) Why were you late this morning?
2. (hard / your exam?) \_\_\_\_\_
3. (last week / where / Beth and Bill?) \_\_\_\_\_
4. (angry / you / yesterday / why?) \_\_\_\_\_
5. (nice / the weather / last week?) \_\_\_\_\_

The traffic was bad.

No, it was easy.

They were on vacation.

Because you were late.

Yes, it was beautiful.



# Worked, got, went, etc. (Simple Past)

## A

They **watch** television every night.  
(*simple present*)

They **watched** television last night.  
(*simple past*)

**Watched** is the *simple past*:

I/we/you/they he/she/it	<b>watched</b>
----------------------------	----------------



## B

The *simple past* is often -ed (*regular verbs*). For example:

work → <b>worked</b>	dance → <b>danced</b>
clean → <b>cleaned</b>	stay → <b>stayed</b>
start → <b>started</b>	need → <b>needed</b>

- I brush my teeth every morning. This morning I **brushed** my teeth.
- Terry **worked** in a bank from 1987 to 1998.
- Yesterday it **rained** all morning. It **stopped** at lunchtime.
- We **enjoyed** the party last night. We **danced** a lot and **talked** to a lot of people. The party **ended** at midnight.

*Spelling* (see Appendix 5)

try → <b>tried</b>	study → <b>studied</b>	copy → <b>copied</b>
stop → <b>stopped</b>	plan → <b>planned</b>	

## C

Some verbs are *irregular* (= not regular). Their simple past is not -ed. Here are some important irregular verbs (see also Appendixes 2–3).

begin → <b>began</b>	fall → <b>fell</b>	leave → <b>left</b>	sell → <b>sold</b>
break <b>broke</b>	find <b>found</b>	lose <b>lost</b>	sit <b>sat</b>
bring <b>brought</b>	fly <b>flew</b>	make <b>made</b>	sleep <b>slept</b>
build <b>built</b>	forget <b>forgot</b>	meet <b>met</b>	speak <b>spoke</b>
buy <b>bought</b>	get <b>got</b>	pay <b>paid</b>	stand <b>stood</b>
catch <b>caught</b>	give <b>gave</b>	put <b>put</b>	take <b>took</b>
come <b>came</b>	go <b>went</b>	read <b>read*</b>	tell <b>told</b>
do <b>did</b>	have <b>had</b>	ring <b>rang</b>	think <b>thought</b>
drink <b>drank</b>	hear <b>heard</b>	say <b>said</b>	win <b>won</b>
eat <b>ate</b>	know <b>knew</b>	see <b>saw</b>	write <b>wrote</b>

\* pronounced "red"

- We **did** a lot of work yesterday.
- I usually get up early, but this morning I **got** up at 9:30.
- Caroline **went** to the movies three times last week.
- Ampol **came** into the room, **took** off his coat, and **sat** down.

# Exercises

## 11.1 Complete the sentences. Use one of these verbs in the simple past:

brush die enjoy end happen rain start stay want

- I brushed my teeth three times yesterday.
- The concert \_\_\_\_\_ at 7:30 and \_\_\_\_\_ at 10 o'clock.
- When I was a child, I \_\_\_\_\_ to be a doctor.
- The accident \_\_\_\_\_ last Sunday afternoon.
- It's a nice day today, but yesterday it \_\_\_\_\_ all day.
- We \_\_\_\_\_ our vacation last year. We \_\_\_\_\_ at a very nice hotel.
- Amy's grandfather \_\_\_\_\_ when he was 90 years old.

## 11.2 Write the simple past of these verbs:

- |                   |                |                |                 |
|-------------------|----------------|----------------|-----------------|
| 1. get <u>got</u> | 4. pay _____   | 7. go _____    | 10. know _____  |
| 2. see _____      | 5. visit _____ | 8. think _____ | 11. put _____   |
| 3. play _____     | 6. buy _____   | 9. copy _____  | 12. speak _____ |

## 11.3 Read about Anna's trip to Mexico City. Put the verbs in the correct form.



Last Tuesday Anna (1) flew from Los Angeles to Mexico City. She (2) \_\_\_\_\_ up at 6 o'clock in the morning and (3) \_\_\_\_\_ a cup of coffee. At 7:15 she (4) \_\_\_\_\_ home and (5) \_\_\_\_\_ to the airport. When she (6) \_\_\_\_\_, she (7) \_\_\_\_\_ the car and then (8) \_\_\_\_\_ to the ticket counter, where she (9) \_\_\_\_\_ in for her flight. Then she (10) \_\_\_\_\_ breakfast at an airport cafe and (11) \_\_\_\_\_ for her flight. The plane (12) \_\_\_\_\_ on time and (13) \_\_\_\_\_ in Mexico City four hours later. Finally, she (14) \_\_\_\_\_ a taxi to her hotel.

(fly)  
(get)  
(have) (leave)  
(drive)  
(arrive) (park)  
(go) (check)  
(have)  
(wait)  
(depart) (arrive)  
(take)

## 11.4 Write sentences about the past.

- Jim always goes to work by car. Yesterday he went to work by car.
- Mei Lan often loses her keys. She \_\_\_\_\_ last week.
- Kate meets her friends every night. She \_\_\_\_\_ last night.
- I usually buy two newspapers every day. Yesterday I \_\_\_\_\_.
- We usually go to the movies on Sundays. Last Sunday we \_\_\_\_\_.
- I eat an apple every day. Yesterday I \_\_\_\_\_.
- Taro always takes a shower in the morning. This morning he \_\_\_\_\_.

## 11.5 Write sentences about what you did yesterday.

- I played volleyball yesterday.
- \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_

# I didn't . . . Did you . . . ? (Simple Past Negative and Questions)

## A

We use **did** in *simple past negatives* and *questions*.

Base form	Positive	Negative	Question
play	I	I	
start	we	we	I
watch	you	you	we
have	they	they	you
see	he	he	they
do	she	she	he
go	it	it	she
		<b>did not (didn't)</b>	did
			play?
			start?
			watch?
			have?
			see?
			do?
			go?

## B

do/does (*present*) → did (*past*)

- I **don't** watch television very often.
- I **didn't** watch television yesterday.
- Does she go out often?
- Did she go out last night?

## C

We use **did/didn't** + *base form* (watch/play/go, etc.)

*Positive* → *Negative*

I **watched** → I **didn't watch** (*not* I didn't watched)  
 he **had** → he **didn't have**  
 they **went** → **did they go?** (*not* did they went?)  
 you **did** → **did you do?**

- I **played** tennis yesterday, but I **didn't** win.
- "Did you **do** your homework?" "No, I **didn't have** time."
- We **went** to the movies, but we **didn't** enjoy the film.

## D

Study the word order in questions:

**did** + *subject* + *base form*

What	Did	your sister	call	you?
How	did	you	do	last night?
Where	did	the accident	happen?	
	did	your parents	go	for vacation?

## E

*Short answers*

Yes,	I/we/you/they he/she/it	<b>did.</b>	No,	I/we/you/they he/she/it	<b>didn't.</b>
------	----------------------------	-------------	-----	----------------------------	----------------

- "Did you see Joe yesterday?" "No, I **didn't**."
- "Did it rain on Sunday?" "Yes, it **did**."
- "Did Helen come to the party?" "No, she **didn't**."
- "Did your parents have a good trip?" "Yes, they **did**."

## 12.1 Complete these sentences. Use *didn't*.

1. I saw Barbara, but I didn't see Mariana.
2. They worked on Monday, but they \_\_\_\_\_ on Tuesday.
3. We went to the post office, but we \_\_\_\_\_ to the bank.
4. She had a pen, but she \_\_\_\_\_ any paper.
5. Brian did some work in the yard, but he \_\_\_\_\_ any work in the house.

## 12.2 Write questions with *Did* . . . ?

1. I watched TV last night. How about you? Did you watch TV last night?
2. I enjoyed the party. How about you? \_\_\_\_\_
3. I had a nice vacation. How about you? \_\_\_\_\_
4. I finished work early. How about you? \_\_\_\_\_
5. I slept well last night. How about you? \_\_\_\_\_

## 12.3 What did you do yesterday? Write true sentences, positive or negative.

1. (watch TV) I watched TV OR I didn't watch TV.
2. (get up before 7 o'clock) I \_\_\_\_\_.
3. (take a shower) \_\_\_\_\_
4. (buy a magazine) \_\_\_\_\_
5. (eat meat) \_\_\_\_\_
6. (go to bed before 10:30) \_\_\_\_\_

## 12.4 Write B's questions. Use:

cost   get to work   go   go to bed late   happen   have a nice time   stay   win

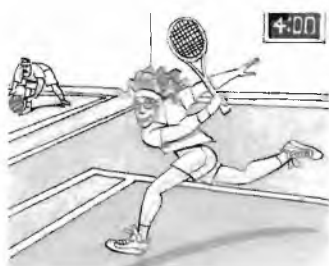
- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. A: We went to Vancouver last month.<br>B: Where <u>did you stay</u> _____ ?<br>A: With some friends. | 5. A: We came home by taxi.<br>B: How much _____ ?<br>A: Ten dollars.             |
| 2. A: I was late this morning.<br>B: What time _____ ?<br>A: Half past nine.                            | 6. A: I'm tired this morning.<br>B: _____<br>A: No, but I didn't sleep very well. |
| 3. A: I played tennis this afternoon.<br>B: _____<br>A: No, I lost.                                     | 7. A: We went to the beach yesterday.<br>B: _____<br>A: Yes, it was great.        |
| 4. A: I had a nice vacation.<br>B: Good. Where _____ ?<br>A: To the mountains.                          | 8. A: The window is broken.<br>B: How _____ ?<br>A: I don't know.                 |

## 12.5 Put the verb in the correct form – positive, negative, or question.

1. We went to the movies, but the film wasn't very good. We didn't enjoy it. (enjoy)
2. Tim \_\_\_\_\_ some new clothes yesterday – two shirts, a jacket, and a sweater. (buy)
3. "\_\_\_\_\_ yesterday?" "No, it was a nice day." (rain)
4. We were tired, so we \_\_\_\_\_ long at the party. (stay)
5. It was very warm in the room, so I \_\_\_\_\_ a window. (open)
6. "Did you go to the bank this morning?" "No, I \_\_\_\_\_ time." (have)
7. "I cut my hand this morning." "How \_\_\_\_\_ that?" (do)

# I was doing (Past Continuous)

A



Now

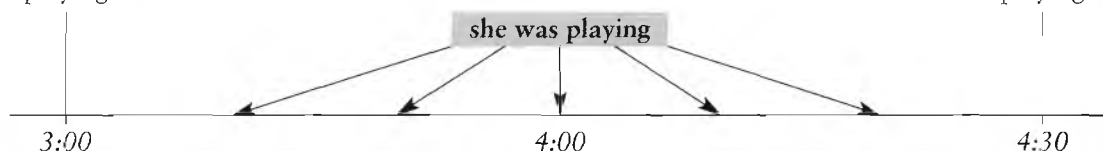
It's 6 o'clock now.  
Kelly is at home.  
She **is watching** television.

At 4 o'clock she **wasn't** at home.  
She **was** at the tennis club.

She **was playing** tennis.  
She **wasn't watching** television.

she began  
playing

she stopped  
playing



B

**Was/were + -ing** is the *past continuous*.

Positive

I he she it	was	doing watching playing running living (etc.)
we you they	were	

Negative

I he she it	wasn't (was not)	doing watching playing running living (etc.)
we you they	weren't (were not)	

Question

was	I he she it	doing? watching? playing? running? living? (etc.)
were	we you they	

- What **were** you **doing** at 11:30 yesterday? **Were** you **working**?
- "What did he say?" "I don't know. I **wasn't** listening."
- It **was raining**, so we didn't go out.
- In 1994 we **were living** in Japan.
- Today she's wearing a skirt, but yesterday she **was wearing** pants.
- I woke up early yesterday. It was a beautiful morning. The sun **was shining**, and the birds **were singing**.

*Spelling* (see Appendix 5)

live → living    run → running    lie → lying

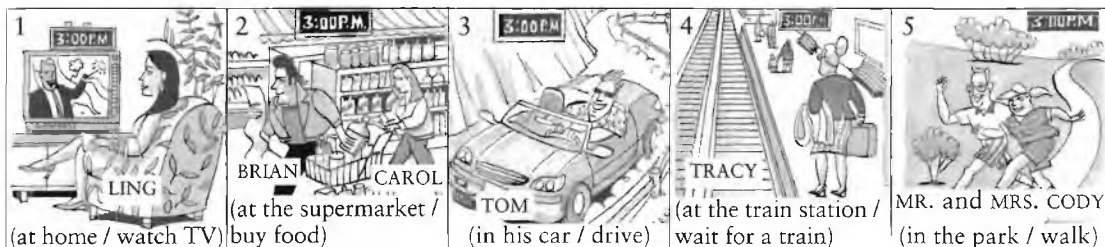
C

**am/is/are + -ing (present) → was/were + -ing (past)**

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| ■ I'm working (now).                      | ■ I <b>was working</b> at 10:30 last night.           |
| ■ It <b>isn't</b> raining (now).          | ■ It <b>wasn't</b> raining when we went out.          |
| ■ What <b>are</b> you <b>doing</b> (now)? | ■ What <b>were</b> you <b>doing</b> at three o'clock? |

# Exercises

**13.1** Look at the pictures. Where were these people at 3 o'clock yesterday afternoon? What were they doing? Write two sentences for each picture.



1. *Ling was at home. She was watching TV.*
2. Carol and Brian \_\_\_\_\_ . They \_\_\_\_\_ .
3. Tom \_\_\_\_\_ .
4. \_\_\_\_\_ .
5. \_\_\_\_\_ .
6. And you? I \_\_\_\_\_ .

**13.2** Sarah did a lot of things yesterday morning. Look at the pictures, and complete the sentences.



1. At 8:45 *she was washing her car* .
2. At 10:45 she \_\_\_\_\_ .
3. At 8 o'clock \_\_\_\_\_ .
4. At 12:10 \_\_\_\_\_ .
5. At 7:15 \_\_\_\_\_ .
6. At 9:30 \_\_\_\_\_ .

**13.3** Complete the questions. Use *was/were -ing*. Use *what/where/why* if necessary.

- |                  |   |                       |
|------------------|---|-----------------------|
| 1. (you / live)  | <i>Where were you living</i> _____ in 1990? | In Brazil.            |
| 2. (you / do)    | _____ at 2 o'clock?                         | I was asleep.         |
| 3. (it / rain)   | _____ when you got up?                      | No, it was sunny.     |
| 4. (Ann / drive) | _____ so fast?                              | Because she was late. |
| 5. (Lee / wear)  | _____ a suit yesterday?                     | No, jeans.            |

**13.4** Look at the picture. You saw Joe yesterday afternoon. What was he doing? Write positive or negative sentences.



Hi! I'm going to the gym.

1. (wear / a jacket) *He wasn't wearing a jacket.*
2. (carry / a bag) \_\_\_\_\_
3. (go / to the dentist) \_\_\_\_\_
4. (eat / an ice cream cone) \_\_\_\_\_
5. (carry / an umbrella) \_\_\_\_\_
6. (go / home) \_\_\_\_\_
7. (wear / a hat) \_\_\_\_\_
8. (ride / a bicycle) \_\_\_\_\_

# I was doing and I did (Past Continuous and Simple Past)

## A



Eric was reading  
a book.



The phone rang.



He stopped reading.



He answered the  
phone.

What happened? The phone rang. (*simple past*)

What was Eric doing when the phone rang?  
He was reading a book. } (*past continuous*)

What did he do when the phone rang?  
He stopped reading and answered the phone. } (*simple past*)

Eric began reading before the phone rang.  
So *when* the phone rang, he **was** reading.



## B

## Simple past

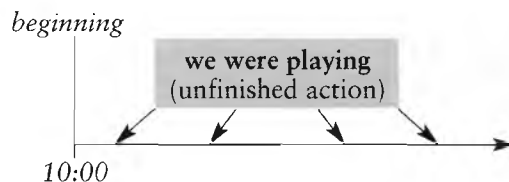
- A: What did you do yesterday morning?  
B: We played tennis. (from 10 to 11:30)



- Eric read a book yesterday. (= from beginning to end)
- Did you watch the movie on television last night?
- It didn't rain while we were on vacation.

## Past continuous

- A: What were you doing at 10:30?  
B: We were playing tennis.

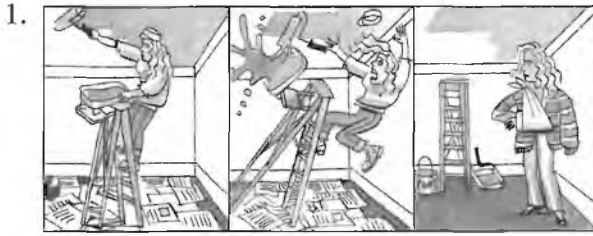


- Eric was reading a book when the phone rang.
- Were you watching television when I called you?
- It wasn't raining when I got up.

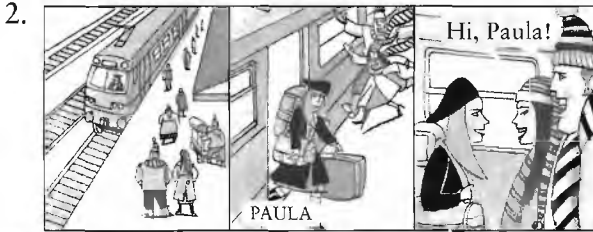
- I started work at 9 o'clock and finished at 4:30. At 2:30 I was working.
- It was raining when we went out. (= it started raining *before* we went out)
- I saw Lucy and Steve this morning. They were waiting at the bus stop.
- Mi Ja fell asleep while she was reading.

# Exercises

## 14.1 Look at the pictures. Put the verbs in the past continuous or simple past.



Linda broke (break) her arm last week. It \_\_\_\_\_ (happen) when she \_\_\_\_\_ (paint) her room. She \_\_\_\_\_ (fall) off the ladder.



The train \_\_\_\_\_ (arrive) at the station, and Paula \_\_\_\_\_ (get) off. Two friends of hers, John and Jenny, \_\_\_\_\_ (wait) to meet her.



Yesterday Sue \_\_\_\_\_ (walk) down the street when she \_\_\_\_\_ (meet) Jim. He \_\_\_\_\_ (go) home, and he \_\_\_\_\_ (carry) a bag. They \_\_\_\_\_ (stop) to talk for a few minutes.

## 14.2 Put the verb in the past continuous or simple past.

1. A: What were you doing (you / do) when the phone rang (ring)?  
B: I was watching (watch) television.
2. A: Was Tracy busy when you went to see her?  
B: Yes, she \_\_\_\_\_ (study).
3. A: What time \_\_\_\_\_ (the mail / come) this morning?  
B: It \_\_\_\_\_ (come) while I \_\_\_\_\_ (have) breakfast.
4. A: Was Megan at work today?  
B: No, she \_\_\_\_\_ (not / go) to work. She was sick.
5. A: How fast \_\_\_\_\_ (you / drive) when the police \_\_\_\_\_ (stop) you?  
B: I don't know exactly, but I \_\_\_\_\_ (not / drive) very fast.
6. A: \_\_\_\_\_ (your team / win) the baseball game yesterday?  
B: No, the weather was very bad, so we \_\_\_\_\_ (not / play).
7. A: How \_\_\_\_\_ (you / break) the window?  
B: We \_\_\_\_\_ (play) baseball. I \_\_\_\_\_ (hit) the ball, and it \_\_\_\_\_ (break) the window.
8. A: \_\_\_\_\_ (you / see) Judy last night?  
B: Yes, she \_\_\_\_\_ (wear) a long dress.
9. A: What \_\_\_\_\_ (you / do) at 2 o'clock this morning?  
B: I was asleep.
10. A: I \_\_\_\_\_ (lose) my key last night.  
B: How \_\_\_\_\_ (you / get) into your apartment?  
A: I \_\_\_\_\_ (climb) in through a window.



## A

DAVE a few years ago

I work in a factory.

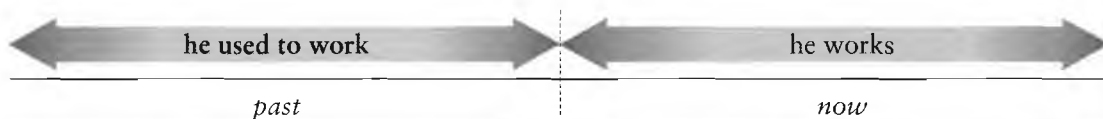


DAVE today

I work in a supermarket.  
I used to work in a factory.


Dave used to work in a factory. Now he works in a supermarket.

Dave used to work in a factory = he worked in a factory in the past, but he doesn't work there now



## B

You can say I used to work . . . / she used to have . . . / they used to be . . . , etc.

I/you/we/they he/she/it	used to	be work have play (etc.)
----------------------------	---------	--------------------------------------

- When I was a child, I used to like chocolate.
- I used to read a lot of books, but I don't read much these days.
- Liz has short hair now, but it used to be very long.
- They used to live on the same block as us, so we used to see them often. But we don't see them very often these days.
- Amy used to have a piano, but she sold it when she moved.

The negative is I didn't use to . . .

- When I was a child, I didn't use to like tomatoes.

The question is did you use to . . . ?

- Where did you use to live before you came here?

I used to have very long hair.



## C

We use used to . . . only for the past. You cannot say "I use to . . ." (present).

- I used to play tennis. These days I play golf. (not I use to play golf.)
- We usually get up early. (not We use to get up early.)

# Exercises

## 15.1 Look at the pictures. Complete the sentences with *used to* . . .

Now      A few years ago



1. *She used to have long hair.*

Now      When I was younger . . .



2. He \_\_\_\_\_ baseball.

Now      A few years ago



I'm a hairdresser now.

3. \_\_\_\_\_ a taxi driver.

We live in Denver now.



Our house in Dallas 20 years ago.

4. \_\_\_\_\_ in Dallas.

Now      This is me 20 years ago.  
I never wear glasses now.



5. \_\_\_\_\_

Now      A long time ago



6. This building \_\_\_\_\_

## 15.2 Karen works very hard and has very little free time. A few years ago, her life was different.

KAREN *a few years ago*

KAREN *now*

- |                                   |  |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| Do you play any sports?           | Yes, I swim every day and I play volleyball. |
| Do you go out much?               | Yes, three or four nights a week.            |
| Do you play a musical instrument? | Yes, the guitar.                             |
| Do you like to read?              | Yes, I read a lot.                           |
| Do you travel much?               | Yes, I take two or three trips a year.       |



I work very hard at my job. I don't have any free time.

### Write sentences about Karen with *used to* . . .

- |                                       |          |
|---------------------------------------|----------|
| 1. <i>She used to swim every day.</i> | 4. _____ |
| 2. She _____                          | 5. _____ |
| 3. _____                              | 6. _____ |

## 15.3 Complete these sentences. Use *used to* or the simple present (*I play / he lives*, etc.).

- I *used to play* \_\_\_\_\_ tennis. I stopped playing a few years ago.
- "Do you play any sports?" "Yes, I *play* \_\_\_\_\_ basketball."
- "Do you have a car?" "No, I \_\_\_\_\_ one, but I sold it."
- Fu Chen \_\_\_\_\_ a waiter. Now he's the manager of a restaurant.
- "Do you go to work by car?" "Sometimes, but usually I \_\_\_\_\_ by train."
- When I was a child, I never \_\_\_\_\_ vegetables, but I eat them now.
- Suree loves to watch TV. She \_\_\_\_\_ TV every night.
- We \_\_\_\_\_ near the airport, but we moved to the city a few years ago.
- Normally I start work at 7 o'clock, so I \_\_\_\_\_ up very early.
- What games \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ when you were a child?

## Have you ever . . . ? (Present Perfect)

A



Have you been to Mexico City?

Yes, I have. Many times.

Have you ever driven a car there?

No, I've never driven in Mexico City.



Have been / have driven / have played, etc., is the *present perfect* (have + past participle).

I	have ('ve)	played	I	played?
we	have not (haven't)	lived	we	lived?
you		visited	you	visited?
they		read	they	read?
he	has ('s)	lost	he	lost?
she	has not (hasn't)	been	she	been?
it		flown	it	flown?

Regular verbs

Irregular verbs

*Regular verbs:* The past participle is -ed (the same as the simple past).

play → we have played    live → I have lived    visit → she has visited

*Irregular verbs:* The past participle is sometimes the same as the simple past.

buy → I bought / I have bought    have → he had / he has had

Sometimes it is different (see Appendixes 2–3).

break → I broke / I have broken    see → you saw / you have seen

B

We use the present perfect when we talk about a time from the past until now, for example, a person's life.

Have you ever been to Japan?

past

now

- "Have you been to France?" (in your life) "No, I haven't."
- We've been to Canada, but we haven't been to Alaska.
- Mary has had many different jobs and has lived in many places.
- I've seen that woman before, but I can't remember where.
- How many times has Brazil won the World Cup?
- "Have you read this book?" "Yes, I've read it twice." (twice = two times)

C

Present perfect + ever (in *questions*) and never

- "Has Amy ever been to Australia?" "Yes, once." (once = one time)
- "Have you ever played golf?" "Yes, I play golf a lot."
- My mother has never traveled by plane.
- I've never ridden a horse.
- "Who is that man?" "I don't know. I've never seen him before."

# Exercises

**16.1** You are asking Angela questions. Write the questions. Begin with *Have you ever . . . ?*

YOU



ANGELA

1. (Montreal?)
2. (play / golf?)
3. (Australia?)
4. (lose / your passport?)
5. (fly / in a helicopter?)
6. (eat / Chinese food?)
7. (London?)
8. (drive / a bus?)

*Have you ever been to Montreal?*

*Have you ever played golf?*

Have \_\_\_\_\_ ?

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

- No, never.
- Yes, many times.
- No, never.
- Yes, once.
- No, never.
- Yes, a few times.
- Yes, twice.
- No, never.

**16.2** Look at Angela's answers in Exercise 16.1. Write sentences about Angela.

1. (London) *Angela has been to London twice.*
2. (Australia) She \_\_\_\_\_.
3. (Chinese food) \_\_\_\_\_.
4. (drive / a bus) \_\_\_\_\_.

Now write about yourself. How many times have you done these things?

5. (London) I \_\_\_\_\_.
6. (play / tennis) \_\_\_\_\_.
7. (fly / in a helicopter) \_\_\_\_\_.

**16.3** Mary is 85 years old. She has had an interesting life. What has she done?

MARY



be	meet
do	travel
have	write

all over the world	many different jobs
a lot of interesting people	married three times
a lot of interesting things	ten books

1. *She has had many different jobs.*
2. She \_\_\_\_\_.
3. \_\_\_\_\_.
4. \_\_\_\_\_.
5. \_\_\_\_\_.
6. \_\_\_\_\_.

**16.4** Put the verbs in the present perfect.

1. *I've seen* (I / see) that woman before, but I can't remember where.
2. "*Have you ever played* (you / ever / play) golf?" "Yes, I play golf a lot."
3. "*\_\_\_\_\_* (you / ever / write) a poem?" "Yes, in high school."
4. "Does Emma know Sam?" "No, *\_\_\_\_\_* (she / never / meet) him."
5. Ann and Eli have lots of books, and *\_\_\_\_\_* (they / read) all of them.
6. *\_\_\_\_\_* (I / never / be) to Australia, but *\_\_\_\_\_* (my brother / be) there twice.
7. Joy's favorite film is *Howard and Belinda*. *\_\_\_\_\_* (she / see) it five times, but *\_\_\_\_\_* (I / never / see) it.
8. *\_\_\_\_\_* (I / travel) by plane, bus, and train. Someday, I want to take a trip by boat.

# How long have you . . . ?

## A

Susan is on vacation in New York.  
She is there now.

She arrived in New York on Monday.  
Today is Thursday.

How long **has she been** in New York?

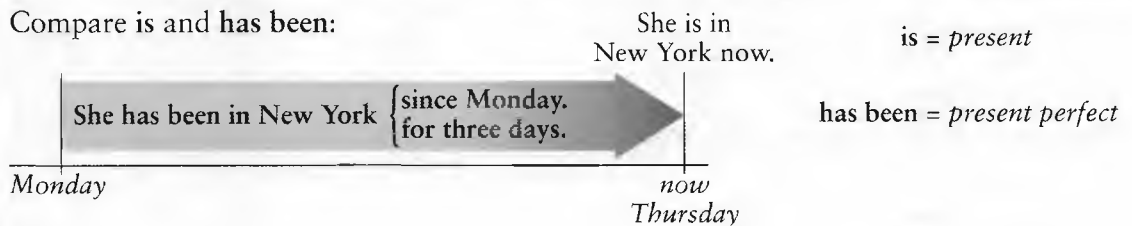
She **has been** in New York **since Monday.**  
**for three days.**

How long have you  
**been** in New York?

Since Monday.



Compare **is** and **has been**:



## B

Compare:

### Simple present

- Dan and Kate are married.
- Are you married?
- Do you know Lynn?
- I know Lynn.
- Vera lives in Brasilia.
- I have a car.

### Present perfect

- They **have been** married for five years.  
(not They are married for five years.)
- **How long have you been** married?  
(not How long are you married?)
- **How long have you known** her?  
(not How long do you know her?)
- I've known her for a long time.  
(not I know her for a long time.)
- **How long has she lived** in Brasilia?  
She has lived there all her life.
- **How long have you had** your car?  
I've had it since April.

### Present continuous

- I'm studying German.
- Bruce is watching TV.
- It's raining.

### Present perfect continuous

- **How long have you been** studying German?  
(not How long are you studying German?)  
I've been studying German for two years.
- **How long has he been** watching TV?  
He's been watching TV since 5 o'clock.  
(he's been = he has been)
- It's been raining all day. (it's been = it has been)

## 17.1 Complete these sentences.

- Susan is in New York. She has been there since Monday.
- I know Isabel. I have known her for a long time.
- Nancy and Seth are married. They \_\_\_\_\_ married since 1997.
- Bill is sick. He \_\_\_\_\_ sick for the last few days.
- We live on Main Street. We \_\_\_\_\_ there for ten years.
- Chris works in a bank. She \_\_\_\_\_ in a bank for five years.
- Andy has a headache. He \_\_\_\_\_ a headache since he got up this morning.
- I'm studying English. I \_\_\_\_\_ English for six months.

## 17.2 Write questions with *How long* . . . ?

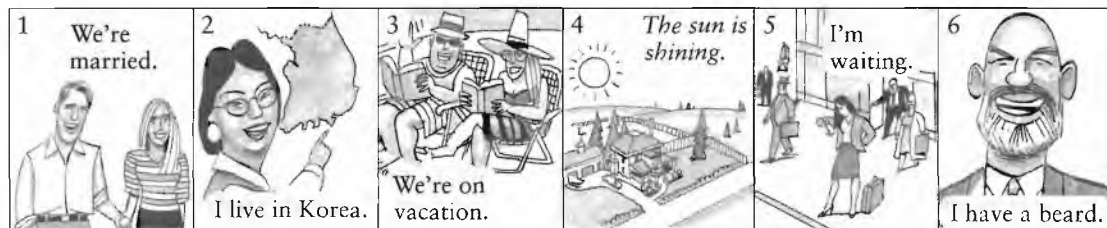
- Susan is on vacation.
- Seth and Nancy are in Canada.
- I know Amy.
- Diana is studying Italian.
- My brother lives in Seattle.
- I'm a teacher.
- It is raining.

*How long has she been on vacation?*

How long \_\_\_\_\_ ?

How long \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ ?

## 17.3



Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with:

all day   all her life   for ten minutes   ~~for ten years~~   since he was 20   since Sunday

- They have been married for ten years.*
- She \_\_\_\_\_ .
- They \_\_\_\_\_ .
- The sun \_\_\_\_\_ .
- She \_\_\_\_\_ .
- He \_\_\_\_\_ .

## 17.4 Which is right?

- Vinai lives / has lived in Canada since 1999. (*has lived* is right)
- Ruth is a good friend of mine. I know / have known her very well.
- Ruth is a good friend of mine. I know / have known her for a long time.
- "Sorry I'm late. How long are you / have you been waiting?" "Only five minutes."
- Ted works / has worked in a hotel now. He likes his job a lot.
- Amy is reading the newspaper. She is / has been reading it for two hours.
- "How long do you live / have you lived in this house?" "About ten years."
- "Is that a new coat?" "No, I have / I've had this coat for a long time."
- Ed is / has been in Seattle right now. He is / has been there for the last three days.

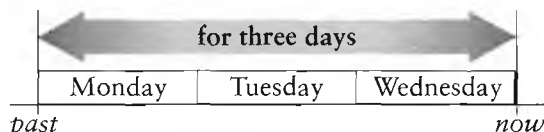
## A

for and since

We use **for** and **since** to say *how long*.

- Rachel is in Brazil. She has been there **for three days.**  
**since Monday.**

We use **for** + a period of time (three days / two years, etc.).



We use **since** + the start of the period (Monday / 9 o'clock, etc.).



### for

three days	ten minutes
an hour	two hours
a week	four weeks
a month	six months
five years	a long time

- Richard has been in Canada **for six months.** (*not* since six months)
- We've been waiting **for two hours.** (*not* since two hours)
- I've lived in Chicago **for a long time.**

### since

Monday	Wednesday
9 o'clock	12:30
July 4th	my birthday
January	I was ten years old
1995	we arrived

- Richard has been in Canada **since January.** (= from January to now)
- We've been waiting **since 9 o'clock.** (= from 9 o'clock to now)
- I've lived in Chicago **since I was ten years old.**

## B

ago

**ago** = before now

- Ji Yoo started her new job **three weeks ago.** (= three weeks before now)
- "When did Tom go out?" "Ten minutes **ago.**" (= ten minutes before now)
- I had dinner **an hour ago.**
- Life was very different **a hundred years ago.**

We use **ago** with the *past* (started/did/had/was, etc.).

Compare **ago** and **for**:

- **When did Rachel arrive in Brazil?**  
She **arrived** in Brazil **three days ago.**
- **How long has she been in Brazil?**  
She **has been** in Brazil **for three days.**

## 18.1 Write *for* or *since*.

1. Rachel has been in Brazil since Monday.
2. Rachel has been in Brazil for three days.
3. My aunt has lived in Australia \_\_\_\_\_ 15 years.
4. Jennifer is in her office. She has been there \_\_\_\_\_ 7 o'clock.
5. Mexico has been an independent country \_\_\_\_\_ 1821.
6. The bus is late. We've been waiting \_\_\_\_\_ 20 minutes.
7. Nobody lives in those houses. They have been empty \_\_\_\_\_ many years.
8. Luis has been sick \_\_\_\_\_ a long time. He has been in the hospital \_\_\_\_\_ October.

## 18.2 Answer these questions. Use *ago*.

1. When was your last meal? Three hours ago
2. When was the last time you were sick? \_\_\_\_\_
3. When was the last time you went to the movies? \_\_\_\_\_
4. When was the last time you were in a car? \_\_\_\_\_
5. When was the last time you took a vacation? \_\_\_\_\_

## 18.3 Complete the sentences. Use the words in parentheses ( ) + *for* or *ago*.

1. Rachel arrived in Brazil three days ago . (three days)
2. Rachel has been in Brazil for three days . (three days)
3. Linda and Frank have been married \_\_\_\_\_ . (20 years)
4. Linda and Frank got married \_\_\_\_\_ . (20 years)
5. We arrived \_\_\_\_\_ . (ten minutes)
6. It started to rain \_\_\_\_\_ . (an hour)
7. Silvia has been studying English \_\_\_\_\_ . (six months)
8. I bought these shoes \_\_\_\_\_ . (a few days)

## 18.4 Complete the sentences with *for* or *since*.

1. Pam is in Cuba now. She arrived three days ago. She has been there for three days
2. Carlos is here. He arrived here on Tuesday. He has \_\_\_\_\_ .
3. It's raining. It started an hour ago. It's been \_\_\_\_\_ .
4. I know Sue. I met her two years ago. I've \_\_\_\_\_ .
5. I have a camera. I bought it in 1999. I've \_\_\_\_\_ .
6. Liz is studying medicine at the university. She started three years ago. She has \_\_\_\_\_ .
7. Toshi plays the piano. He started when he was seven years old. Toshi has \_\_\_\_\_ .

## 18.5 Write sentences about yourself with *for* and *since*. Begin with the words in parentheses ( ).

1. (I've lived) \_\_\_\_\_
2. (I've been) \_\_\_\_\_
3. (I've been studying) \_\_\_\_\_
4. (I've known) \_\_\_\_\_
5. (I've had) \_\_\_\_\_



# I have done and I did (Present Perfect and Simple Past 1)

A



His car is dirty.



He is washing his car.



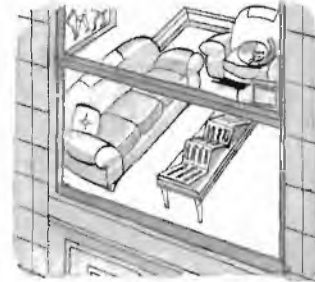
He **has** washed his car.  
(= his car is clean *now*)



They are at home.



They are going out.



They **have** gone out.  
(= they are not at home *now*)

B

We use the *present perfect* (he **has** washed / they **have** gone, etc.) for an action in the past with a result *now*.

- I've **lost** my passport. (= I can't find my passport *now*)
- "Where's Tiffany?" "She's **gone** to bed." (= she is in bed *now*)
- We've **bought** a new car. (= we have a new car *now*)
- Rachel has a headache because she **hasn't taken** her medicine.
- "Bob is on vacation." "Oh, where has he **gone**?"
- **Have** you **met** my brother, or should I introduce you?
- I was a very slow typist in college, but I've **gotten** faster.

Usually you can also use the *simple past* (he **washed** / I **lost**, etc.) in these situations. So you can say:

- "Where's your key?" "I've **lost** it." or "I **lost** it."
- "Is Peter here?" "No, he's **gone** home." or "He **went** home."
- We've **bought** a new car. or We **bought** a new car.

C

We use only the *simple past* (not the present perfect) with a *finished* time (yesterday, last week, etc.).

- I **lost** my key yesterday. (*not* I have lost)
- We **bought** a new car last week. (*not* we have bought)

# Exercises

19.1 Look at the pictures. What has happened? Use the present perfect. Choose from:  
close the door fall down go to bed stop raining take a shower wash her car

1. before → now



*She has washed her car*

2. before → now



He \_\_\_\_\_

3. before → now



They \_\_\_\_\_

4. before → now



It \_\_\_\_\_

5. before → now



He \_\_\_\_\_

6. before → now



The \_\_\_\_\_

19.2 Rewrite the sentences that have underlined verbs. Use the present perfect.

- Lee Ming isn't here. He went home. *He has gone home*
- I don't need to call them. I wrote them a letter. \_\_\_\_\_
- Karen's not coming to the party. She broke her arm. \_\_\_\_\_
- My brother and his wife don't live here anymore. They moved to Seattle. \_\_\_\_\_
- I made a big mistake. \_\_\_\_\_
- I lost my wallet. \_\_\_\_\_  
*Did you see it anywhere?* \_\_\_\_\_
- Did you hear? \_\_\_\_\_  
Mark got married! \_\_\_\_\_

Now rewrite these present perfect sentences in the simple past.

- I've done the shopping. *I did the shopping*
- Brian has taken my bike again without asking. \_\_\_\_\_
- Have you told your friends the good news? \_\_\_\_\_
- We haven't paid the electric bill. \_\_\_\_\_

# Just, already, and yet (Present Perfect and Simple Past 2)

## A

**just** (= a short time ago)

We use **just** with the *present perfect* or the *simple past*.

- A: Are Diane and Paul here?  
B: Yes, they've **just arrived**. or Yes, they **just arrived**.
- A: Are you hungry?  
B: No, I've **just had** dinner. or I **just had** dinner.
- A: Is Jiro here?  
B: Sorry, he's **just left**. or Sorry, he **just left**.



They have **just arrived**.

## B

**already** (= before you expected / before I expected)

We use **already** with the *present perfect* or the *simple past*.

- A: What time are Diane and Paul coming?  
B: They've **already arrived**. or They **already arrived**.
- It's only nine o'clock, and Anne **has already gone** to bed.  
or ... Anne **already went** to bed.
- A: John, this is Mary.  
B: Yes, I know. We've **already met**. or We **already met**.



## C

**yet** (= until now)

We use **yet** with the *present perfect* or *simple past*. We use **yet** in negative sentences (I **haven't** ... **yet**) and questions (Have you ... **yet**?). **Yet** is usually at the end.

**yet** in *negative sentences*

- A: Are Diane and Paul here?  
B: No, they **haven't arrived yet**. or ... they **didn't arrive yet**.  
(but B expects Diane and Paul to arrive soon)
- A: Does John know that you're going away?  
B: No, I **haven't told him yet**. or ... I **didn't tell him yet**.  
(but B is going to tell him soon)
- Joy bought a new dress, but she **hasn't worn it yet**. or ... she **didn't wear it yet**.

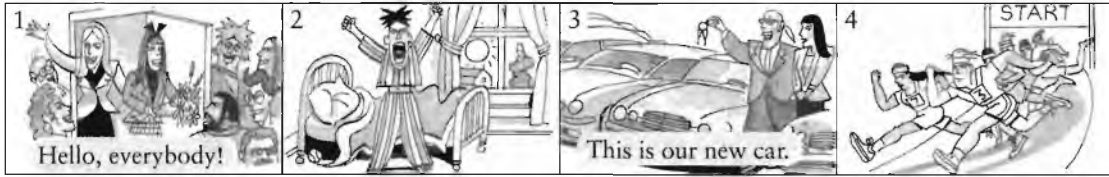
**yet** in *questions*

- A: **Have** Diane and Paul **arrived yet**? or  
Did Diane and Paul **arrive yet**?  
B: No, not yet. We're still waiting for them.
- A: **Has** Nicole **started** her new job **yet**? or  
Did Nicole **start** her new job **yet**?  
B: No, she's starting next week.
- A: This is my new dress.  
B: Oh, it's nice. **Have** you **worn it yet**? or  
Did you **wear it yet**?



# Exercises

20.1 Write a sentence for each picture. Use *just* and the present perfect.



1. *They've just arrived*
2. He \_\_\_\_\_
3. They \_\_\_\_\_
4. The race \_\_\_\_\_

20.2 Complete the sentences. Use *already* and the present perfect.

- |   |                              |
|---|------------------------------|
| 1. What time is Yong Jin arriving?        | <i>He's already arrived.</i> |
| 2. Do Sue and Bill want to see the movie? | No, they _____ it.           |
| 3. Don't forget to call Eric.             | I _____                      |
| 4. When is Mark going to work?            | He _____                     |
| 5. Do you want to read the newspaper?     | I _____                      |
| 6. When does Nicole start her new job?    | She _____                    |

20.3 Rewrite these sentences. Use the present perfect.

1. Did Nicole start her new job yet? *Has Nicole started her new job yet?*
2. Did you tell your father about the accident yet? \_\_\_\_\_
3. I just ate a big dinner, so I'm not hungry. \_\_\_\_\_
4. Jenny can watch TV because she already did her homework. \_\_\_\_\_
5. You can't go to bed – you didn't brush your teeth yet. \_\_\_\_\_
6. You can't talk to Pete because he just went home. \_\_\_\_\_
7. Sarah just got out of the hospital, so she can't go to work. \_\_\_\_\_

Now rewrite these sentences in the simple past.

8. Have you given the mailman our new address yet?  
*Did you give the mailman our new address yet?*
9. The mailman hasn't come yet. \_\_\_\_\_
10. I've just spoken to your sister. \_\_\_\_\_
11. Has Mario bought a new computer yet? \_\_\_\_\_
12. Ted and Alice haven't told anyone they're getting married yet. \_\_\_\_\_
13. We've already done our packing for our trip. \_\_\_\_\_
14. I've just been to the gym. I feel great! \_\_\_\_\_

20.4 Write questions with the present perfect and *yet*.

1. Your friend has gotten a new job. Perhaps she has started it. You ask her,  
*Have you started your new job yet?* \_\_\_\_\_?
2. Your friend has some new neighbors. Maybe he has met them. You ask him,  
\_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_?
3. Your friend has to write a letter. Perhaps she has written it now. You ask her,  
\_\_\_\_\_?
4. Jiro was trying to sell his car. Maybe he has sold it now. You ask a friend about Jiro.  
\_\_\_\_\_?

# I've lost my key. I lost my key last week.

## (Present Perfect and Simple Past 3)

## A

Sometimes you can use the *present perfect* (I have lost / he has gone, etc.) or the *simple past* (I lost / he went, etc.).

- "Is Peter here?" "No, he's gone home." or "No, he **went** home."

But with a finished time (yesterday / last week, etc.), we use only the simple past (not the present perfect).

*Simple past + finished time*



Do not use the present perfect with a finished time.

- I saw Ratana yesterday. (*not* I have seen)
- Where were you on Sunday afternoon? (*not* Where have you been)
- We **didn't** take a vacation last year. (*not* We haven't taken)
- "What did you do last night?" "I stayed at home."
- William Shakespeare lived from 1564 to 1616. He was a writer. He wrote many plays and poems.

Use the simple past to ask **When . . . ?** or **What time . . . ?**.

- **When** did they arrive? (*not* When have they arrived?)

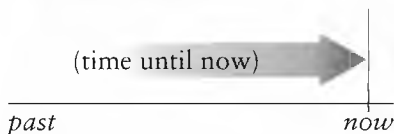
## B

Compare:

*Present perfect or simple past*

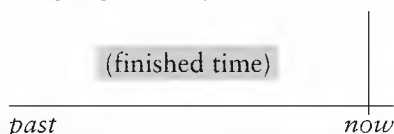
- I **have lost** my key. or I **lost** my key. (= I can't find it *now*)
- Bill **has gone** home. or Bill **went** home. (= he isn't here *now*)
- **Have you had** lunch? or **Did you have** lunch?
- The letter **hasn't arrived** yet. or The letter **didn't arrive** yet.

*Present perfect only*



- **Have you ever been** to Spain?  
(= in your life, until *now*)
- My friend is a writer. He **has written** many books.
- We've lived in Boston for six years. (= we live there *now*)

*Simple past only*



- **Did you go** to Spain last year?
- Shakespeare **wrote** many plays and poems.
- We **lived** in Chicago for ten years, but now we live in Boston.

# Exercises

## 21.1 Use the words in parentheses ( ) to answer the questions.

- (an hour ago) Have you had lunch?
- (last week) Have you started your new job?
- (on Friday) Have your friends arrived?
- (at 5 o'clock) Has Sarah gone out?
- (yesterday) Have you worn your new suit?

Yes, I had it an hour ago.  
Yes, I \_\_\_\_\_ last week.  
Yes, they \_\_\_\_\_.  
Yes, \_\_\_\_\_.  
Yes, \_\_\_\_\_.

## 21.2 Right or wrong? Correct the underlined parts that are wrong.

- I've lost my key. I can't find it. RIGHT
- Have you seen Anne yesterday? WRONG Did you see
- I've finished my work at two o'clock.
- I'm ready now. I've finished my work.
- What time have you finished your work?
- Gloria isn't here. She's gone out.
- Jim's grandmother has died last night.
- Where have you been in 1998?

## 21.3 Put the verb in the present perfect or simple past.

- My friend is a writer. He has written many books. (write)
- We didn't take a vacation last year. (not / take)
- I \_\_\_\_\_ tennis yesterday afternoon. (play)
- What time \_\_\_\_\_ to bed last night? (you / go)
- Kathy travels a lot. She \_\_\_\_\_ many countries. (visit)
- I live in New York now, but I \_\_\_\_\_ in Mexico for many years. (live)
- The weather \_\_\_\_\_ very good yesterday. (not / be)
- Sonia is an actress now. She \_\_\_\_\_ in several plays. (be)
- I \_\_\_\_\_ my hair before breakfast this morning. (wash)

## 21.4 Put the verb in the present perfect or simple past.

<p>1. A: <u>Have you ever been</u> (you / ever / be) to Florida? B: Yes, we <u>went</u> (go) there on vacation two years ago. A: _____ (you / have) a good time? B: Yes, it _____ (be) great.</p>	<p>2. A: What does your friend do? B: She's a painter. She _____ (win) many prizes for her paintings. A: _____ (you / see) any of her paintings? B: Yes, _____ (I / see) some of her work last week.</p>
<p>3. Rose works in a factory now, but she _____ (have) a lot of different jobs. Five years ago, she _____ (be) a waitress in a restaurant. After that, she _____ (work) on a ranch, but she _____ (not / enjoy) it very much.</p>	<p>4. A: Do you know Mark's sister? B: I _____ (see) her a few times but I _____ (never / speak) to her. _____ (you / ever / speak) to her? A: Yes, I _____ (meet) her at a party last week. She's very nice.</p>

# Is done and was done (Passive 1)



The office is cleaned every day.

The office was cleaned yesterday.

Compare *active* and *passive*:

Somebody cleans the office every day. (*active*)

The office is cleaned every day. (*passive*)

Somebody cleaned the office yesterday. (*active*)

The office was cleaned yesterday. (*passive*)

The passive is:

*Past participle*

*Simple present*

*Simple past*

am/is/are

was/were

(not)

cleaned

invented

injured

done

built

taken, etc.

The *past participle* of regular verbs is -ed (cleaned/damaged, etc.).

For a list of irregular past participles (done/built/taken, etc.), see Appendixes 2–3.

- Butter is **made** from cream.
- Oranges are **imported** into Canada.
- How often are these rooms **cleaned**?
- I **am** never **invited** to parties.
- This house **was built** 100 years ago.
- These houses **were built** 100 years ago.
- When **was** the telephone **invented**?
- We **weren't** **invited** to the party last week.
- “**Was** anybody **injured** in the accident?” “Yes, two people **were taken** to the hospital.”

was/were born

- I **was born** in Los Angeles in 1981. (*not* I am born)
- Where **were** you **born**?

Passive + by . . .

- We were woken up **by** a loud noise. (= The noise woke us up.)
- The telephone was invented **by** Alexander Graham Bell in 1876.
- My brother was bitten **by** a dog last week.

## 22.1 Write sentences with the words in parentheses ( ). Sentences 1–7 are present.

- (the office / clean / every day) *The office is cleaned every day.*
- (these rooms / clean / every day?) *Are these rooms cleaned every day?*
- (glass / make / from sand) Glass \_\_\_\_\_.
- (stamps / sell / in a post office) \_\_\_\_\_.
- (this word / not / use / very often) \_\_\_\_\_.
- (we / allow / to park here?) \_\_\_\_\_.
- (how / this word / pronounce?) \_\_\_\_\_.

## Sentences 8–14 are past.

- (the office / clean / yesterday) *The office was cleaned yesterday.*
- (the house / paint / last month) The house \_\_\_\_\_.
- (three people / injure / in the accident) \_\_\_\_\_.
- (my bicycle / steal / a few days ago) \_\_\_\_\_.
- (when / this bridge / build?) \_\_\_\_\_.
- (you / invite / to the party last week?) \_\_\_\_\_.
- (I / not / wake up / by the noise) \_\_\_\_\_.

## 22.2 Correct these sentences.

- This house built 100 years ago. *This house was built 100 years ago.*
- Soccer plays in most countries of the world. \_\_\_\_\_.
- Why did the letter send to the wrong address? \_\_\_\_\_.
- A garage is a place where cars repair. \_\_\_\_\_.
- Where are you born? \_\_\_\_\_.
- How many languages are speaking in Canada? \_\_\_\_\_.
- Somebody broke into our house, but nothing stolen. \_\_\_\_\_.
- When was invented the bicycle? \_\_\_\_\_.

## 22.3 Complete the sentences. Use the passive (present or past) of these verbs:

~~clean~~ damage find give invite make make show steal take

- The room *is cleaned* \_\_\_\_\_ every day.
- I saw an accident yesterday. Two people *were taken* \_\_\_\_\_ to the hospital.
- Paper \_\_\_\_\_ from wood.
- There was a fire at the hotel last week. Two of the rooms \_\_\_\_\_.
- “Where did you get this picture?” “It \_\_\_\_\_ to me by a friend of mine.”
- Many British programs \_\_\_\_\_ on American television.
- “Did Jim and Sue go to the wedding?” “No. They \_\_\_\_\_, but they didn’t go.”
- “How old is this movie?” “It \_\_\_\_\_ in 1965.”
- My car \_\_\_\_\_ last week, but the next day it \_\_\_\_\_ by the police.

## 22.4 Where were they born?

- (Makoto / Kyoto) *Makoto was born in Kyoto.*
- (Isabel / São Paulo) Isabel \_\_\_\_\_.
- (her parents / Rio de Janeiro) Her \_\_\_\_\_.
- (you / ???) I \_\_\_\_\_.
- (your mother / ???) \_\_\_\_\_.



## A

is/are being ... (present continuous passive)



Somebody is painting the door. (active)

The door is being painted. (passive)

- I took the bus this morning. My car is being repaired. (= somebody is repairing it)
- Some new houses are being built across from the park. (= somebody is building them)

Compare the *present continuous* and *simple present*:

- The office is being cleaned right now. (present continuous)  
The office is cleaned every day. (simple present)
- In the U.S., football games are usually shown on TV on Mondays, but no games are being shown next Monday.

## B

has/have been ... (present perfect passive)



before



now

Somebody has painted the door. (active)

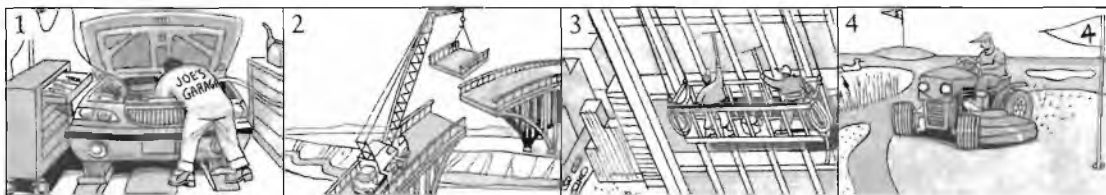
The door has been painted. (passive)

- My key has been stolen. (= somebody has stolen it)
- My keys have been stolen. (= somebody has stolen them)
- I'm not going to the party. I haven't been invited. (= nobody has invited me)
- Has this window been washed? (= Has somebody washed it?)

Compare the *present perfect* and *simple past*:

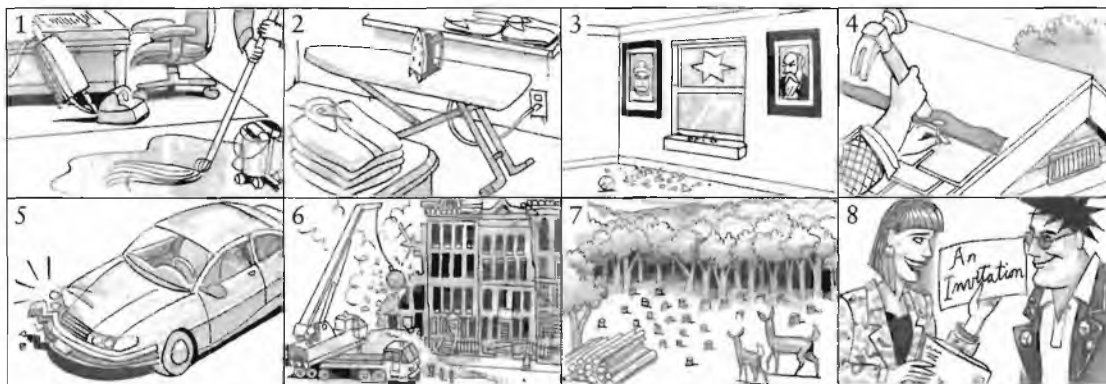
- The room is clean now. It has been cleaned. (present perfect)  
The room was cleaned yesterday. (simple past)
- I can't find my keys. I think they've been stolen. (present perfect)  
My keys were stolen last week. (simple past)

## 23.1 What's happening?



1. The car is being repaired.
2. A bridge is being lifted.
3. The windows are being washed.
4. The grass is being mowed.

## 23.2 Look at the pictures. What is happening or what has happened? Use the present continuous (is/are being ...) or the present perfect (has/have been ...).



1. (the office / clean) The office is being cleaned.
2. (the shirts / iron) The shirts have been ironed.
3. (the window / break) The window has been broken.
4. (the roof / repair) The roof is being repaired.
5. (the car / damage) The car has been damaged.
6. (the buildings / knock / down) The building has been knocked down.
7. (the trees / cut / down) The trees have been cut down.
8. (they / invite / to a party) They have been invited to a party.

## 23.3 Use the words in parentheses ( ) to complete the sentences. (Study Unit 22 first.)

1. I can't use my office right now. It is being painted. (paint)
2. We didn't go to the party. We weren't invited. (not / invite)
3. The washing machine was broken, but it's OK now.  
It has been repaired. (repair)
4. The washing machine was repaired yesterday afternoon. (repair)
5. A factory is a place where things are made. (make)
6. How old are these houses? When were they built? (they / build)
7. A: What is he using right now? (the computer / use)  
B: Yes, Jim is using it.
8. I've never seen these flowers before. What are they called? (they / call)
9. My sunglasses were stolen at the beach yesterday. (steal)
10. The bridge is closed. It was damaged last week and it hasn't been repaired yet. (damage) (not / repair)

## A

be (am/is/are/was/were) + -ing (cleaning/working, etc.)

am/is/are + -ing  
(*present continuous*)  
See Units 3–4 and 26.

- Please be quiet. I'm **working**.
- It **isn't** raining right now.
- What are you **doing** tonight?

was/were + -ing  
(*past continuous*)  
See Unit 13.

- I **was** working when she arrived.
- It **wasn't** raining, so we went out.
- What were you **doing** at three o'clock?

## B

be + *past participle* (cleaned/made/eaten, etc.)

am/is/are + *past participle*  
(*simple present passive*)  
See Unit 22.

- The room **is** cleaned every day.
- I'm never **invited** to parties.
- Oranges **are** imported into Canada.

was/were + *past participle*  
(*simple past passive*)  
See Unit 22.

- The room **was** cleaned yesterday.
- These houses **were** built 100 years ago.
- How **was** the window broken?
- Where **were** you born?

## C

have/has + *past participle* (cleaned/lost/eaten/been, etc.)

have/has + *past participle*  
(*present perfect*)  
See Units 16–17, 19–21.

- I've lived in this house for ten years.
- Tom **has** never ridden a horse.
- Barbara **hasn't** been to South America.
- Where **have** Paul and Nicole gone?

## D

do/does/did + *base form* (clean/like/eat/go, etc.)

do/does + *base form*  
(*simple present negative*  
*and questions*)  
See Units 6–7.

- I like coffee, but I **don't** like tea.
- Chris **doesn't** go out very often.
- What **do** you usually **do** on weekends?
- Does Barbara **live** alone?

did + *base form*  
(*simple past negative*  
*and questions*)  
See Unit 12.

- I **didn't** watch TV yesterday.
- It **didn't** rain last week.
- What time **did** Paul and Nicole go out?

## 24.1 Write *is/are/do/does*.

1. *Do* \_\_\_\_\_ you work on weekends?
2. Where *are* \_\_\_\_\_ they going?
3. Why \_\_\_\_\_ you looking at me?
4. \_\_\_\_\_ Bill live near you?
5. \_\_\_\_\_ you like to cook?
6. \_\_\_\_\_ the sun shining?
7. What time \_\_\_\_\_ the stores close?
8. \_\_\_\_\_ Ratana working today?
9. What \_\_\_\_\_ this word mean?
10. \_\_\_\_\_ you feeling all right?

## 24.2 Write *am not / isn't / aren't / don't / doesn't*. All these sentences are negative.

1. Tom *doesn't* \_\_\_\_\_ work on weekends.
2. I'm very tired. I \_\_\_\_\_ want to go out tonight.
3. I'm very tired. I \_\_\_\_\_ going out tonight.
4. Eric \_\_\_\_\_ working this week. He's on vacation.
5. My parents are usually at home. They \_\_\_\_\_ go out very often.
6. Barbara has traveled a lot, but she \_\_\_\_\_ speak any foreign languages.
7. You can turn off the television. I \_\_\_\_\_ watching it.
8. There's a party next week, but we \_\_\_\_\_ going.

## 24.3 Write *was/were/did/have/has*.

1. Where *were* \_\_\_\_\_ your shoes made?
2. \_\_\_\_\_ you go out last night?
3. What \_\_\_\_\_ you doing at 10:30?
4. Where \_\_\_\_\_ your mother born?
5. \_\_\_\_\_ Barbara gone home?
6. What time \_\_\_\_\_ she go?
7. When \_\_\_\_\_ these houses built?
8. \_\_\_\_\_ Sanun arrived yet?
9. Why \_\_\_\_\_ you go home early?
10. How long \_\_\_\_\_ they been married?

## 24.4 Write *is/are/was/were/have/has*.

1. Joe *has* \_\_\_\_\_ never ridden a horse.
2. This bridge \_\_\_\_\_ built ten years ago.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ you finished your work yet?
4. This town is always clean. The streets \_\_\_\_\_ cleaned every day.
5. Where \_\_\_\_\_ you born?
6. I \_\_\_\_\_ just made some coffee. Would you like some?
7. Glass \_\_\_\_\_ made from sand.
8. This is a very old photograph. It \_\_\_\_\_ taken a long time ago.
9. Joe \_\_\_\_\_ bought a new car.

## 24.5 Complete the sentences. Choose verbs from the list. Use the correct forms.

damage	enjoy	go away	open	<del>rain</del>	use
eat	go	listen	pronounce	understand	

1. I'm going to take an umbrella with me. It's *raining* \_\_\_\_\_.
2. Why are you so tired? Did you *go* \_\_\_\_\_ to bed late last night?
3. Where are the chocolates? Have you \_\_\_\_\_ them all?
4. How is your new job? Are you \_\_\_\_\_ it?
5. My car was badly \_\_\_\_\_ in the accident, but I was OK.
6. Chris has a car but she doesn't \_\_\_\_\_ it very often.
7. Mary isn't at home. She has \_\_\_\_\_ for a few days.
8. I don't \_\_\_\_\_ the problem. Can you explain it again?
9. Mark is in his room. He's \_\_\_\_\_ to music.
10. I don't know how to say this word. How is it \_\_\_\_\_?
11. How do you \_\_\_\_\_ this window? Can you show me?

## A

### Regular verbs

The *simple past* and *past participle* of regular verbs is **-ed**.

clean → cleaned    live → lived    paint → painted    study → studied

*Simple past* (see Unit 11)

- I **cleaned** my room yesterday.
- Charlie **studied** engineering in college.

### Past participle

Present perfect = **have/has** + *past participle* (see Units 16–17, 19–21)

- I **have cleaned** my room.
- Tracy **has lived** in Miami for ten years.

Passive = **be (is / are / were / has been, etc.)** + *past participle* (see Units 22–23)

- These rooms **are cleaned** every day.
- My car **has been repaired**.

## B

### Irregular verbs

The *simple past* and *past participle* of irregular verbs are not **-ed**. For example:

<i>Base form</i>	make	break	cut
<i>Simple past</i>	<b>made</b>	<b>broke</b>	<b>cut</b>
<i>Past participle</i>	<b>made</b>	<b>broken</b>	<b>cut</b>

Sometimes the *simple past* and *past participle* are the same. For example:

<i>Base form</i>	make	find	buy	cut
<i>Simple past</i>	<b>made</b>	<b>found</b>	<b>bought</b>	<b>cut</b>
<i>Past participle</i>				

- I **made** a cake yesterday. (simple past)
- I've just **made** some coffee. (past participle in the present perfect)
- Butter **is made** from cream. (past participle in the passive)

Sometimes the *simple past* and *past participle* are different. For example:

<i>Base form</i>	break	know	begin	go
<i>Simple past</i>	<b>broke</b>	<b>knew</b>	<b>begin</b>	<b>went</b>
<i>Past participle</i>	<b>broken</b>	<b>known</b>	<b>began</b>	<b>gone</b>

- Somebody **broke** this window last night. (simple past)
- Somebody **has broken** this window. (past participle in the present perfect)
- This window **was broken** last night. (past participle in the passive)

**25.1 Write the simple past / past participle of these verbs. (The simple past and past participle are the same for all the verbs in this exercise.)**

- |                     |                  |                      |
|---------------------|------------------|----------------------|
| 1. make <u>made</u> | 6. enjoy _____   | 11. hear _____       |
| 2. cut <u>cut</u>   | 7. buy _____     | 12. put _____        |
| 3. say _____        | 8. sit _____     | 13. catch _____      |
| 4. bring _____      | 9. leave _____   | 14. watch _____      |
| 5. pay _____        | 10. happen _____ | 15. understand _____ |

**25.2 Write the simple past and past participle of these verbs.**

- |                                     |                |                 |
|-------------------------------------|----------------|-----------------|
| 1. break <u>broke</u> <u>broken</u> | 6. run _____   | 11. take _____  |
| 2. begin _____                      | 7. speak _____ | 12. go _____    |
| 3. eat _____                        | 8. write _____ | 13. give _____  |
| 4. drink _____                      | 9. come _____  | 14. throw _____ |
| 5. drive _____                      | 10. know _____ | 15. get _____   |

**25.3 Put the verb in the right form.**

- I washed my hands because they were dirty. (wash)
- Somebody has broken this window. (break)
- I feel good. I \_\_\_\_\_ very well last night. (sleep)
- We \_\_\_\_\_ a really good movie yesterday. (see)
- It \_\_\_\_\_ a lot while we were on vacation. (rain)
- I've \_\_\_\_\_ my bag. (lose) Have you \_\_\_\_\_ it? (see)
- Rosa's bicycle was \_\_\_\_\_ last week. (steal)
- I \_\_\_\_\_ to bed early because I was tired. (go)
- Have you \_\_\_\_\_ your work yet? (finish)
- The shopping mall was \_\_\_\_\_ about 20 years ago. (build)
- Annie \_\_\_\_\_ to drive when she was 16. (learn)
- I've never \_\_\_\_\_ a horse. (ride)
- Julia is a good friend of mine. I've \_\_\_\_\_ her for a long time. (know)
- Yesterday I \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ my leg. (fall / hurt)

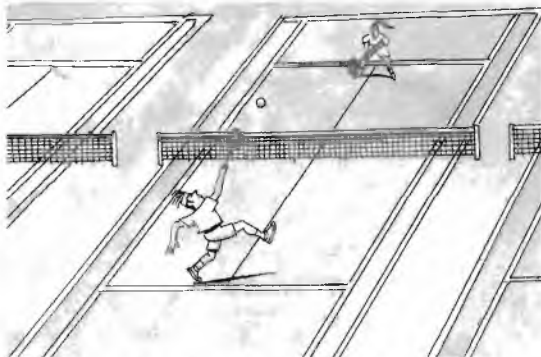
**25.4 Complete these sentences. Choose from the list and put the verb in the correct form.**

cost drive fly **make** meet sell speak swim tell think wake up

- I've just made some coffee. Would you like some?
- Have you \_\_\_\_\_ John about your new job?
- I know Aldo, but I've never \_\_\_\_\_ his wife.
- We were \_\_\_\_\_ by loud music in the middle of the night.
- Stephanie jumped into the river and \_\_\_\_\_ to the other side.
- "Did you like the movie?" "Yes, I \_\_\_\_\_ it was very good."
- Many different languages are \_\_\_\_\_ in Guatemala.
- Our vacation \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of money because we stayed at an expensive hotel.
- Have you ever \_\_\_\_\_ a very fast car?
- All the tickets for the concert were \_\_\_\_\_ very quickly.
- A bird \_\_\_\_\_ in through the open window while we were eating dinner.

# What are you doing tomorrow?

A



They are playing tennis (now).



He is playing tennis tomorrow.

We use **am/is/are + -ing** (*present continuous*) for something happening now.

- "Where are Sue and Amanda?" "They're playing tennis in the park."
- Please be quiet. I'm working.

We also use **am/is/are + -ing** for the *future* (tomorrow / next week, etc.).

- Andrew **is playing** tennis tomorrow.
- I'm **not working** next week.

B

I **am doing** something tomorrow = I have arranged to do it, I have a plan to do it

- Blanca **is going** to the dentist on Friday.  
(= she has an appointment with the dentist)
- We're **having** a party next weekend.
- Are you **meeting** Bill at the movies tonight?
- What **are you doing** tomorrow night?
- I'm **not going** out tonight. I'm staying at home.



I'm going to a concert tomorrow.

You can also say, "I'm going to do something." (see Unit 27)

C

Do not use the *simple present* (I stay / Do you go . . . ?, etc.) for plans and arrangements.

- I'm **staying** at home tonight. (*not* I stay)
- Are you **going** out tonight? (*not* Do you go)
- Anne **isn't coming** to the party next week. (*not* Anne doesn't come)

But use the *simple present* for schedules (buses, movies, classes, etc.).

- The plane **arrives** in New York at 7:30 tomorrow morning.
- What time **does** the movie **end** tonight?

Compare:

*Present continuous* (usually for people)

- I'm **going** to a concert tomorrow.
- What time **are you leaving**?

*Simple present* (for schedules)

- The concert **starts** at 7:30.
- What time **does** your plane **leave**?

## 26.1 Look at the pictures. What are these people doing next Friday?



ANDREW



RICHARD



BARBARA



DENISE



SUE AND TOM

1. Andrew is playing tennis on Friday.
2. Richard is going to the movies.
3. Barbara is going to a party.
4. Denise is having lunch with Ken.
5. Sue and Tom are going to a party.

## 26.2 Write questions. All the sentences are future.

1. (you / go / out / tonight?) Are you going out tonight?
2. (you / work / next week?) Are you working next week?
3. (what / you / do / tomorrow night?) What are you doing tomorrow night?
4. (what time / your friends / come?) What time are your friends coming?
5. (when / Liz / go / on vacation?) When is Liz going on vacation?

## 26.3 Write sentences about yourself. What are you doing in the next few days?

1. I'm staying at home tonight.
2. I'm going to the theater on Monday.
3. I'm going to the gym on Tuesday.
4. I'm going to the store on Wednesday.
5. I'm going to the park on Thursday.
6. I'm going to the beach on Friday.

## 26.4 Put the verb in the present continuous (he is leaving, etc.) or simple present (the train leaves, etc.).

1. "Are you going out tonight?" (you / go) "No, I'm too tired."
2. We're going to a concert tonight. (we / go) It starts at 7:30. (it / start)
3. Listen to this! I'm getting married next month! (Karen / get)
4. A: My parents are going on vacation soon. (go)  
B: Oh, that's nice. Where are they going? (they / go)
5. Silvia is taking an English course this semester. The course ends on Friday. (end)
6. There's a football game tomorrow, but I'm not going. (I / not / go)
7. I'm going out with some friends tonight. (I / go) Why don't you come too? We're meeting at John's house at 8 o'clock. (we / meet)
8. A: How are you getting home after the party tomorrow? (you / get) By taxi?  
B: No, I can take the bus. The last bus leaves at midnight. (leave)
9. A: Do you want to go to the movies tonight?  
B: Yes, what time does the movie begin? (the movie / begin)
10. A: What are you doing next Monday afternoon? (you / do)  
B: I'm working. (I / work)

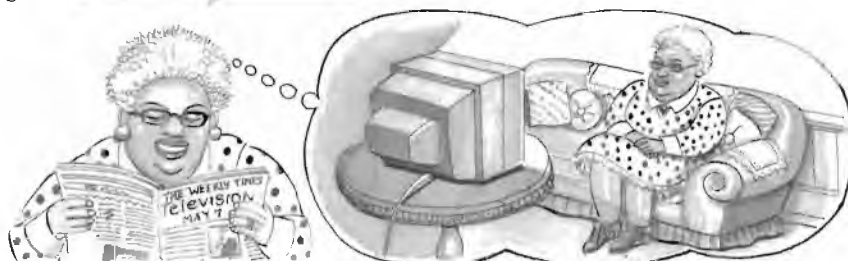


## A

I'm going to do something.

Morning

I'm going to watch TV tonight.



Tonight

She is going to watch TV tonight.

We use *am/is/are + going to ...* for the *future*.

I am  
he/she/it is  
we/you/they are

(not) going to

do  
drink  
watch

am I  
is he/she/it  
are we/you/they

going to

buy ... ?  
eat ... ?  
wear ... ?

## B

I am going to do something = I have decided to do it, my intention is to do it

I decided to do it

past

I'm going to do it

now

future

- I'm going to buy some books tomorrow.
- Sarah is going to sell her car.
- I'm not going to have breakfast this morning. I'm not hungry.
- What are you going to wear to the party tonight?
- "Your hands are dirty." "Yes, I know. I'm going to wash them."
- Are you going to invite Min Fang to your party?

We also use the *present continuous (I am doing)* for the future, usually for arrangements (see Unit 26).

- I am playing tennis with Julia tomorrow.

## C

Something is going to happen = it is clear now that it is sure to happen

- Look at the sky! It's going to rain.  
(black clouds now → rain)
- It's 9 o'clock and I'm not ready.  
I'm going to be late.  
(9 o'clock now and not ready → late)

It's going to rain.



## 27.1 What are these people saying?



I 'm going to watch TV



I \_\_\_\_\_



We \_\_\_\_\_



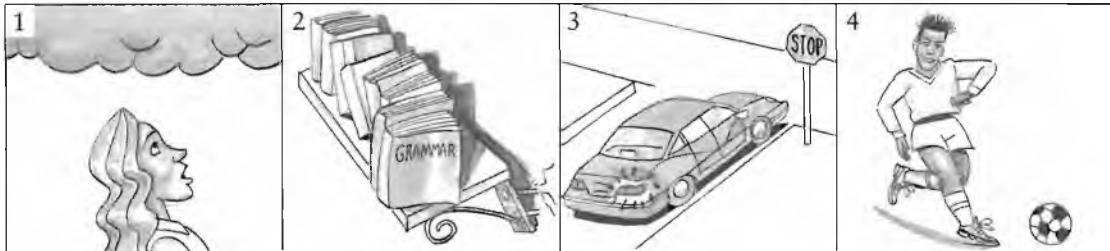
I \_\_\_\_\_

## 27.2 Complete the sentences. Use am/is/are + going to + one of these verbs:

do eat give lie down visit walk ~~wash~~ watch wear

- My hands are dirty. I 'm going to wash them.
- What are you going to wear to the party tonight?
- It's a nice day. I don't want to take the bus. I \_\_\_\_\_.
- John is going to Seattle next week. He \_\_\_\_\_ some friends.
- I'm hungry. I \_\_\_\_\_ a sandwich.
- It's Sharon's birthday next week. We \_\_\_\_\_ her a present.
- Maria says she's feeling very tired. She \_\_\_\_\_ for an hour.
- There's a good program on Channel 13 at 9:00 tonight. \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ it?
- What \_\_\_\_\_ Rachel \_\_\_\_\_ when she finishes school?

## 27.3 Look at the pictures. What is going to happen?



- It's going to rain.
- The shelf \_\_\_\_\_.
- The car \_\_\_\_\_ right.
- He \_\_\_\_\_ the ball.

## 27.4 What are you going to do today or tomorrow? Write three sentences.

- I'm \_\_\_\_\_.
- \_\_\_\_\_.
- \_\_\_\_\_.

## A



SOO MI

Soo Mi goes to work every day. She is always there from 8:30 until 4:30.

It is 11 o'clock now. Soo Mi is at work.

At 11 o'clock yesterday, she **was** at work.

At 11 o'clock tomorrow, she **will be** at work.

will + base form (will be / will win / will come, etc.)

I/we/you/they he/she/it	will ('ll) will not (won't)	be win eat come, etc.	will	I/we/you/they he/she/it	be? win? eat? come?, etc.
----------------------------	--------------------------------	--------------------------------	------	----------------------------	------------------------------------

'll = will: I'll (I will) / you'll / she'll, etc.

won't = will not: I won't (I will not) / you won't / she won't, etc.

## B

We use **will** for the *future* (tomorrow / next week, etc.).

- Sue travels a lot. Today she is in Los Angeles. Tomorrow she'll **be** in Mexico City. Next week she'll **be** in New York.
- You can call me tonight. I'll **be** home.
- Put this bread in the back yard. The birds **will eat** it.
- We'll probably **go** out tonight.
- **Will** you be home tonight?
- I **won't be** here tomorrow. (= I will not be here)
- Don't drink coffee before you go to bed. You **won't sleep**.

We often say **I think . . . will . . .**

- I **think** Diana **will pass** her driver's test.
- Do you **think** the test **will be** difficult?
- I **don't think** it **will rain** this afternoon.

We say **I don't think . . . will . . .** (*not* I think . . . won't . . .).

- I **don't think** the test **will be** difficult. (*not* I think the test won't be . . .)

## C

We do not use **will** for things we have already *arranged* or *decided* to do (see Units 26–27).

- We're going to the movies on Saturday. (*not* We will go)
- I'm not **working** tomorrow. (*not* I won't work)
- Are you going to cook dinner tonight? (*not* Will you cook)

**28.1** Tracy is traveling in South America. Complete the sentences with *she was*, *she's*, or *she'll be*.

1. Yesterday she was in Rio de Janeiro.
2. Tomorrow \_\_\_\_\_ in Bogota.
3. Last week \_\_\_\_\_ in Santiago.
4. Next week \_\_\_\_\_ in Caracas.
5. Right now \_\_\_\_\_ in Lima.
6. Three days ago \_\_\_\_\_ in Buenos Aires.
7. At the end of her trip \_\_\_\_\_ very tired.



**28.2** Where will you be? Write answers about yourself. Use one of these:

I'll be . . .      I'll probably be . . .      I don't know where I'll be.

1. At 10 o'clock tomorrow? I'll be at work. OR I'll probably be at the beach.
2. One hour from now? \_\_\_\_\_
3. At midnight tonight? \_\_\_\_\_
4. At 3 o'clock tomorrow afternoon? \_\_\_\_\_
5. Two years from now? \_\_\_\_\_

**28.3** Write *will* ('ll) or *won't*.

1. Don't drink coffee before you go to bed. You won't sleep.
2. "Are you ready yet?" "Not yet. I \_\_\_\_\_ be ready in five minutes."
3. I'm going away for a few days. I'm leaving tonight, so I \_\_\_\_\_ be at home tomorrow.
4. It \_\_\_\_\_ rain, so you don't need to take an umbrella.
5. A: I don't feel very well tonight.  
B: Well, go to bed early and you \_\_\_\_\_ feel better in the morning.
6. It's Bill's birthday next Monday. He \_\_\_\_\_ be 25.
7. I'm sorry I was late this morning. It \_\_\_\_\_ happen again.

**28.4** Rewrite these sentences. Use *I think . . .* or *I don't think . . .*

1. (Diana will pass the driver's test.) I think Diana will pass the driver's test
2. (Diana won't pass the driver's test.) I don't think Diana will pass the driver's test
3. (We'll win the game.) I \_\_\_\_\_
4. (I won't be here tomorrow.) \_\_\_\_\_
5. (Rika will like her present.) \_\_\_\_\_
6. (They won't get married.) \_\_\_\_\_
7. (You won't like the movie.) \_\_\_\_\_

**28.5** Which is right? (Study Unit 26 before you do this exercise.)

1. We'll go / We're going to the theater tonight. We've got tickets. (We're going is right.)
2. "What will you do / are you doing tomorrow night?" "Nothing. I'm free."
3. They'll leave / They're leaving tomorrow morning. Their train is at 8:40.
4. I'm sure she'll lend / she's lending us some money. She's very rich.
5. "Why are you putting on your coat?" "I'll go / I'm going out."
6. Do you think Claire will call / is calling us tonight?
7. Steve can't meet us on Saturday. He'll work / He's working.

## A



You can use **I'll . . . (I will)** when you offer or decide to do something.

- "My suitcase is very heavy." "I'll carry it for you."
- "I'll call you tomorrow, OK?" "OK. Goodbye."

We often say **I think I'll . . . / I don't think I'll . . .** when we decide to do something.

- I'm tired. **I think I'll go to bed early tonight.**
- It's a nice day. **I think I'll sit outside.**
- It's raining. **I don't think I'll go out.**

Do not use the simple present (**I go / I call**, etc.) in sentences like these:

- I'll call you tomorrow, OK? (*not I call you*)
- I think I'll go to bed early. (*not I go to bed*)

## B

Do not use **I'll . . .** for something you decided before (see Units 26–27).

- I'm **working** tomorrow. (*not I'll work*)
- There's a good program on TV tonight. **I'm going to watch** it. (*not I'll watch*)
- What **are you doing** this weekend? (*not What will you do*)

## C

Shall I/we . . . ?

Shall I answer the phone?



RING!

No, that's OK. I'll answer it.



**Shall I/we . . . ?** = Do you think this is a good thing to do? Do you think this is a good idea?

- "Shall I call you tonight?" "OK."
- It's a nice day. **Shall we go** for a walk?

We use **should** in the same way.

- "Should I call you tonight?" "OK."
- It's a nice day. **Should we go** for a walk?

# Exercises

## 29.1 Complete the sentences. Use I'll (I will) + one of these verbs:

carry do eat send show sit stay

- |                                |                              |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. My suitcase is very heavy.  | I'll carry it for you.       |
| 2. Enjoy your vacation.        | Thank you. you a postcard.   |
| 3. I don't want this banana.   | Well, I'm hungry. it.        |
| 4. Do you want a chair?        | No, that's OK. on the floor. |
| 5. Did you call Jenny?         | Oh no, I forgot. it now.     |
| 6. Are you coming with me?     | No, I don't think so. here.  |
| 7. How do you use this camera? | Give it to me and you.       |

## 29.2 Complete the sentences. Use I think I'll ... or I don't think I'll ... + one of these verbs:

buy go have play

- It's cold today. *I don't think I'll go* out.
- I'm hungry. I something to eat.
- I feel tired. tennis.
- This camera is too expensive. it.

## 29.3 Which is right?

- I call / I'll call you tomorrow, OK? (*I'll call* is right.)
- I haven't done the shopping yet. I do / I'll do it later.
- I like sports. I watch / I'll watch a lot of sports on TV.
- I need some exercise. I think I go / I'll go for a walk.
- Jim is going to buy / will buy a new car. He told me last week.
- "This letter is for Alicia." "OK. I give / I'll give / I'm going to give it to her."
- A: Are you doing / Will you do anything this evening?  
B: Yes, I'm going / I'll go out with some friends.
- "Can you tell Ted I'll be late tonight?" "Sure, I tell / I'm going to tell / I'll tell him."
- "Why are you going out?" "I do / I'll do / I'm going to do the shopping."
- I can't go out with you tomorrow night. I work / I'm working / I'll work.
- I like this hat. I think I buy / I'll buy it.

## 29.4 What does B say to A? Find the right answers.

A

- It's very warm in this room.
- This TV program is boring.
- Should we have a party?
- It's dark in this room.
- Should I go to the store?
- Shall we go out?
- Shall I wait here?
- Have we got any bread?
- Should we get some lottery tickets?

B

d

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

- If you want. Where should we go?
- Yes, who shall we invite?
- No, shall I go and get some?
- Shall I open the window?
- Should I turn on the light?
- OK, how many shall we buy?
- Should I turn it off?
- No, come with me.
- No, it's OK. I'll go.

A

Where are you going for vacation?


I'm not sure.  
I **might** go to New York.

It **might** rain.

He **might** go to New York.

(= it is possible that he will go to New York)

It **might** rain.

(= it is possible that it will rain)

**might** + *base form* (**might go** / **might be** / **might rain**, etc.)

I/we/you/they  
he/she/it

**might** (not)

be  
go  
play  
come, etc.

B

I **might** = it is possible that I will

- I **might** go to the movies tonight. (= it is possible that I will go)
- A: When is Kanya going to call you?  
B: I don't know. She **might** call this afternoon.
- Take an umbrella with you. It **might** rain.
- Buy a lottery ticket. You **might** be lucky. (= perhaps you will be lucky)
- "Are you going out tonight?" "I **might**." (= I might go out)

Study the difference:

- I'm **playing** tennis tomorrow. (*sure*)  
I **might** play tennis tomorrow. (*possible*)
- Kanya is **going to call** later. (*sure*)  
Kanya **might** call later. (*possible*)

C

The negative is **might not**.

- I **might not** go to work tomorrow. (= it is possible that I will not go)
- Sonia **might not** come to the party. (= it is possible that she will not come)

D

**may**

You can use **may** in the same way. I **may** = I **might**.

- I **may** go to the movies tonight. (= I might go)
- Sonia **may not** come to the party. (= Sonia might not come)

**May** I . . . ? = Is it OK to . . . ? / Can I . . . ?

- **May** I ask a question? (= Can I ask?)
- "May I sit here?" "Sure."

## 30.1 Write sentences with *might*.

- (it's possible that I'll go to the movies) *I might go to the movies.*
- (it's possible that I'll see you tomorrow) I \_\_\_\_\_.
- (it's possible that Sarah will forget to call) \_\_\_\_\_.
- (it's possible that it will snow today) \_\_\_\_\_.
- (it's possible that I'll be late tonight) \_\_\_\_\_.

### Write sentences with *might not*.


- (it's possible that Mark won't be here) \_\_\_\_\_.
- (it's possible that I won't have time to go out tonight) \_\_\_\_\_.

## 30.2 Somebody is asking you about your plans. You have some ideas, but you are not sure. Choose from the list and write sentences with *I might*.

Europe fish Monday new car take a trip take a taxi

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. Where are you going for vacation?                     | I'm not sure. <i>I might go to Europe.</i> |
| 2. What are you doing this weekend?                      | I don't know. I _____.                     |
| 3. When will you see Amy again?                          | I'm not sure. _____.                       |
| 4. What are you going to have for dinner?                | I don't know. _____.                       |
| 5. How are you going to get home tonight?                | I'm not sure. _____.                       |
| 6. I hear you won some money. What are you going to buy? | I haven't decided yet. _____.              |

## 30.3 You ask Adam about his plans. Sometimes he is sure, but usually he is not sure.

- |  |                        |
|--|------------------------|
| 1.  Are you playing tennis tomorrow? | Yes, in the afternoon. |
| 2. Are you going out tonight?  | Possibly.              |
| 3. Are you going to get up early?  | Maybe.                 |
| 4. Are you working tomorrow?   | No, I'm not.           |
| 5. Will you be home tomorrow night?  | Maybe.                 |
| 6. Are you going to watch television?  | I might.               |
| 7. Are you going out this afternoon?   | Yes, I am.             |
| 8. Are you going shopping?   | Maybe, I'm not sure.   |



ADAM

### Now write about Adam. Use *might* where necessary.

- He's playing tennis tomorrow afternoon.*
- He might go out tonight.*
- He \_\_\_\_\_.
- \_\_\_\_\_.
- \_\_\_\_\_.
- \_\_\_\_\_.
- \_\_\_\_\_.
- \_\_\_\_\_.

## 30.4 Write three things that you might do tomorrow.

- \_\_\_\_\_.
- \_\_\_\_\_.
- \_\_\_\_\_.



## A

I can play the piano.



He can play the piano.

Could you open the door, please?



can + base form (can do / can play / can come, etc.)

I/we/you/they he/she/it	can can't/cannot	do play see come, etc.	can	I/we/you/they he/she/it	do? play? see? come?, etc.
----------------------------	---------------------	---------------------------------	-----	----------------------------	-------------------------------------

## B

I can do something = I *know how* to do it or *it is possible* for me to do it

- I **can** play the piano. My brother **can** play the piano too.
- Sarah **can** speak Italian, but she **can't** speak Spanish.
- "Can you swim?" "Yes, but I'm not a very good swimmer."
- "Can you change a ten-dollar bill?" "I'm sorry, I **can't**."
- I'm having a party next week, but Scott and Angela **can't** come.

## C

For the *past* (yesterday / last week, etc.), we use **could/couldn't**.

- When I was young, I **could** run very fast.
- Before Shu Ling came to Canada, she **couldn't** understand much English. Now she **can** understand everything.
- I was tired last night, but I **couldn't** sleep.
- I had a party last week, but Scott and Angela **couldn't** come.

## D

Can you . . . ? Could you . . . ? Can I . . . ? Could I . . . ?

We use **Can you . . . ?** or **Could you . . . ?** when we ask people to do things.

- Can you open the door, please? or Could you open the door, please?
- Can you tell me the time, please? or Could you tell . . . ?

We use **Can I have . . . ?** or **Could I have . . . ?** to ask for something.

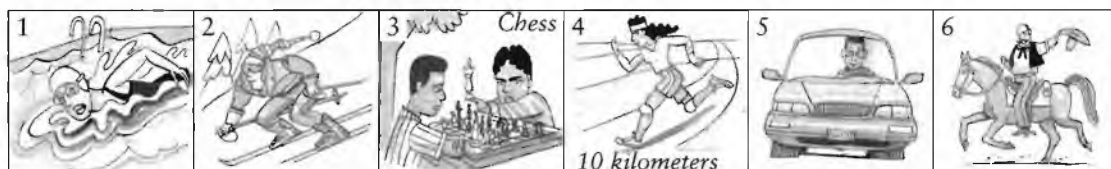
- (in a store) Can I have change for a dollar, please? or Could I have . . . ?

**Can I . . . ?** or **Could I . . . ?** = is it OK to do something?

- Tom, can I borrow your pen? or Tom, could I borrow your pen?
- (on the phone) Hello, can I speak to Jerry, please? or . . . could I speak . . . ?

# Exercises

## 31.1 Ask Steve if he can do these things:



1. Can you swim?

2. \_\_\_\_\_

3. \_\_\_\_\_

4. \_\_\_\_\_

5. \_\_\_\_\_

6. \_\_\_\_\_



STEVE

Can you do these things? Write sentences about yourself. Use *I can* or *I can't*.

- |             |           |
|-------------|-----------|
| 7. I _____. | 10. _____ |
| 8. _____    | 11. _____ |
| 9. _____    | 12. _____ |

## 31.2 Complete these sentences. Use *can* or *can't* + one of these verbs:

come find hear see speak

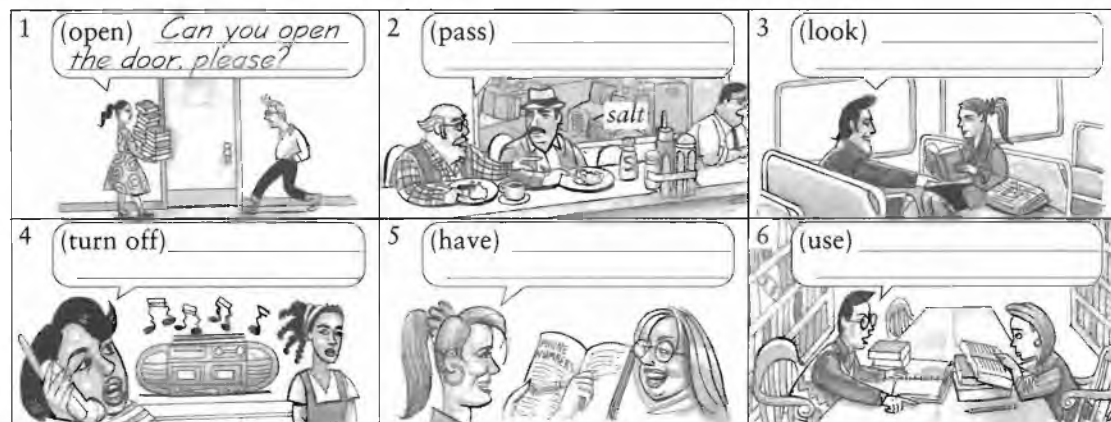
- I'm sorry but we can't come to your party next Saturday.
- I like this hotel room. You \_\_\_\_\_ the mountains from the window.
- You are speaking very quietly. I \_\_\_\_\_ you.
- Have you seen my suitcase? I \_\_\_\_\_ it.
- Catherine got the job because she \_\_\_\_\_ five languages.

## 31.3 Complete these sentences. Use *can't* or *couldn't* + one of these verbs:

decide eat find go go sleep

- I was tired, but I couldn't sleep.
- I wasn't hungry yesterday. I \_\_\_\_\_ my dinner.
- Angela doesn't know what to do. She \_\_\_\_\_.
- I wanted to speak to Mark yesterday, but I \_\_\_\_\_ him.
- Jim \_\_\_\_\_ to the concert next Saturday. He has to work.
- Yoko \_\_\_\_\_ to the meeting last week. She was sick.

## 31.4 What do you say in these situations? Use *can* or *could*. Use the words in parentheses ( ).



## A

Tracy's not at work today. She **must be** sick.



She **must be** sick = I am sure she is sick, it is clear that she is sick

**Must + base form**  
(must be / must know, etc.)

I/we/you/they  
he/she/it

**must (not)**

be  
know  
have  
live, etc.

We use **must** when we believe that something is true.

- You worked ten hours today. You **must be** tired.
- My brother has worked at your company for years. You **must know** him.
- My friends have the same zip code as you. They **must live** close to you.
- (on the telephone) This isn't the Smiths'? I'm sorry. I **must have** the wrong number.

We use **must not** when we believe that something is *not* true.

- The phone rang eight times and Karen didn't answer. She **must not be** at home.
- Carlos takes the bus everywhere. He **must not have** a car.
- The Silvas are always home on Friday. They **must not work** then.

## B

**Must** also has another meaning. You **must do** something = it is necessary to do it

- You **must be** careful with this knife.  
It's very sharp.
- Workers **must wear** safety glasses  
at this machine.
- In the U.S., you **must be** 18 to vote.

For the *past* (yesterday, last week, etc.), we use **had to** ... (*not must*).

- They were in a dangerous situation. They **had to be** careful. (*not They must be careful.*)
- We **had to wear** safety glasses when we visited the factory last week. (*not we must wear*)

You **must not do** something = it is necessary *not* to do it, it is the wrong thing to do

- Bicyclists **must not ride** on the sidewalk.  
(= they must ride in the street)
- You **must not be** late for school again!



## 32.1 Complete the sentences. Use *must be* + one of these:

for you good hungry in the kitchen tired very happy

1. Silvia worked ten hours today. She *must be tired* .
2. It's evening and you haven't eaten anything all day. You \_\_\_\_\_ .
3. It's the most popular restaurant in town, so the food \_\_\_\_\_ .
4. "I got the job!" "You did? That's great. You \_\_\_\_\_ ."
5. The phone's ringing. I know it's not for me. It \_\_\_\_\_ .
6. My keys aren't in the living room, so they \_\_\_\_\_ .

## 32.2 Complete the sentences. Use *must* + one of these:

drink have ~~know~~ like work

1. My brother has worked at your company for years. You *must know* him.
2. Marilyn wears something blue every day. She \_\_\_\_\_ the color blue.
3. The Hills have six children and three dogs. They \_\_\_\_\_ a big house.
4. Mrs. Lee bought three gallons of milk at the store. Her children \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of milk.
5. I know Mrs. Romo has a job, but she's always home during the day. She \_\_\_\_\_ nights.

## 32.3 Write *must* or *must not*.

1. (on the telephone) This isn't the Smiths'? I'm sorry. I *must* have the wrong number.
2. Carlos takes the bus everywhere. He *must not* have a car.
3. Brandon is very thin. He \_\_\_\_\_ eat very much.
4. I never see my neighbor in the morning. He \_\_\_\_\_ leave for work very early.
5. I always have to repeat things when I talk to Kelly. She \_\_\_\_\_ hear very well.
6. Jim wears the same clothes every day. He \_\_\_\_\_ have many clothes.
7. You have a cold and a fever? Poor thing! You \_\_\_\_\_ feel awful.

## 32.4 Complete the sentences. Use *must* + one of these:

~~be~~ be get know take wear

1. In most of the U.S., you *must be* \_\_\_\_\_ at least 16 to get a driver's license.
2. For this job, you \_\_\_\_\_ both English and Spanish.
3. People in the front seat of a car \_\_\_\_\_ a seat belt.
4. High school students who want to go to college \_\_\_\_\_ good grades.
5. This highway is closed. Drivers \_\_\_\_\_ another road.
6. A tennis player \_\_\_\_\_ very good to play professionally.

## 32.5 Write *must*, *mustn't*, or *had to*.

1. We *mustn't* \_\_\_\_\_ forget to send Sam a birthday card.
2. We *had to* \_\_\_\_\_ wear safety glasses when we visited the factory.
3. I \_\_\_\_\_ hurry or I'll be late.
4. "Why were you so late?" "I \_\_\_\_\_ wait half an hour for the bus."
5. Keep these papers in a safe place. You \_\_\_\_\_ lose them.
6. Bicyclists \_\_\_\_\_ follow the same traffic rules as drivers.
7. We \_\_\_\_\_ forget to turn off the lights when we leave.
8. I don't usually work on Saturdays, but last Saturday I \_\_\_\_\_ work.

## A

You **shouldn't** watch TV so much.



**Should + base form**  
(should do / should watch, etc.)

I/we/you/they  
he/she/it

should  
shouldn't

do  
stop  
go  
watch, etc.

## B

You **should** do something = it is a good thing to do, it is the right thing to do

- Tom **should** go to bed earlier. He goes to bed very late, and he's always tired.
- It's a good movie. You **should** go and see it.
- When you play tennis, you **should** always **watch** the ball.

**Should I** do something? = is it a good thing to do?

- **Should I** invite Karen to dinner?
- **Should we** buy something special for dinner?

## C

You **shouldn't** do something = it is not a good thing to do (**shouldn't** = **should not**)

- Tom **shouldn't** go to bed so late.
- You watch TV all the time. You **shouldn't** watch TV so much.

## D

We often use **think** with **should**.

**I think . . . should . . .**

- I **think** Gary **should** buy some new clothes. (= I think it is a good idea.)
- It's late. I **think** I **should** go home now.

**I don't think . . . should . . .**

- I **don't think** you **should** work so hard.  
(= I don't think it is a good idea.)
- I **don't think** we **should** go yet. It's too early.

**Do you think . . . should . . . ?**

- **Do you think** I **should** buy this coat?
- What time do you **think** we **should** go home?

**Do you think I should buy this coat?**



## E

**Should** is different from **have to**.

- I **should** study tonight, but I think I'll go to the movies.
- I **have to** study tonight. I can't go to the movies.

## F

Another way to say **should** is **ought to**.

- I **ought to** study tonight, but I think I'll go to the movies. (= I **should** study)
- I think Gary **ought to** buy some new clothes. (= Gary **should** buy)


33.1 Complete the sentences. Use *you should* + one of these verbs:

brush go read visit watch wear


- 1. When you play tennis, you should watch the ball.
- 2. It's late and you're very tired. \_\_\_\_\_ to bed.
- 3. \_\_\_\_\_ your teeth twice a day.
- 4. If you have time, \_\_\_\_\_ the Science Museum. It's very interesting.
- 5. When you're driving, \_\_\_\_\_ a seat belt.
- 6. It's a very good book. \_\_\_\_\_ it.

33.2 Write about the people in the pictures. Use *He/She shouldn't ... so ...*

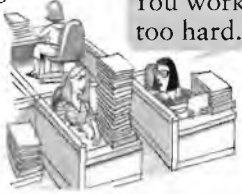
1 You watch TV too much.




2 I eat too much.



3 You work too hard.



4 I drive too fast.



1. She shouldn't watch TV so much.

2. He \_\_\_\_\_.

3. \_\_\_\_\_ hard.

4. \_\_\_\_\_.

33.3 You ask a friend for advice. Write questions with *Do you think I should ... ?*

- 1. You are in a store. You are trying on a jacket. You ask your friend:  
(buy) Do you think I should buy this jacket?
- 2. You can't drive. You ask your friend:  
(learn) Do you think \_\_\_\_\_ ?
- 3. You don't like your job. You ask your friend:  
(get another job) \_\_\_\_\_
- 4. You are going to have a party. You ask your friend:  
(invite Scott) \_\_\_\_\_

33.4 Write sentences with *I think ... should* or *I don't think ... should*.

- 1. We have to get up early tomorrow. I think we should go home now. (go home now)
- 2. That coat is too big for you. I don't think you should buy it. (buy it)
- 3. You don't need your car. \_\_\_\_\_ (sell it)
- 4. Diane needs a change. \_\_\_\_\_ (take a trip)
- 5. Karen and Don are too young. \_\_\_\_\_ (get married)
- 6. You're still sick. \_\_\_\_\_ (go to work)
- 7. James isn't feeling well today. \_\_\_\_\_ (go to the doctor)
- 8. This hotel is too expensive for us. \_\_\_\_\_ (stay here)

33.5 What do you think? Write sentences with *should*.

- 1. I think everybody should learn another language.
- 2. I think everybody \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3. I think \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4. I don't think \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5. I think I should \_\_\_\_\_.

I have to . . .

A



I have to do something = it is necessary for me to do it, I am obliged to do it

I/we/you/they	have	to do to work to go to wear, etc.
he/she/it	has	

- I'm going to be late for work tomorrow. I **have to go** to the dentist.
- Kim starts work at 7 o'clock, so she **has to get up** at 6:00.
- You **have to pass** a test before you can get a driver's license.

B

The *past* (yesterday / last week, etc.) is **had to** . . .

- I was late for work yesterday. I **had to go** to the dentist.
- We **had to walk** home last night. There were no buses.

C

In *questions* and *negatives* we use **do/does** (*present*) and **did** (*past*).

*Present*

do	I/we/you/they	have to . . . ?	I/we/you/they	don't	have to . . .
does	he/she/it		he/she/it	doesn't	

*Past*

did	I/we/you/they	have to . . . ?	I/we/you/they	didn't have to . . .
	he/she/it		he/she/it	

- What time **do you have to go** to the dentist tomorrow?
- Does Kim **have to work** on Saturdays?
- Why **did they have to leave** the party early?

I **don't have to** do something = it is not necessary to do it

- I'm not working tomorrow, so I **don't have to get up** early.
- Da Ming **doesn't have to work** very hard. He's got an easy job.
- We **didn't have to wait** very long for the bus.

D

**must**

You can also use **must** to say it is necessary to do something.

- You **must pass** a test before you can get a driver's license.
- In many countries, men **must do** military service.

We use **have to** more often than **must**, especially in spoken English.

# Exercises

## 34.1 Complete the sentences. Use *have to* or *has to* + one of these verbs:

hit read speak take travel ~~wear~~

1. My eyes are not very good. I have to wear glasses.
2. At the end of the course, all the students \_\_\_\_\_ a test.
3. Marta is studying literature. She \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of books.
4. Alberto doesn't understand much English. You \_\_\_\_\_ to him very slowly.
5. Kate is not at home much. She \_\_\_\_\_ a lot for her job.
6. In tennis you \_\_\_\_\_ the ball over the net.

## 34.2 Complete the sentences. Use *have to* or *had to* + one of these verbs:

answer buy change go take wake ~~walk~~

1. We had to walk home last night. There were no buses.
2. It's late. I \_\_\_\_\_ now. I'll see you tomorrow.
3. I went to the store after work yesterday. I \_\_\_\_\_ some food.
4. This bus doesn't go all the way downtown. You \_\_\_\_\_ at First Avenue.
5. We took an exam yesterday. We \_\_\_\_\_ six questions out of ten.
6. I'm going to bed early. I \_\_\_\_\_ up early tomorrow.
7. Amy and her cousin can't go out with us tonight. They \_\_\_\_\_ care of Amy's little brother.

## 34.3 Complete the questions. Some are present and some are past.

- |                                     |  |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| 1. I have to get up early tomorrow. | What time <u>do you have to get up</u> ? |
| 2. Eric had to wait a long time.    | How long _____ ?                         |
| 3. Liz has to go somewhere.         | Where _____ ?                            |
| 4. We had to pay a lot of money.    | How much _____ ?                         |
| 5. I have to do some work.          | What exactly _____ ?                     |
| 6. They had to leave early.         | Why _____ ?                              |

## 34.4 Write sentences with *don't/doesn't/didn't have to* . . . .

1. Why do you want to pay the bill now? You don't have to pay it now.
2. Why is Hannah waiting? She \_\_\_\_\_ .
3. Why did you get up early? You \_\_\_\_\_ .
4. Why is Joel working so hard? He \_\_\_\_\_ .
5. Why do you want to leave now? We \_\_\_\_\_ .

## 34.5 Write some things that you (or your friends or family) *have to do* or *had to do*.

1. (every day) I have to drive fifty miles to work every day.
2. (every day) \_\_\_\_\_
3. (tomorrow) \_\_\_\_\_
4. (yesterday) \_\_\_\_\_
5. (last week) \_\_\_\_\_
6. (when I was younger) \_\_\_\_\_



## A

Would you like . . . ? = Do you want . . . ?

We use **Would you like . . . ?** to offer things.

- A: **Would you like some coffee?**  
B: No, thank you.
- A: **Would you like a piece of candy?**  
B: Yes, thanks.
- A: **What would you like, tea or coffee?**  
B: Tea, please.

We use **Would you like to . . . ?** to invite somebody.

- **Would you like to go for a walk?**
- A: **Would you like to have dinner with us on Sunday?**  
B: Yes, I'd love to. (= I would love to have dinner with you.)
- **What would you like to do tonight?**

Would you like a piece of candy?

Yes, thanks.



## B

**I'd like . . .** is a polite way to say "I want." (**I'd like** = **I would like**)

- I'm thirsty. **I'd like a drink.**
- (*in a tourist office*) **I'd like a road map, please.**
- **I'd like to watch the news on television tonight.**

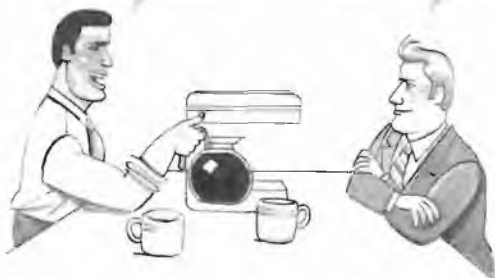
## C

**Would you like . . . ?** and **Do you like . . . ?**

**Would you like . . . ? / I'd like . . .**

Would you like  
some coffee?

Yes, thanks.



**Would you like some coffee? = Do you want some coffee?**

- A: **Would you like to go to the movies tonight?** (= Do you want to go tonight?)  
B: Yes, I'd love to.
- **I'd like an orange, please.** (= Can I have an orange?)
- **What would you like to do next weekend?**

**Do you like . . . ? / I like . . .**

Do you like coffee?

Yes, I do.

Would you like  
some now?

No, thank  
you. Not  
now.



**Do you like coffee? = Do you think coffee is good?**

- A: **Do you like to go to the movies?**  
(*in general*)  
B: Yes, I go to the movies a lot.
- **I like oranges.** (*in general*)
- **What do you like to do on weekends?**

# Exercises

## 35.1 What are the people in the pictures saying? Use *Would you like ...* ?

1. *Would you like a piece of candy?*



2. \_\_\_\_\_



3. \_\_\_\_\_



4. \_\_\_\_\_



5. \_\_\_\_\_



6. \_\_\_\_\_



## 35.2 What do you say to Sue in these situations? Use *Would you like to ...* ? and the words in parentheses ( ).

- You want to go to the movies tonight. You hope Sue will go too.  
You say: (go) *Would you like to go to the movies tonight?*
- You want to play tennis tomorrow. You hope Sue will play with you.  
You say: (play) \_\_\_\_\_
- You've got some vacation pictures. Sue hasn't seen them yet.  
You say: (see) \_\_\_\_\_
- You have an extra ticket for a concert next week. You hope Sue will go with you.  
You say: (go) \_\_\_\_\_
- It's raining and Sue is going out. She doesn't have an umbrella, but you have one.  
You say: (borrow) \_\_\_\_\_

## 35.3 Which is right?

- ~~"Do you like / Would you like a piece of candy?"~~ "Yes, thanks." (*Would you like* is right.)
- ~~"Do you like / Would you like bananas?"~~ "Yes, I love them."
- ~~"Do you like / Would you like some ice cream?"~~ "No, thank you."
- ~~"What do you like / would you like to drink?"~~ "A glass of water, please."
- ~~"Do you like / Would you like to go out for a walk?"~~ "Not now. Maybe later."
- I like / I'd like* tomatoes, but I don't eat them very often.
- What time *do you like / would you like* to have dinner tonight?
- ~~"Do you like / Would you like something to eat?"~~ "No, thanks. I'm not hungry."
- ~~"Do you like / Would you like your new job?"~~ "Yes, I'm enjoying it."
- I'm tired. *I like / I'd like* to go to sleep now.

## A

Would you like to sit here?

No, thanks. I'd rather sit on the floor.



Angela likes to sit on the floor. She doesn't want to sit on a chair. So she says:

**I'd rather sit on the floor.**

(= I would prefer to sit on the floor.)

**I'd rather . . . = I would rather . . .**

I would rather do something = I would prefer to do something

*Positive*

*Negative*

*Question*

<p><b>I'd rather</b> (I would rather)</p> <p>do stay have be</p>	<p><b>I'd rather not</b> (I would rather not)</p> <p>do stay have be</p>	<p><b>Would you rather</b></p> <p>do? stay? have? be?</p>
--	--	---

- I don't really want to go out. I'd rather stay home. (= I'd prefer to stay home.)
- "Should we go now?" "No, I'd rather wait until later."
- I want to go now, but Tom would rather wait until later.
- I don't like to be late. I'd rather be early.
- I'm feeling tired. I'd rather not go out tonight. (= I'd prefer not to go out.)
- Beth is feeling tired. She'd rather not go out tonight.
- We're not hungry. We'd rather not eat yet.
- "Do you want to go out tonight?" "I'd rather not." (= I'd rather not go out.)
- "Would you rather have milk or juice?" "Juice, please."
- Which would you rather do – go to the movies or watch a video at home?

## B

We say "I'd rather do something." (*not to do something*)

- I'd rather sit on the floor. (*not I'd rather to sit*)
- Beth would rather not go out. (*not would rather not to go*)

But we say "I'd prefer to do something."

- I'd prefer to sit on the floor.
- Beth would prefer not to go out.

## C

You can say "I'd rather . . . than . . ."

- I'd rather go out **than** stay home.
- I'd rather have a dog **than** a cat.
- We'd rather go to the movies **than** watch a video at home.
- I'd rather be at home right now **than** here.

# Exercises

## 36.1 Look at the pictures and complete B's sentences. Use *I'd rather* . . .

1. Would you like to sit here?



No, thanks. *I'd rather sit on the floor.*

2. Do you want to watch TV?



No, I                       
my book.

3. Would you like some tea?



Well,                       
coffee if you have some.

4. Should we go out now?



    
until it stops raining.

## 36.2 Complete these questions. Use *would you rather* . . .

- Do you want to go out, or *would you rather stay*    home?
- Should we have dinner now, or    later?
- Would you like a glass of iced tea, or    water?
- Do you want to go to the movies, or    TV?

## 36.3 Complete the sentences with a verb. Sometimes you need *to*.

- I'd rather *stay*                      home tonight. I'd prefer not *to go*                      out.
- Should we walk home, or would you rather                      a taxi?
- Do you want me to go with you, or would you prefer                      alone?
- Vera doesn't want to go to college. She'd rather                      a job.
- "Can I help you with your suitcase?" "No, thanks. I'd rather                      it myself."
- I'd rather not                      him. I'd prefer                      him a letter.

## 36.4 Write sentences about yourself with *I'd rather* . . . *than*.

1. Which would you prefer to be – a bus driver or an airline pilot?

*I'd rather be an airplane pilot than a bus driver*

2. Which would you prefer to be – a journalist or a teacher?

I'd rather   

3. Where would you prefer to live – in a big city or a small town?

4. Which would you prefer to have – a cat or a dog?

5. What would you prefer to study – electronics or philosophy?

## A



We use the *base form* (come/go/do/wait/be, etc.) when we tell someone to do something.

- "Come here and look at this!" "What is it?"
- I don't want to talk to you. Go away!
- Please wait for me.
- Please be quiet. I'm working.
- Goodbye. Have a nice time.

The negative is **don't** . . . (don't come/go/do/wait/be, etc.). (don't = do not)

- Stay here. Please don't go.
- Don't be silly!
- Be careful! Don't fall.

## B

You can say **Let's** . . . when you want people to do things with you. (let's = let us)

- It's a nice day. Let's go out.  
(= you and I can go out)

We use **let's** + *base form*  
(let's go/do/have, etc.).

- Come on! Let's dance.
- Are you ready? Let's go.
- Let's have fish for dinner tonight.
- "Should we go out tonight?"  
"No, I'm tired. Let's stay home."



## C

The negative is **let's not** . . .

- It's cold. Let's not go out. Let's stay home.
- Let's not have fish for dinner. Let's have chicken.

# Exercises

**37.1** Look at the pictures. What are the people saying? Sometimes the sentence is positive (*go/eat, etc.*) and sometimes it is negative (*don't go / don't eat, etc.*). Use these verbs:

buy come drink sit sleep smile talk turn



**37.2** Complete the sentences. Use *No, let's . . . + one of these:*

go for a swim go to a restaurant take the bus wait watch TV

1. Would you like to play tennis?
2. Do you want to drive downtown?
3. Shall we go to the movies?
4. Should we have dinner at home?
5. Would you like to begin now?

*No, let's go for a swim.*

No, \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

**37.3** Answer with *No, don't . . .* or *No, let's not . . .*

1. Shall I wait for you?
2. Should we go home now?
3. Shall we go out?
4. Should I close the door?
5. Should I call you tonight?
6. Should we wait for Dave?
7. Shall I turn on the light?
8. Should we take a taxi?

*No, don't wait for me.*

*No, let's not go home now.*

\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

## A



There's a man on the roof. There's a train at 10:30. There are seven days in a week.

## Singular

there is . . . (there's)  
is there . . . ?  
there is not . . . (there isn't  
or there's not)

- There's a big tree in the yard.
- There's a good movie on TV tonight.
- A: Do you have any money?  
B: Yes, **there's** some in my wallet.
- A: Excuse me, **is there** a hotel near here?  
B: Yes, **there is**. / No, **there isn't**.
- We can't go skiing. **There isn't** any snow.

## Plural

there are . . .  
are there . . . ?  
there are not . . . (there aren't)

- **There are** some big trees in the yard.
- **There are** a lot of accidents on this road.
- A: **Are there** any mistakes in my letter?  
B: Yes, **there are**. / No, **there aren't**.
- This restaurant is very quiet. **There aren't** many people here.
- How many players **are there** on a soccer team?
- **There are** 11 players on a soccer team.

## B

there is and it is

there is



There's a book on the table.  
(*not* It's a book on the table.)

it is



I like **this book**. **It's** funny. (it = this book)

Compare:

- "What's **that** noise?" "It's a train." (it = that noise)  
**There's** a train at 10:30. **It's** a fast train. (it = the 10:30 train)
- **There's** a lot of salt in this soup.  
I don't like **this** soup. **It's** too salty. (it = this soup)

**38.1** Springfield is a small town. Write sentences about Springfield with *There is/are* or *There isn't/aren't*. Use the information in the box.

1. A golf course?	No	1. <i>There isn't a golf course.</i>
2. Any restaurants?	Yes (a lot)	2. <i>There are a lot of restaurants.</i>
3. A hospital?	Yes	3. _____
4. A swimming pool?	No	4. _____
5. Any movie theaters?	Yes (two)	5. _____
6. A university?	No	6. _____
7. Any big hotels?	No	7. _____

**38.2** Write about your town (or a town that you know). Use *There is/are/isn't/aren't*.

- |  |          |
|--|----------|
| 1. <i>There are a few restaurants.</i> | 4. _____ |
| 2. <i>There's a big park.</i>          | 5. _____ |
| 3. _____                               | 6. _____ |

**38.3** Write *there is / there isn't / is there / there are / there aren't / are there*.

- Springfield isn't an old town. *There aren't* any old buildings.
- Look! \_\_\_\_\_ a picture of your brother in the newspaper!
- "Excuse me, \_\_\_\_\_ a bank near here?" "Yes, at the end of the block."
- \_\_\_\_\_ five people in my family: my parents, my two sisters, and me.
- "How many students \_\_\_\_\_ in the class?" "Twenty."
- "Can we take a picture?" "No, \_\_\_\_\_ any film in the camera."
- "\_\_\_\_\_ a bus downtown from the airport?" "Yes. Every 20 minutes."
- "\_\_\_\_\_ any problems?" "No, everything is OK."
- \_\_\_\_\_ nowhere to sit down. \_\_\_\_\_ any chairs.

**38.4** Write sentences with *There are* . . . . Choose from the boxes.

seven	twenty-six	days	planets	a hockey team	the English alphabet
nine	thirty	days	players	<del>a week</del>	the solar system
eleven	fifty	letters	states	September	the USA

- There are seven days in a week* - - - - -
- \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_

**38.5** Write *there's / is there / it's / is it*.

- "*There's* a flight at 10:30." "*Is it* a non-stop flight?"
- I'm not going to buy this shirt. \_\_\_\_\_ too expensive.
- "What's wrong?" "\_\_\_\_\_ something in my eye."
- \_\_\_\_\_ a red car outside the house. \_\_\_\_\_ yours?
- "\_\_\_\_\_ anything good on TV tonight?" "Yes, \_\_\_\_\_ a movie at 8:00."
- "What's that building?" "\_\_\_\_\_ a school."
- "\_\_\_\_\_ a restaurant in this hotel?" "No, I'm sorry."



# There was/were there has been / have been there will be

## A

there was/were (*past*)

There is a train every hour.

It's 11:15 now.

There was a train at 11 o'clock.



Compare:

there is/are (*present*)

- There is a good movie on TV tonight.
- We are staying at a big hotel. There are 1,250 rooms.
- Are there any phone messages for me today?
- I'm hungry, but there isn't anything to eat.

there was/were (*past*)

- There was a good movie on TV last night.
- We stayed at a very big hotel. There were 1,250 rooms.
- Were there any phone messages for me yesterday?
- When I got home, I was hungry, but there wasn't anything to eat.

## B

there has been / have been (*present perfect*)

There's been an accident.



- Look! There's been an accident. (there's been = there has been)
- This road is very dangerous. There have been a lot of accidents here.

Compare there was (*past*):

- There was an accident last night. (not There has been an accident last night.)

For present perfect and simple past, see Unit 19.

## C

there will be

There will be rain tomorrow afternoon.

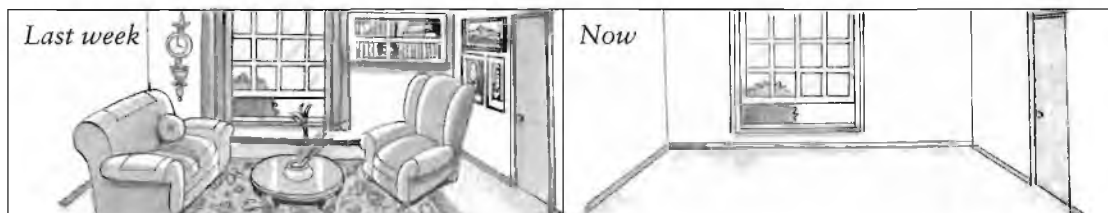


- Do you think there will be a lot of people at the party on Saturday?
- The manager of the company is leaving, so there will be a new manager soon.
- I'm going away tomorrow. I'm packing my things today because there won't be time tomorrow. (there won't be = there will not be)

# Exercises

**39.1** Look at the two pictures. The room is empty now. What was in the room last week? Write sentences with *There was . . .* or *There were . . .* + one of these:

a clock	an armchair	a sofa	some flowers
a coffee table	a rug	some books	three pictures



1. *There was a clock* on the wall near the window.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ on the floor.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ on the wall near the door.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ in the middle of the room.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ on the table.
6. \_\_\_\_\_ on the shelves.
7. \_\_\_\_\_ in the corner near the door.
8. \_\_\_\_\_ opposite the armchair.

**39.2** Write *there was / there wasn't / was there / there were / there weren't / were there*.

1. I was hungry but *there wasn't* anything to eat.
2. *Were there* any phone messages for me yesterday?
3. \_\_\_\_\_ a soccer game on TV last night. Did you see it?
4. "We stayed at a very nice hotel." "Really? \_\_\_\_\_ a swimming pool?"
5. "Did you buy any cherries?" "No, \_\_\_\_\_ any at the store."
6. "\_\_\_\_\_ many people at the meeting?" "No, very few."
7. We didn't visit the museum. \_\_\_\_\_ enough time.
8. I'm sorry I'm late. \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of traffic.
9. Twenty years ago \_\_\_\_\_ many tourists here. Now there are a lot.

**39.3** Write *there + is / are / was / were / has been / have been / will be*.

1. *There was* a good movie on TV last night.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ twenty-four hours in a day.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ a party at work last Friday, but I didn't go.
4. "Where can I buy a newspaper?" "\_\_\_\_\_ a newsstand at the end of the block."
5. "Why are those police officers outside the bank?" "\_\_\_\_\_ a robbery."
6. When we got to the theater, \_\_\_\_\_ a long line outside.
7. When you arrive tomorrow, \_\_\_\_\_ somebody at the airport to meet you.
8. Ten years ago \_\_\_\_\_ five hundred children at the school. Now \_\_\_\_\_ more than a thousand.
9. Last week I went back to the town where I was born. It's very different now. \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of changes.
10. I think everything will be OK. I don't think \_\_\_\_\_ any problems.

## A

We use **it** for time/day/distance/weather.

### Time



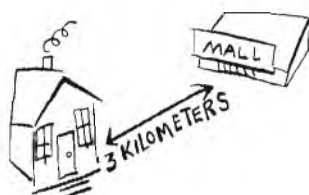
- What time is it?
- It's half past ten.
- It's late.
- It's time to go home.

### Day



- What day is it?
- It's Thursday.
- It's March 16<sup>th</sup>.
- It was my birthday yesterday.

### Distance



- It's three kilometers from our house to the mall.
- How far is it from New York to Los Angeles?
- It's a long way from here to the airport.
- We can walk home. It isn't far.

We use **far** in questions (*is it far?*) and negatives (*it isn't far*).  
We use **a long way** in positive sentences (*it's a long way*).

### Weather



- It's raining.
- It rains a lot here.
- It isn't raining.
- It didn't rain yesterday.
- Is it snowing?
- Does it snow very often?
- It's warm/hot/cold/nice/cloudy/clear/dry/humid/windy/sunny/foggy/dark, etc.
- It's a nice day today.

Compare **it** and **there**:

- It rains a lot in the winter.
- It was very windy yesterday.
- It's very rainy in the winter.
- There was a strong wind yesterday.
- There is a lot of rain in the winter.

## B

It's nice to . . . , etc.

It's	easy/difficult/impossible/dangerous/safe/expensive/interesting/nice/wonderful/terrible, etc.	to . . .
------	--	----------

- It's nice to see you again. (it = to see you again)
- It's impossible to understand her. (it = to understand her)
- It wasn't easy to find your house. (it = to find your house)

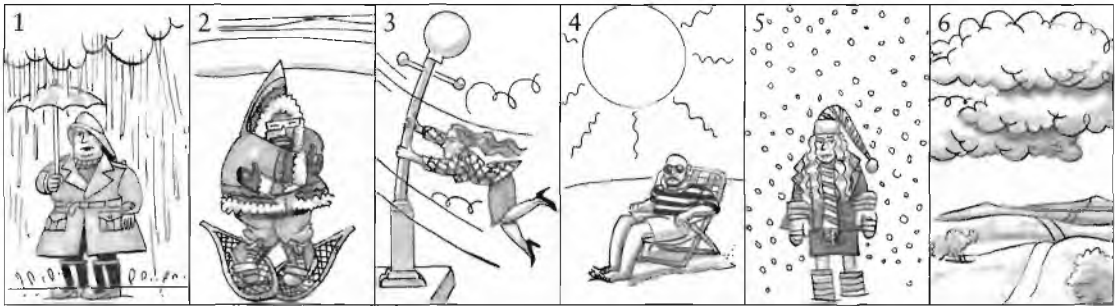
## C

Don't forget to use **it**.

- It's raining again. (*not* Is raining again)
- Is it true that you are moving to Australia? (*not* Is true that . . . ?)

Exercises

40.1 Write about the weather in the pictures. Use *It's* . . . .



1. *It's raining.*

2. \_\_\_\_\_

3. \_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_\_\_

5. \_\_\_\_\_

6. \_\_\_\_\_

40.2 Write *it's* (it is) or *is it*.

1. What time *is it* ?

2. We must go now. \_\_\_\_\_ very late.

3. \_\_\_\_\_ true that Bill can fly a helicopter?

4. "What day \_\_\_\_\_ today? Tuesday?"  
"No, \_\_\_\_\_ Wednesday."

5. \_\_\_\_\_ OK to call you at the office?
6. \_\_\_\_\_ twelve kilometers from  
downtown to the airport.

7. "Do you want to walk to the restaurant?"  
"I don't know. How far \_\_\_\_\_?"

8. \_\_\_\_\_ Linda's birthday today. She's 27.

9. I don't believe it! \_\_\_\_\_ impossible.

40.3 Write questions with *How far* . . . ?

1. (here / the station) *How far is it from here to the station?*

2. (the hotel / the beach) How \_\_\_\_\_ ?

3. (New York / Washington) \_\_\_\_\_

4. (your house / the airport) \_\_\_\_\_

40.4 Write *it* or *there*.

1. *It* rains a lot in the winter.

2. *There* was a strong wind yesterday.

3. \_\_\_\_\_ was a nice day yesterday.

4. We can't go skiing. \_\_\_\_\_ isn't any snow.

5. \_\_\_\_\_'s hot in this room. Open a window.
6. I was afraid because \_\_\_\_\_ was very dark.

7. \_\_\_\_\_ was a storm last night. Did  
you hear it?

8. \_\_\_\_\_'s a long way from here to the  
nearest gas station.

40.5 Complete the sentences. Choose from the boxes.

it's

easy

difficult

impossible

dangerous

nice

interesting

to

work in this office

visit different places

see you again

~~get up early~~

go out alone

make friends

1. If you go to bed late, *it's difficult to get up early* \_\_\_\_\_ in the morning.

2. Hello, Jill. \_\_\_\_\_ How are you?

3. \_\_\_\_\_ There is too much noise.

4. Everybody is very nice at work. \_\_\_\_\_

5. I like traveling. \_\_\_\_\_

6. Some cities are not safe. \_\_\_\_\_ at night.

## A



I'm not tired.

I am.



Do you like tea?

No, I don't.



Yes, I do.



She isn't tired, but he is.  
(= he is tired)

He likes tea, but she doesn't.  
(= she doesn't like tea)

In these examples, it is not necessary to repeat some words (he is *tired*, she doesn't *like tea*).

You can use these verbs in the same way.

am/is/are  
was/were  
have/has  
do/does/did  
can  
will  
might  
should

- I haven't seen the movie, but my sister **has**. (= She has seen the movie.)
- A: Please help me.  
B: I'm sorry. I **can't**. (= I can't help you.)
- A: Are you tired?  
B: I **was**, but I'm not now. (= I was tired, but I'm not tired now.)
- A: Do you think Marta will call tonight?  
B: She **might**. (= she might call)
- A: Are you going to study tonight?  
B: I **should**, but I probably **won't**.  
(= I should study, but I probably won't study.)

You *cannot* use 'm/'s/'ve, etc. (*short forms*) in this way. You must use **am/is/have**, etc.

- She isn't tired, but he **is**. (*not* . . . but he's)

But you *can* use **isn't/haven't/won't**, etc. (*negative short forms*).

- My sister has seen the movie, but I **haven't**.
- "Are you and Jim working tomorrow?" "I am, but Jim **isn't**."

## B

You can use **I am / I'm not**, etc., after **Yes** and **No**.

- "Are you tired?" "Yes, I **am**. / No, I'm not."
- "Will Alan be here tomorrow?" "Yes, he **will**. / No, he **won't**."
- "Is there a bus to the airport?" "Yes, there **is**. / No, there **isn't**."

## C

We use **do/does** for the *simple present* (see Units 6–7).

- I don't like hot weather, but Megan **does**. (= Megan likes hot weather.)
- Megan works hard, but I **don't**. (= I don't work hard.)
- "Do you enjoy your work?" "Yes, I **do**."

We use **did** for the *simple past* (see Unit 12).

- A: Did you and John like the movie?  
B: I **did**, but John **didn't**. (= I liked it, but John didn't like it.)
- "I had a good time." "I **did** too." (= I had a good time too.)
- "Did it rain yesterday?" "No, it **didn't**."

## 41.1 Complete these sentences. Use only one verb (*is/have/can*, etc.) each time.

1. Kate wasn't hungry, but we were .
2. I'm not married, but my sister \_\_\_\_\_ .
3. Bill can't help you, but I \_\_\_\_\_ .
4. I haven't read the book, but Ed \_\_\_\_\_ .
5. Ken won't be here, but Sue \_\_\_\_\_ .
6. You weren't late, but I \_\_\_\_\_ .

## 41.2 Complete these sentences with a negative verb (*isn't/haven't/can't*, etc.).

1. Sam can play the piano, but I can't .
2. Marta is working today, but I \_\_\_\_\_ .
3. I was working, but my friends \_\_\_\_\_ .
4. Bob has been to China, but I \_\_\_\_\_ .
5. I'm ready to go, but Tom \_\_\_\_\_ .
6. I've seen the movie, but Kim \_\_\_\_\_ .

## 41.3 Complete these sentences with *do/does/did* or *don't/doesn't/didn't*.

1. I don't like hot weather, but Megan does .
2. Megan likes hot weather, but I don't .
3. My mother wears glasses, but my father \_\_\_\_\_ .
4. You don't know Paul very well, but I \_\_\_\_\_ .
5. I didn't enjoy the party, but my friends \_\_\_\_\_ .
6. I don't watch TV much, but Peter \_\_\_\_\_ .
7. Kate lives in Canada, but her parents \_\_\_\_\_ .
8. You had breakfast this morning, but I \_\_\_\_\_ .

## 41.4 Complete the sentences. Write about yourself and other people.

1. I didn't go out last night, but my friends did .
2. I like \_\_\_\_\_ , but \_\_\_\_\_ .
3. I don't \_\_\_\_\_ , but \_\_\_\_\_ .
4. I'm \_\_\_\_\_ .
5. I haven't \_\_\_\_\_ .

## 41.5 Write a verb – positive or negative.

1. "Are you tired?" "I was \_\_\_\_\_ earlier, but I'm not now."
2. Fu Chen is happy today, but he \_\_\_\_\_ yesterday.
3. The stores aren't open yet, but the post office \_\_\_\_\_ .
4. I don't have a video camera, but I know somebody who \_\_\_\_\_ .
5. I would like to help you, but I'm sorry, I \_\_\_\_\_ .
6. I don't usually go to work by car, but I \_\_\_\_\_ yesterday.
7. A: Have you ever been to Alaska?  
B: No, but Sandra \_\_\_\_\_ . She went there on vacation last year.
8. "Do you and Luke watch TV a lot?" "I \_\_\_\_\_ , but Luke doesn't."
9. "Do you think Diane will pass her driving test?" "Yes, I'm sure she \_\_\_\_\_ ."
10. "Are you going out tonight?" "I \_\_\_\_\_ . I don't know for sure."

## 41.6 Answer these questions about yourself. Use *Yes, I have.* / *No, I'm not.*, etc.

1. Are you Canadian? No, I'm not.
2. Do you have a car? \_\_\_\_\_
3. Is it snowing? \_\_\_\_\_
4. Do you feel OK? \_\_\_\_\_
5. Are you hungry? \_\_\_\_\_
6. Do you like classical music? \_\_\_\_\_
7. Will you be in Rome tomorrow? \_\_\_\_\_
8. Have you ever been to Oslo? \_\_\_\_\_
9. Did you go out last night? \_\_\_\_\_
10. Were you asleep at 1:00 A.M.? \_\_\_\_\_

# You have? / have you? you are? / are you?, etc.

## A



You can say **you have? / you are? / you don't?**, etc., to show that you are interested or surprised.

- "You're late." "I am? I'm sorry."
- "I was sick last week." "You were? I didn't know that."
- "It's raining again." "It is? It was sunny ten minutes ago."
- "There's a letter for you." "There is? Where is it?"
- "Bill can't drive." "He can't? I didn't know that."
- "I'm not hungry." "You aren't? I am."
- "Sue isn't at work today." "She isn't? Is she sick?"

Use **do/does** for the *simple present* and **did** for the *simple past*.

- "I speak four languages." "You do? Which ones?"
- "Tom doesn't eat meat." "He doesn't? Does he eat fish?"
- "Nicole got married last week." "She did? Really?"

## B

## Tag questions

You can use **have you? / is it? / can't she?**, etc., at the end of a sentence.

These "mini-questions" are called *tag questions*.

It's a nice day, isn't it?



Yes, it's perfect!

A *positive* sentence → a *negative* tag question

It's a nice day,	isn't it?	Yes, it's perfect.
Karen lives in Seattle,	doesn't she?	Yes, that's right.
You closed the window,	didn't you?	Yes, I did.
Those shoes are nice,	aren't they?	Yes, very nice.
Tom will be here soon,	won't he?	Yes, probably.

A *negative* sentence → a *positive* tag question

That isn't your car,	is it?	No, my car is white.
You haven't met my mother,	have you?	No, I haven't.
Lucia doesn't have a car,	does she?	No, she doesn't.
You won't be late,	will you?	No, I'm never late.

# Exercises

## 42.1 Answer with *You do?* / *She doesn't?* / *They did?*, etc.

1. I speak four languages.
2. I work in a bank.
3. I didn't go to work yesterday.
4. Paula doesn't like me.
5. You look tired.
6. Julia called me last night.

*You do?* Which ones?  
 I work in a bank too.  
 Were you sick?  
 Why not?  
 I feel fine.  
 What did she say?

## 42.2 Answer with *You have?* / *You haven't?* / *She did?* / *She didn't?*, etc.

1. I've decided to buy a new car.
2. Tim doesn't eat meat.
3. I've already had dinner.
4. Sue can't drive.
5. I was born in Italy.
6. I didn't sleep well last night.
7. There's a good movie on TV.
8. I'm not happy.
9. I saw Amy last week.
10. Anne works in a factory.
11. I won't be here next week.
12. The clock isn't working.

*You have?* What kind?  
*He doesn't?* Does he eat fish?  
 When did you have it last?  
 She should learn.  
 I didn't know that.  
 Was the bed uncomfortable?  
 Are you going to watch it?  
 Why not?  
 How is she?  
 What kind of factory?  
 Where will you be?  
 It was working yesterday.

## 42.3 Complete these sentences with a tag question (*isn't it?* / *haven't you?*, etc.).

1. It's a nice day, *isn't it* ? Yes, it's beautiful.
2. These flowers are nice, \_\_\_\_\_ ? Yes, what kind are they?
3. Anne was at the party, \_\_\_\_\_ ? Yes, but I didn't speak to her.
4. You've been to Chile, \_\_\_\_\_ ? Yes, many times.
5. You speak Thai, \_\_\_\_\_ ? Yes, but not very well.
6. Bill looks tired, \_\_\_\_\_ ? Yes, he works very hard.
7. You'll help me, \_\_\_\_\_ ? Yes, of course I will.

## 42.4 Complete these sentences. Use a positive tag question (*is it?* / *do you?* etc.) or a negative tag question (*isn't it?* / *don't you?*, etc.).

1. You haven't eaten yet, *have you* ? No, I'm not hungry.
2. You aren't tired, \_\_\_\_\_ ? No, I feel fine.
3. Mary is a very nice person, \_\_\_\_\_ ? Yes, everybody likes her.
4. You can play the piano, \_\_\_\_\_ ? Yes, but I'm not very good.
5. You don't know Mike's sister, \_\_\_\_\_ ? No, I've never met her.
6. John went to college, \_\_\_\_\_ ? Yes, she studied economics.
7. The movie wasn't very good, \_\_\_\_\_ ? No, it was terrible.
8. Anne lives near you, \_\_\_\_\_ ? Yes, just a few blocks away.
9. You won't tell her what I said, \_\_\_\_\_ ? No, of course not.



**A**
**too and either**


I'm happy.  
I'm happy too.



I'm not happy.  
I'm not happy either.



We use **too** and **either** at the end of a sentence.

We use **too** after a *positive* verb.

- A: I'm happy.  
B: I'm happy too. (*or I am too.*)
- A: I liked the movie.  
B: I liked it too. (*or I did too.*)
- Mei Lan is a doctor. Her husband is a doctor too. (*or Her husband is too.*)

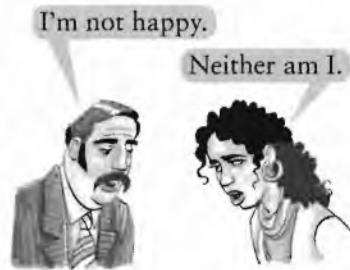
We use **either** after a *negative* verb.

- A: I'm not happy.  
B: I'm not happy either. (*or I'm not either.*)
- A: I can't cook.  
B: I can't either.
- Bill doesn't watch TV. He doesn't read newspapers either.

**B**
**so am I / neither do I, etc.**


so  
neither

am/is/are ...  
was/were ...  
do/does ...  
did ...  
have/has ...  
can ...  
will ...  
would ...



so am I = I am too  
so do I = I do too (etc.)

- A: I'm working.  
B: So am I. (= I'm working too.)
- A: I was late for work today.  
B: So was John. (= John was late too.)
- A: I have a key.  
B: So do I.
- A: We went to the movies last night.  
B: You did? So did we.
- A: I'd like to go to Australia.  
B: So would I.

neither am I = I'm not either  
neither can I = I can't either (etc.)

- A: I haven't been to China.  
B: Neither have I. (= I haven't either.)
- A: Anne can't cook.  
B: Neither can Tom. (= Tom can't either.)
- A: I won't (= will not) be here tomorrow.  
B: Neither will I.
- A: I never go to the movies.  
B: Neither do I.

Remember: **so am I** (*not so I am*), **neither have I** (*not neither I have*)

# Exercises

## 43.1 Write *too* or *either*.

- |    |                              |                                    |
|----|------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. | I'm happy.                   | I'm happy <u>too</u> .             |
| 2. | I'm not hungry.              | I'm not hungry _____.              |
| 3. | I'm going out.               | I'm going out _____.               |
| 4. | It rained on Saturday.       | It rained on Sunday _____.         |
| 5. | Gloria can't ride a bicycle. | She can't drive a car _____.       |
| 6. | I don't like to go shopping. | I don't like to go shopping _____. |
| 7. | Tracy's mother is a teacher. | Her father is a teacher _____.     |

## 43.2 Answer with *So ... I* (*So am I / So do I / So can I*, etc.).

1. I went to bed late last night.
2. I'm thirsty.
3. I've already read this book.
4. I need a vacation.
5. I'll be late tomorrow.
6. I was very tired this morning.

So did I.

## Answer with *Neither ... I*.

7. I can't go to the party.
8. I didn't call Alex last night.
9. I haven't eaten lunch yet.
10. I'm not going out tonight.
11. I don't have much time.

## 43.3 You are talking to Maria. Write true sentences about yourself. Where possible, use *So ... I* or *Neither ... I*. Look at these examples carefully:



MARIA

I'm tired today.

You can say: *So am I.*

or *I'm not.*

I don't work very hard.

You can say: *Neither do I.*

or *I do.*



YOU

1. I'm studying English.
2. I can ride a bicycle.
3. I'm not American.
4. I like to cook.
5. I don't like cold weather.
6. I slept well last night.
7. I've never been to India.
8. I don't write letters very often.
9. I'm going out tomorrow night.
10. I wasn't sick last week.
11. I didn't watch TV last night.
12. I go to the movies a lot.

# Isn't . . . , haven't . . . , don't . . . , etc. (Negatives)

## A

We use **not** (**n't**) in negative sentences.

*Positive → Negative*

am	am not ('m not)
is	is not (isn't or 's not)
are	are not (aren't or 're not)
was	was not (wasn't)
were	were not (weren't)
have	have not (haven't)
has	has not (hasn't)
will	will not (won't)
can	cannot (can't)
could	could not (couldn't)
should	should not (shouldn't)
would	would not (wouldn't)
must	must not

- I'm not tired.
- It isn't (or It's not) raining.
- They aren't (or They're not) here.
- Brian wasn't hungry.
- The stores weren't open.
- I haven't finished my work.
- Sue hasn't been to Mexico.
- We won't be here tomorrow.
- Eric can't drive.
- I couldn't sleep last night.
- You shouldn't work so hard.
- I wouldn't like to be an actor.
- They must not have a car.

## B

**don't/doesn't/didn't**

*Simple present negative*

I/we/you/they do not (don't)  
he/she/it does not (doesn't)

work/live/have, etc.

*Simple past negative*

I/they/he/she, etc. did not (didn't)

*Positive → Negative*

I want to go out. → I **don't** want to go out.

They work hard. → They **don't** work hard.

Liz has a car. → Liz **doesn't** have a car.

My father likes his job. → My father **doesn't** like his job.

I got up early this morning. → I **didn't** get up early this morning.

They worked hard yesterday. → They **didn't** work hard yesterday.

We played tennis. → We **didn't** play tennis.

Diane had dinner with us. → Diane **didn't** have dinner with us.

**don't . . .**

Look! → **Don't** look!

Wait for me. → **Don't** wait for me.

Sometimes **do** is the main verb.

Do something! → **Don't** do anything!

Sue does a lot on weekends. → Sue **doesn't** do much on weekends.

I did what you said. → I **didn't** do what you said.

## 44.1 Make these sentences negative.

1. He's gone out. He hasn't gone out.
2. They're married. \_\_\_\_\_
3. I've had dinner. \_\_\_\_\_
4. It's cold today. \_\_\_\_\_
5. We'll be late. \_\_\_\_\_
6. You should go. \_\_\_\_\_

## 44.2 Make these sentences negative. Use **don't/doesn't/didn't**.

1. She saw me. She didn't see me.
2. I like cheese. \_\_\_\_\_
3. They understood. \_\_\_\_\_
4. He lives here. \_\_\_\_\_
5. Go away! \_\_\_\_\_
6. I did the dishes. \_\_\_\_\_

## 44.3 Make these sentences negative.

1. She can swim. She can't swim.
2. They've arrived. \_\_\_\_\_
3. I went to the bank. \_\_\_\_\_
4. He speaks Japanese. \_\_\_\_\_
5. We were angry. \_\_\_\_\_
6. He'll be pleased. \_\_\_\_\_
7. Call me tonight. \_\_\_\_\_
8. It rained yesterday. \_\_\_\_\_
9. I could hear them. \_\_\_\_\_
10. I have a camera. \_\_\_\_\_

## 44.4 Complete these sentences with a negative verb (**isn't/haven't/don't**, etc.).

1. They aren't rich. They don't have much money.
2. "Would you like something to eat?" "No, thank you. I \_\_\_\_\_ hungry."
3. I \_\_\_\_\_ find my glasses. Have you seen them?
4. Eric \_\_\_\_\_ write letters very often. He prefers to use the phone.
5. We can walk to the station from here. It \_\_\_\_\_ very far.
6. "Where's Kim?" "I \_\_\_\_\_ know. I \_\_\_\_\_ seen her today."
7. Be careful! \_\_\_\_\_ fall!
8. I \_\_\_\_\_ have a ticket, so I couldn't go to the concert.
9. I've been to Japan many times, but I \_\_\_\_\_ been to Korea.
10. Julia \_\_\_\_\_ be here tomorrow. She's going away.
11. "Who broke that window?" "Not me. I \_\_\_\_\_ do it."
12. We didn't see what happened. We \_\_\_\_\_ looking at the time.

44.5



You ask Gary some questions. He answers "Yes" or "No." Write sentences about Gary, positive or negative.



- |  |      |                                    |
|--|------|------------------------------------|
| Are you married?                       | No.  | 1. <u>He isn't married.</u>        |
| Do you live in Los Angeles?            | Yes. | 2. <u>He lives in Los Angeles.</u> |
| Were you born in Los Angeles?          | No.  | 3. _____                           |
| Do you like Los Angeles?               | No.  | 4. _____                           |
| Would you like to live someplace else? | Yes. | 5. _____                           |
| Can you drive?                         | Yes. | 6. _____                           |
| Have you traveled abroad?              | No.  | 7. _____                           |
| Do you read newspapers?                | No.  | 8. _____                           |
| Are you interested in politics?        | No.  | 9. _____                           |
| Do you watch TV at night?              | Yes. | 10. _____                          |
| Did you watch TV last night?           | No.  | 11. _____                          |
| Did you go out last night?             | Yes. | 12. _____                          |

## Is it . . . ?, Have you . . . ?, Do they . . . ?, etc.

## A

Positive **you are** You are eating.  
 Question **are you** Are you eating? What are you eating?

Positive  
subject + verb

Question  
verb + subject

I	am late.	→	Am	I late?
That seat	is free.	→	Is	that seat free?
She	was angry.	→	Why was	she angry?
David	has gone out.	→	Where has	David gone?
You	have been to Japan.	→	Have	you been to Japan?
They	will be here soon.	→	When will	they be here?
Paula	can swim.	→	Can	Paula swim?

Be careful with word order – the *subject* is after the first *verb*.

- Where **has** David gone? (*not* Where has gone David?)
- Are** those people waiting for something? (*not* Are waiting . . . ?)
- When **was** the telephone invented? (*not* When was invented . . . ?)

## B

do . . . ? / does . . . ? / did . . . ?

Simple present questions

do I/we/you/they  
does he/she/it

work/live/have (etc.) . . . ?

Simple past questions

did you/she/they (etc.)

Positive

Question

They	work hard.	→	Do they	work hard?
You	watch television.	→	How often do you	watch television?
Chris	has a car.	→	Does Chris	have a car?
She	gets up early.	→	What time does she	get up?
They	worked hard.	→	Did they	work hard?
You	had dinner.	→	What did you	have for dinner?
She	got up early.	→	What time did she	get up?

Sometimes *do* is the *main verb* (do you do / did he do, etc.).

- What do you usually **do** on weekends?
- "What does your brother **do**?" "He works in a bank."
- "I broke my finger last week." "How did you **do** that?"

## C

Why isn't . . . ? / Why don't . . . ?, etc. (Why + *negative*)

- Where's Pedro? **Why isn't** he here? (*not* Why he isn't here?)
- Why can't** Ratana come to the meeting tomorrow? (*not* Why Ratana can't . . . ?)
- Why didn't** you call me last night?

# Exercises

## 45.1 Write questions.

1. I can swim. (and you?) Can you swim?
2. I work hard. (and Jim?) Does Jim work hard?
3. I was late this morning. (and you?) \_\_\_\_\_
4. I've had lunch. (and Anne?) \_\_\_\_\_
5. I'll be here tomorrow. (and you?) \_\_\_\_\_
6. I'm going out tonight. (and Paul?) \_\_\_\_\_
7. I like my job. (and you?) \_\_\_\_\_
8. I live near here. (and Nicole?) \_\_\_\_\_
9. I enjoyed the movie. (and you?) \_\_\_\_\_
10. I had a nice vacation. (and you?) \_\_\_\_\_

## 45.2 You are talking to a friend about driving. Write the questions.

YOU



1. (have / a car?) Do you have a car?
2. (use / a lot?) \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ ?
3. (use / yesterday?) \_\_\_\_\_
4. (enjoy driving?) \_\_\_\_\_
5. (a good driver?) \_\_\_\_\_
6. (ever / have / an accident?) \_\_\_\_\_

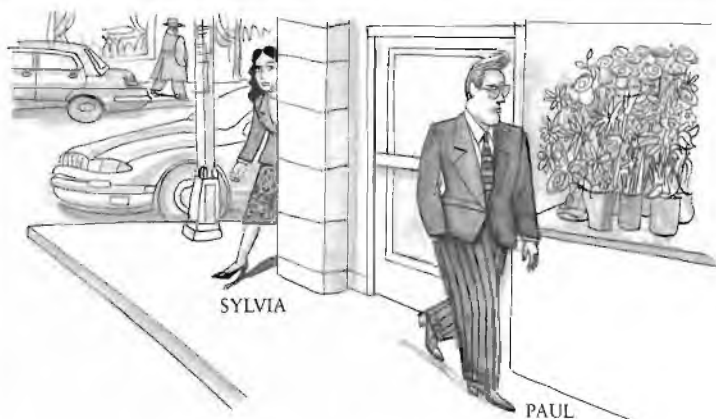
Yes, I do.  
Yes, almost every day.  
Yes, to go to work.  
Not very much.  
I think I am.  
No, never.

## 45.3 Put the words in the right order. All the sentences are questions.

1. (has / gone / where / David?) Where has David gone?
2. (working / Rachel / is / today?) Is Rachel working today?
3. (the children / what / are / doing?) What \_\_\_\_\_ ?
4. (made / is / how / cheese?) \_\_\_\_\_
5. (to the party / coming / is / your sister?) \_\_\_\_\_
6. (you / the truth / tell / don't / why?) \_\_\_\_\_
7. (your guests / have / yet / arrived?) \_\_\_\_\_
8. (leave / what time / your plane / does?) \_\_\_\_\_
9. (your car / in the accident / was / damaged?) \_\_\_\_\_
10. (to work / Anne / why / go / didn't?) \_\_\_\_\_

## 45.4 Complete the questions.

- |  |                                  |
|--|----------------------------------|
| 1. I want to go out.                     | Where <u>do you want to go</u> ? |
| 2. Al and Joe aren't going to the party. | Why <u>aren't they going</u> ?   |
| 3. I'm reading.                          | What _____ ?                     |
| 4. Sue went to bed early.                | What time _____ ?                |
| 5. My parents are going on vacation.     | When _____ ?                     |
| 6. I saw Tom a few days ago.             | Where _____ ?                    |
| 7. I can't come to the party.            | Why _____ ?                      |
| 8. I need some money.                    | How much _____ ?                 |
| 9. Angela doesn't like me.               | Why _____ ?                      |
| 10. It sometimes rains.                  | How often _____ ?                |
| 11. I did the shopping.                  | When _____ ?                     |

**Who saw you? Who did you see?****A**

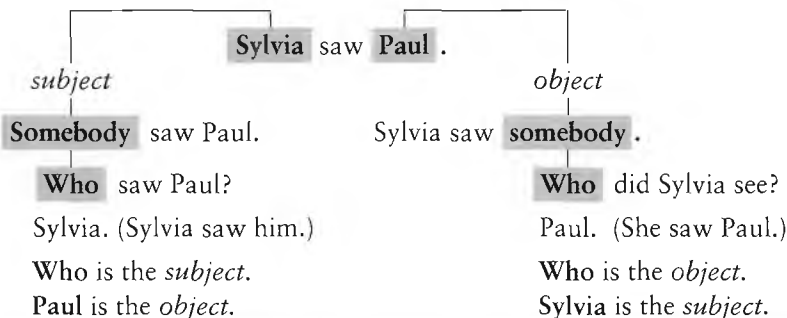
Sylvia saw Paul.

Who **saw** Paul?

Sylvia. (Sylvia saw him.)

Who did Sylvia see?

Paul. (She saw Paul.)

**B**

In these questions, **who/what** is the subject:

- **Who** lives in this house? (= somebody lives in it – who?) (*not* Who does live)
- **What** happened? (= something happened – what?) (*not* What did happen?)
- **What's** happening? (**What's** = What is)
- **Who's** got my car keys? (**Who's** = Who has)

In these questions, **who/what** is the object:

- **Who** did you meet yesterday? (= you met somebody – who?)
- **What** did Paul say? (= Paul said something – what?)
- **Who** are you calling?
- **What** was Sylvia wearing?

Compare:

- Justin likes chocolate. → **Who** likes chocolate? – Justin.  
What does Justin like? – Chocolate.
- Lucas won some money. → **Who** won some money? – Lucas.  
What did Lucas win? – Some money.

**C**

Use **who** for people (somebody). Use **what** for things, ideas, etc. (something).

- **Who** is your favorite singer?
- **What** is your favorite song?

**46.1** Write questions with *who* or *what*. In these questions, *who/what* is the subject.

1. Somebody broke the window.
2. Something fell off the shelf.
3. Somebody wants to see you.
4. Somebody took my umbrella.
5. Something made me sick.
6. Somebody is coming.

*Who broke the window?*  
What \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
\_\_\_\_\_ me?

**46.2** Write questions with *who* or *what* (subject or object).

1. I bought something.
2. Somebody lives in this house.
3. I called somebody.
4. Something happened last night.
5. Somebody knows the answer.
6. Somebody did the dishes.
7. Jane did something.
8. Something woke me up.
9. Somebody saw the accident.
10. I saw somebody.
11. Somebody has my pen.
12. This word means something.

*What did you buy?*  
*Who lives in this house?*

**46.3** You want the missing information (XXXXX). Write questions with *who* or *what*.

1. I lost XXXXX yesterday, but fortunately XXXXX found it and gave it back to me.
2. XXXXX called me last night. She wanted XXXXX.
3. I needed some advice, so I asked XXXXX. He said XXXXX.
4. I hear that XXXXX got married last week. XXXXX told me.
5. I met XXXXX on my way home tonight. She told me XXXXX.
6. Steve and I played tennis yesterday. XXXXX won. After the game, we XXXXX.
7. It was my birthday last week, and I got some presents. XXXXX gave me a book, and Catherine gave me XXXXX.

*What did you lose?*  
*Who found it?*



## Who is she talking to? What is it like?



JULIA

Julia is talking to somebody.

**Who** is she talking **to**?  
preposition

In questions beginning **Who** ... ? / **What** ... ? / **Where** ... ? / **Which** ... ?, *prepositions* (to/from/with, etc.) usually go at the end.

- "Where are you from?" "I'm from Thailand."
- "John was afraid." "What was he afraid of?"
- "Who do these books belong to?" "They're mine."
- "Tom's father is in the hospital." "Which hospital is he in?"
- "Kate is going on vacation." "Who is she going with?"
- "Can we talk?" "Sure. What do you want to talk about?"

What's it like? / What are they like?, etc.

What's your new house like?

It's big.



What's it like? = What is it like?

What's it like? = tell me something about it (is it good or bad?, big or small?, old or new?, etc.)

When we say, "What is it like?," *like* is a *preposition*. It is not the *verb* like. (Do you like your new house?)

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| ■ A: There's a new restaurant near my house. | ■ A: I met Nicole's parents yesterday.   |
| B: What's it like? Is it good?               | B: You did? What are they like?          |
| A: I don't know. I haven't eaten there yet.  | A: They're very nice.                    |
| ■ A: What's your new teacher like?           | ■ A: Did you have a good vacation?       |
| B: She's really good. We learn a lot.        | What was the weather like?               |
|  | B: It was great. It was sunny every day. |

# Exercises

**47.1** You want the missing information (XXXXX). Write questions with *Who* or *What*.

1. The letter is from XXXXX.
2. I'm looking for a XXXXX.
3. I went to the movies with XXXXX.
4. The movie was about XXXXX.
5. I gave the money to XXXXX.
6. The book was written by XXXXX.

*Who is the letter from?*

What \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ ?

**47.2** Complete the questions about the pictures. Use one of these verbs + a preposition:

listen look talk talk wait write



1. Who *is she talking to* ?
2. What \_\_\_\_\_ ?
3. Who \_\_\_\_\_ ?
4. What \_\_\_\_\_ ?
5. What \_\_\_\_\_ ?
6. Which bus \_\_\_\_\_ ?

**47.3** Write questions with *Which*.

1. Tom's father is in the hospital.
2. We stayed at a hotel.
3. Jack belongs to a tennis club.
4. I went to high school in this town.

*Which hospital is he in?*

\_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ ?

**47.4** You want some information about another country. You ask somebody who has been there. Ask questions with *What is/are ... like?*

1. (the roads) *What are the roads like?*
2. (the food) \_\_\_\_\_
3. (the people) \_\_\_\_\_
4. (the weather) \_\_\_\_\_

**47.5** Ask questions with *What was/were ... like?*

1. Your friend has just come back from a trip. Ask about the weather.  
*What was the weather like?*
2. Your friend has just come back from the movies. Ask about the movie.
3. Your friend has just finished a computer course. Ask about the classes.
4. Your friend has just come back from a business trip. Ask about the hotel.

## What . . . ?, Which . . . ?, and How . . . ?

## A

what + *noun* (What color . . . ? / What kind . . . ?, etc.)

- What color is your car?                      ■ What color are your eyes?
- What size is this shirt?                      ■ What nationality is she?
- What day is it today?                      ■ What time is it?
- What kind of job do you want? (or What type of job . . . ?)

what without a noun

- What's your favorite color?                      ■ What do you want to do tonight?

## B

which + *noun* (things or people)

- Which train did you catch – the 9:50 or the 10:30?
- Which doctor did you see – Doctor Vega, Doctor Gray, or Doctor Hill?

We use **which** without a noun for things, not people.

- Which is bigger – Canada or Australia?

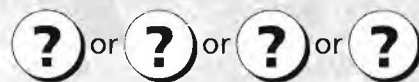
We use **who** for people (without a noun).

- Who is taller – Bill or Sam? (*not* Which is taller?)

## C

What or which?

We use **which** when we are thinking about a small number of possibilities (perhaps two, three, or four).



- We can go this way or that way. Which way should we go?
- There are four umbrellas here. Which is yours?

What is more general.

- What is the capital of Argentina? (of all the cities in Argentina)
- What kind of music do you like? (of all kinds of music)

Compare:

- What color are his eyes? (*not* Which color . . . ?)  
Which color do you prefer, pink or yellow?
- What is the longest river in the world?  
Which is the longest river – the Mississippi, the Amazon, or the Nile?

## D

How . . . ?

- "How was the party last night?" "It was great."
- "How do you usually get to work?" "By bus."

You can use **how** + *adjective/adverb* (how tall / how old / how often, etc.).

	tall are you?" "I'm five feet 10." (five feet 10 inches <i>or</i> one meter 70)
	big is the house?" "Not very big."
	old is your mother?" "She's 45."
"How	far is it from here to the airport?" "Ten miles." (about 17 kilometers)
	often do you use your car?" "Every day."
	long have they been married?" "Ten years."
	much was the taxi?" "Ten dollars."

# Exercises

## 48.1 Write questions with *What* . . . ?

1. This shirt is nice.
2. I want a job.
3. I've got a new sweater.
4. I got up early this morning.
5. I like music.
6. I want to buy a car.

(size) What size is it?  
 (kind) What kind of job do you want?  
 (color) What \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
 (time) \_\_\_\_\_ get up?  
 (type) \_\_\_\_\_  
 (kind) \_\_\_\_\_

## 48.2 Complete the questions. Use *Which* . . . ?

1. Which way should we go?



2. \_\_\_\_\_ is yours?



3. \_\_\_\_\_ do you want to see?



4. \_\_\_\_\_ goes to the museum?



## 48.3 Write *What*, *Which*, or *Who*.

1. What is that man's name?
2. Which way is it? Left or right?
3. Tea or coffee? \_\_\_\_\_ do you prefer?
4. "\_\_\_\_\_ day is it today?" "Friday."
5. This is a nice office.  
\_\_\_\_\_ desk is yours?
6. \_\_\_\_\_ is your favorite sport?
7. \_\_\_\_\_ is cheaper, meat or fish?
8. \_\_\_\_\_ is older, Anne or Justin?
9. \_\_\_\_\_ kind of camera do you have?
10. A: Mary has three cameras.  
B: \_\_\_\_\_ camera does she use most?

## 48.4 Complete the questions with *How* + adjective or adverb (*How high*, *How long*, etc.).

1. How high is Mount Everest? Almost 9,000 meters.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ is it to the station? About two miles.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ is Sarah? She's 26.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ do the buses run? Every ten minutes.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ is the water in the pool? Two meters.
6. \_\_\_\_\_ have you lived here? Almost three years.

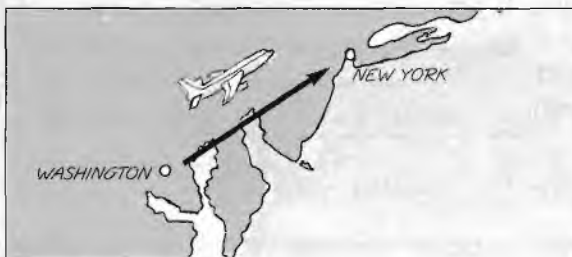
## 48.5 Write questions with *How* . . . ?

1. Are you five feet nine? Five feet ten? Five feet eleven? How tall are you?
2. Is this box one kilogram? Two? Three? \_\_\_\_\_
3. Are you 20 years old? 21? 22? \_\_\_\_\_
4. Did you spend \$10? \$15? \$20? \_\_\_\_\_
5. Do you watch TV every day? Once a week? Never? \_\_\_\_\_
6. Is it 2,000 miles from New York to Los Angeles? 2,500? 3,000? \_\_\_\_\_

# How long does it take . . . ?

## A

How long does it take to get from . . . to . . . ?



- “How long does it take to get from Washington to New York by plane?”  
“It takes one hour.”
- “How long does it take to get from your house to the station by car?”  
“It takes ten minutes to get from my house to the station.”

## B

How long does it take (to do something)?

How long	does did will	it take to . . . ?			
It	takes took will take	a week a long time three hours	to . . .		
	doesn't didn't won't	take long			

- How long does it take to cross the Atlantic by ship?
- How long did it take to get to the airport?
- It takes a long time to learn a language.
- It took about an hour to get to the airport.
- It doesn't take long to cook an omelet.
- It won't take long to fix the computer.

## C

How long does it take you (to do something)?

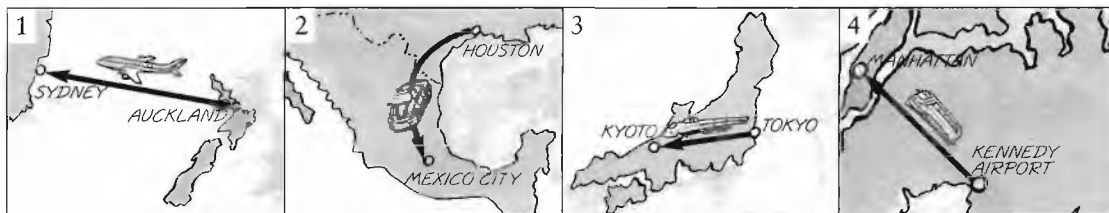


How long	does did will	it take	you Anne them	to . . . ?
It	takes took will take	me Anne them	a week a long time three hours	to . . .

I started reading the book on Monday.  
I finished it on Wednesday night.  
It took me three days to read it.

- How long will it take me to learn to drive?
- It takes me 20 minutes to get to work in the morning.
- It took Tom an hour to do the shopping.
- Did it take you a long time to find a job?
- It will take us an hour to cook dinner.

## 49.1 Look at the pictures and write questions with *How long . . . ?*



1. *How long does it take to get from Auckland to Sydney by plane?*
2. \_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_\_\_

## 49.2 How long does it take to do these things? Write full sentences.

1. fly from your city/country to New York  
*It takes a day to fly from Tokyo to New York*
2. fly from your city/country to Australia  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. become a doctor in your country  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. walk from your house to the nearest school  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. get from your house to the nearest airport  
\_\_\_\_\_

## 49.3 Write questions with *How long did it take . . . ?*

1. She found a place to live. *How long did it take her to find a place to live?*
2. I walked to the station. \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ ?
3. He washed the windows. \_\_\_\_\_
4. I learned to ski. \_\_\_\_\_
5. They repaired the car. \_\_\_\_\_

## 49.4 Read the situations and write sentences with *It took . . .*

1. I read a book last week. I started reading it on Monday. I finished it three days later.  
*It took me three days to read the book*
2. We walked home last night. We left at 10 o'clock, and we got home at 10:20.  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. I learned to fly last year. I had my first flying lesson in January. I got my pilot's license nine months later.  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. Mark drove to Houston yesterday. He left home at eight o'clock and got to Houston at 10:00.  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. Nicole began looking for a job a long time ago. She found a job last week.  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. (Now write a true sentence about yourself.)  
\_\_\_\_\_

# Do you know where . . . ?, I don't know what . . . , etc.

## A

Do you know where Paula is?



We say:

Where **is** Paula?

but: Do you know where Paula **is** ?

(not Do you know where is Paula?)

In the same way we say:

I know where Paula is.

I don't know where Paula is.

Can you tell me where Paula is?

Compare:

Who are those people?

How old is Nicole?

What time is it?

Where can I go?

How much is this camera?

When are you leaving town?

Where have they gone?

What was Dawn wearing?

but

Do you know  
Can you tell me

I know  
I don't know  
I don't remember

who those people are

how old Nicole is

what time it is

where I can go

how much this camera is

when you're leaving town

where they've gone

what Dawn was wearing

?

.

## B

Questions with do/does/did (simple present and simple past)

Where **does** he live ?

Do you know where **he lives** ? (not Do you know where does he live?)

Compare:

How do airplanes fly?

What does Jessica want?

Why did she go home?

Where did I put the key?

but

Do you know  
I don't know  
I don't remember

I know

how airplanes fly

what Jessica wants

why she went home

where I put the key

?

.

## C

Questions beginning Is . . . ? / Do . . . ? / Can . . . ?, etc. (yes/no questions)

Compare:

Is Jack at home?

Have they left yet?

Can Brian swim?

Do they live near here?

Did anybody see you?

but

Do you know

I don't know

if

or

whether

Jack is at home

they've left yet

Brian can swim

they live near here

anybody saw you

?

.

You can use if or whether in these sentences:

- Do you know if they've got a car? or Do you know whether they've got a car?
- I don't know if he's married. or I don't know whether he's married.

# Exercises

## 50.1 Answer these questions with *I don't know where/when/why . . .*, etc.

- |                                     |   |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| 1. Have your friends gone home?     | (where) <i>I don't know where they've gone.</i> |
| 2. Is Kate in her office?           | (where) I don't know _____.                     |
| 3. Is the building very old?        | (how old) _____.                                |
| 4. Will Paul be here soon?          | (when) _____.                                   |
| 5. Was he angry because I was late? | (why) _____.                                    |
| 6. Has Mary lived here a long time? | (how long) _____.                               |

## 50.2 Complete the sentences.

- (How do airplanes fly?) Do you know *how airplanes fly* \_\_\_\_\_?
- (Where does Susan work?) I don't know \_\_\_\_\_.
- (What did Peter say?) Do you remember \_\_\_\_\_?
- (Why did he go home early?) I don't know \_\_\_\_\_.
- (What time does the meeting begin?) Do you know \_\_\_\_\_?
- (How did the accident happen?) I don't remember \_\_\_\_\_.

## 50.3 Which is right?

- Do you know what time is it / it is? (*it is* is right)
- Why are you / you are leaving?
- I don't know where are they / they are going.
- Can you tell me where is the museum / the museum is?
- Where do you want / you want to go for vacation?
- Do you know what do elephants eat / elephants eat?

## 50.4 Write questions with *Do you know if . . .*?

- (Have they got a car?) *Do you know if they've got a car?* \_\_\_\_\_?
- (Are they married?) Do you know \_\_\_\_\_?
- (Does Sue know Bill?) \_\_\_\_\_.
- (Will Justin be here tomorrow?) \_\_\_\_\_.
- (Did he pass his exam?) \_\_\_\_\_.

## 50.5 Write questions beginning with *Do you know . . .*?

- (What does Tomiko want?) *Do you know what Tomiko wants?* \_\_\_\_\_?
- (Where is Lynn?) Do \_\_\_\_\_?
- (Is she working today?) \_\_\_\_\_.
- (What time does she start work?) \_\_\_\_\_.
- (Are the banks open tomorrow?) \_\_\_\_\_.
- (Where do Sarah and Tim live?) \_\_\_\_\_.
- (Did they go to Ji Yoo's party?) \_\_\_\_\_.

## 50.6 Use your own ideas to complete these sentences.

- Do you know why *the train was late* \_\_\_\_\_?
- Do you know what time \_\_\_\_\_?
- Excuse me, can you tell me where \_\_\_\_\_?
- I don't know what \_\_\_\_\_?
- Do you know if \_\_\_\_\_?



# She said that . . . He told me that . . .

## A

Last week you went to a party. A lot of your friends were there. Here are some things they said to you.



DIANE

I'm enjoying my new job.

My father isn't very happy.

Present Past

am → was  
is → was



SARAH



TIM

We're going to buy a house.

are → were



PETER

I have to leave early.

My sister has gone to Australia.

have → had  
has → had



ANNE

I can't find a job.

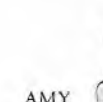
can → could



STEVE

I'll call you.

will → would



AMY

I don't like my job.

My son doesn't like school.

do → did  
does → did



MIKE

You look tired.

I feel fine.



YOU

look → looked  
feel → felt  
(etc.) (etc.)

Today you meet Paul. You tell him about the party. You tell Paul what your friends said.

- Diane said that **she was** enjoying her new job.
- She said that **her father wasn't** very happy.
- Sarah and Tim said that **they were** going to buy a house.
- Peter said that **he had** to leave early.
- He said that **his sister had** gone to Australia.
- Anne said that **she couldn't** find a job.
- Steve said that **he would** call me.
- Amy said that **she didn't** like her job.
- She said that **her son didn't** like school.
- Mike said that **I looked** tired.
- I said that **I felt** fine.

## B

say and tell

say (→ said)

- He **said** that he was tired. (not He said me)
- What did she **say** to you? (not say you)

Do not say: "he said me," "I said Anne," etc.

tell (→ told)

- He **told** me that he was tired. (not He told that . . .)
- What did she **tell** you? (not tell to you)

Do not say: "he told to me," "I told to Anne," etc.











## C

You can say:

- He **said that** he was tired. or He **said** he was tired. (without that)
- Amy **told me that** she didn't like her job. or Amy **told me** she didn't like her job.

# Exercises

## 51.1 Read what these people say and write sentences with *He/She/They said (that)* . . .

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1.  I've lost my watch.<br><i>He said he had lost his watch.</i> | 6.  I don't feel very well.              |
| 2.  I'm very busy.   | 7.  We'll be home late.                  |
| 3.  I can't go to the party.                                     | 8.  I've just gotten back from vacation. |
| 4.  I have to go out.  | 9.  I'm going to buy a new computer.     |
| 5.  I'm learning Russian.  | 10.  We don't have a key.                |

## 51.2 Use the pictures to complete the sentences.

1 I'm enjoying my new job. DIANE 	2 I'm not hungry. EMILY 	3 I need it. DON 
4 I don't want to go. HANNAH 	5 You can have it. SHARON 	6 I'll send you a postcard. MARK 
7 Where's Robert? He's gone home. NICOLE 	8 I want to watch TV. JIRO 	9 I'm going to the movies. MARY 

- I saw Diane last week. She said *she was enjoying her new job*.
- Emily didn't want anything to eat. She said \_\_\_\_\_.
- I wanted to borrow Don's ladder but he said \_\_\_\_\_.
- Hannah was invited to the party but she said \_\_\_\_\_.
- Sharon told me she didn't want the picture. She said \_\_\_\_\_.
- Mark just left on vacation. He said \_\_\_\_\_.
- I was looking for Robert. Nicole said \_\_\_\_\_.
- "Why did Jiro stay home?" "He said \_\_\_\_\_."
- "Has Mary gone out?" "I think so. She said \_\_\_\_\_."

## 51.3 Write *say/said* or *tell/told*.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. He <u>said</u> he was tired.          | 7. The woman _____ she was a reporter.                                 |
| 2. What did she <u>tell</u> you?         | 8. The woman _____ us she was a reporter.                              |
| 3. Anne _____ she didn't like Peter.     | 9. They asked me a lot of questions, but I didn't _____ them anything. |
| 4. Jack _____ me that you were sick.     | 10. They asked me a lot of questions, but I didn't _____ anything.     |
| 5. Please don't _____ Jim what happened. |  |
| 6. Did Pat _____ she would be late?      |  |

**Work/working, go/going, do/doing****A**work/go/be, etc. (*base form*)We use the base form with **will/can/must**, etc.

<b>will</b>	■ Amy <b>will be</b> here soon.	} (see Units 28–29)
<b>shall</b>	■ Shall I open the window?	
<b>might</b>	■ I <b>might call</b> you later.	} (see Unit 30)
<b>may</b>	■ May I sit here?	
<b>can</b>	■ I <b>can't meet</b> you tomorrow.	} (see Unit 31)
<b>could</b>	■ Could you pass the salt, please?	
<b>must</b>	■ It's late. You <b>must be</b> tired.	(see Unit 32)
<b>should</b>	■ You <b>shouldn't work</b> so hard.	(see Unit 33)
<b>would</b>	■ Would you like some coffee?	(see Unit 35)

We use the base form with **do/does** and **did**.

<b>do/does</b> ( <i>simple present</i> )	■ Do you <b>work</b> ?	(see Units 6–7)
	■ They <b>don't work</b> very hard.	
	■ Elena <b>doesn't know</b> many people.	
	■ How much does it <b>cost</b> ?	
<b>did</b> ( <i>simple past</i> )	■ What time <b>did</b> the train leave?	(see Unit 12)
	■ We <b>didn't sleep</b> well.	

**B**To work / to go / to be, etc. (*infinitive*)

(I'm) <b>going to</b> . . .	■ I'm <b>going to play</b> tennis tomorrow.	(see Unit 27)
	■ What <b>are you going to do</b> ?	
(I) <b>have to</b> . . .	■ I <b>have to go</b> now.	(see Unit 34)
	■ Everybody <b>has to eat</b> .	
(I) <b>want to</b> . . .	■ Do you <b>want to go</b> out?	(see Unit 51)
	■ They <b>don't want to come</b> with us.	
(I) <b>would like to</b> . . .	■ I'd <b>like to talk</b> to you.	(see Unit 35)
	■ <b>Would you like to go</b> out?	
(I) <b>used to</b> . . .	■ Dave <b>used to work</b> in a factory.	(see Unit 25)

**C**

Working/going/playing, etc.

<b>am/is/are + -ing</b> ( <i>present continuous</i> )	■ Please be quiet. I'm <b>working</b> .	(see Units 3–4, 8, 26)
	■ Tom <b>isn't working</b> today.	
	■ What time <b>are you going out</b> ?	
<b>was/were + -ing</b> ( <i>past continuous</i> )	■ It <b>was raining</b> , so we <b>didn't go out</b> .	(see Units 13–14)
	■ What <b>were you doing</b> when the phone rang?	

# Exercises

## 52.1 Complete the sentences. Write: *call Paul* or *to call Paul*.

1. I'll call Paul.
2. I'm going to call Paul.
3. You can \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Shall I \_\_\_\_\_?
5. I'd like \_\_\_\_\_.
6. Do you have \_\_\_\_\_?
7. You should \_\_\_\_\_.
8. I want \_\_\_\_\_.
9. I might \_\_\_\_\_.
10. Could you \_\_\_\_\_?

## 52.2 Complete the sentences with a verb from the list. Sometimes you need the base form (*work, go, etc.*) and sometimes you need *-ing* (*working, going, etc.*).

do / doing	get / getting	<del>sleep / sleeping</del>	watch / watching
eat / eating	go / going	stay / staying	wear / wearing
fly / flying	listen / listening	wait / waiting	<del>work / working</del>

1. Please be quiet. I'm working.
2. I feel tired today. I didn't sleep very well last night.
3. What time do you usually \_\_\_\_\_ up in the morning?
4. "Where are you \_\_\_\_\_?" "To the bank."
5. Did you \_\_\_\_\_ television last night?
6. Look at that plane! It's \_\_\_\_\_ very low.
7. You can turn off the radio. I'm not \_\_\_\_\_ to it.
8. They didn't \_\_\_\_\_ anything because they weren't hungry.
9. My friends were \_\_\_\_\_ for me when I arrived.
10. "Does Sharon always \_\_\_\_\_ glasses?" "No, only for reading."
11. "What are you \_\_\_\_\_ tonight?" "I'm \_\_\_\_\_ home."

## 52.3 Put the verb in the correct form. Choose the base form (*work/go, etc.*), the infinitive (*to work / to go, etc.*), or *-ing* (*working/going, etc.*).

1. Shall I open the window? (open)
2. It's late. I have to go now. (go)
3. Amy isn't working this week. She's on vacation. (work)
4. I'm tired. I don't want \_\_\_\_\_ out. (go)
5. It might \_\_\_\_\_. Take an umbrella with you. (rain)
6. What time do you have \_\_\_\_\_ tomorrow morning? (leave)
7. I'm sorry I can't \_\_\_\_\_ you. (help)
8. My brother is a student. He's \_\_\_\_\_ physics. (study)
9. Would you like \_\_\_\_\_ on a trip around the world? (go)
10. When you saw Chol Su, what was he \_\_\_\_\_? (wear)
11. When you go to London, where are you going \_\_\_\_\_? (stay)
12. It's cold, but Carlos isn't wearing a jacket. He must \_\_\_\_\_ cold. (be)
13. "Where's Eric?" "He's \_\_\_\_\_ a bath." (take)
14. I used \_\_\_\_\_ a car, but I sold it last year. (have)
15. He spoke very quietly. I couldn't \_\_\_\_\_ him. (hear)
16. You don't look well. I don't think you should \_\_\_\_\_ to work today. (go)
17. I don't know what he said. I wasn't \_\_\_\_\_ to him. (listen)
18. I'm sorry I'm late. I had \_\_\_\_\_ a phone call. (make)
19. Medical students must \_\_\_\_\_ courses in biology and chemistry. (take)
20. May I please \_\_\_\_\_ your phone? (use)

# To ... (I want to do) and -ing (I enjoy doing)

## A

Verbs + to ... (I want to do)

want	plan	decide	try	+ to ... (to do / to work / to be, etc.)
hope	expect	offer	forget	
need	promise	refuse	learn	

- What do you **want to do** tonight?
- It's not very late. We don't **need to go** home yet.
- Tina has **decided to sell** her house.
- You **forgot to turn** off the light when you went out.
- My brother is **learning to drive**.
- I **tried to read** my book, but I was too tired.

## B

Verbs + -ing (I enjoy doing)

enjoy	stop	suggest	+ -ing (doing / working / being, etc.)
mind	finish		

- I **enjoy dancing**. (*not enjoy to dance*)
- I **don't mind getting** up early.
- Has it **stopped raining**?
- Sonia **suggested going** to the movies.

I enjoy dancing.



## C

Verbs + -ing or to ...

like	love	start	continue	+ -ing (doing, etc.) or to ... (to do, etc.)
prefer	hate	begin		

- Do you **like getting** up early? or Do you **like to get** up early?
- I **prefer traveling** by car. or I **prefer to travel** by car.
- Anna **loves dancing**. or Anna **loves to dance**.
- I **hate being** late. or I **hate to be** late.
- It **started raining**. or It **started to rain**.

## D

Would like to ..., etc.

would like	would love	+ to ... (to do / to work / to be, etc.)
would prefer	would hate	

- Julia **would like to meet** you.
- I'd **love to go** to Australia. (I'd = I would)
- "Would you **like to stay** at the Metro Hotel?" "No, I'd **prefer to stay** at the Grand."
- I like this city very much. I **wouldn't like to move**.
- I'd **hate to lose** my address book.

## 53.1 Put the verb in the right form – to ... or -ing.

1. I enjoy dancing . (dance)
2. What do you want to do tonight? (do)
3. Goodbye! I hope \_\_\_\_\_ you again soon. (see)
4. I learned \_\_\_\_\_ when I was five years old. (swim)
5. Have you finished \_\_\_\_\_ the kitchen? (clean)
6. I'm tired. I want \_\_\_\_\_ to bed. (go)
7. Do you enjoy \_\_\_\_\_ other countries? (visit)
8. The weather was nice, so I suggested \_\_\_\_\_ for a walk by the river. (go)
9. Where's Bill? He promised \_\_\_\_\_ here on time. (be)
10. I'm not in a hurry. I don't mind \_\_\_\_\_ . (wait)
11. What have you decided \_\_\_\_\_ ? (do)
12. Eric was very angry and refused \_\_\_\_\_ to me. (speak)
13. Where's Anna? I need \_\_\_\_\_ her something. (ask)
14. They were very upset and started \_\_\_\_\_ . (cry)
15. I'm trying \_\_\_\_\_ . (work)  
Please stop \_\_\_\_\_ . (talk)

## 53.2 Complete the sentences with to ... or -ing. Use one of these verbs:

cook go help lose meet rain read see send wait walk watch

1. Julia would like to meet you.
2. Nicole has a lot of books. She enjoys \_\_\_\_\_ .
3. I'm surprised that you're here. I didn't expect \_\_\_\_\_ you.
4. Don't forget \_\_\_\_\_ us a postcard when you're on vacation.
5. "Should we take a taxi to the restaurant?" "If you want, but it isn't far. I don't mind \_\_\_\_\_ ."
6. This ring was my grandmother's. I'd hate \_\_\_\_\_ it.
7. Rita had a lot to do, so I offered \_\_\_\_\_ her.
8. What should we do this afternoon? Would you like \_\_\_\_\_ to the beach?
9. When I'm tired in the evening, I like \_\_\_\_\_ television.
10. "Do you want to go now?" "No, I'd prefer \_\_\_\_\_ a few minutes."
11. I'm not going out until it stops \_\_\_\_\_ .
12. Dinner is going to be late. I just started \_\_\_\_\_ .

## 53.3 Read the questions and complete the answers.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Do you usually get up early ?</li> <li>2. Do you ever go to museums?</li> <li>3. Do you write letters often?</li> <li>4. Have you ever been to Rome?</li> <li>5. Do you ever travel by train?</li> <li>6. Do you want to eat at home or go to a restaurant?</li> </ol> | <p>Yes, I like <u>getting up early</u> OR <u>to get up early</u> .</p> <p>Yes, I love _____ .</p> <p>No, I don't like _____ .</p> <p>No, but I'd love _____ sometime.</p> <p>Yes, I enjoy _____ .</p> <p>I don't mind _____ a restaurant, but I'd prefer _____ home.</p> |
|--|--|

## 53.4 Complete these sentences. Write about yourself. Use to ... or -ing.

1. I enjoy \_\_\_\_\_ .
2. I don't like \_\_\_\_\_ .
3. If it's a nice day tomorrow, I'd like \_\_\_\_\_ .
4. When I'm on vacation, I like \_\_\_\_\_ .
5. I don't mind \_\_\_\_\_ , but \_\_\_\_\_ .
6. I wouldn't like \_\_\_\_\_ .

## I want you to . . . and I told you to . . .

## A

I want you to . . .



The woman wants to leave.

The man doesn't want the woman to leave.  
He wants her to stay.

We say:

I want	you	to do something
	somebody	
	Anne	

- I want you to be happy. (*not* I want that you are happy)
- They didn't want anybody to know their secret.
- Do you want me to lend you some money?

We use **would like** in the same way.

- Would you like me to lend you some money?

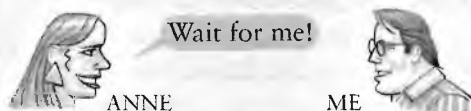
## B

We also use this structure (*verb* + somebody + **to . . .**) with:*verb* + somebody + **to . . .**

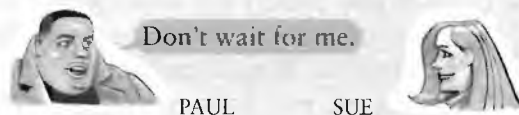
ask	Sue	asked	a friend	to lend	her some money.
tell	I	told	you	to be	careful.
advise	What do you	advise	me	to do?	
expect	I didn't	expect	them	to be	here.
persuade	We	persuaded	Eric	to come	with us.
teach	I	am teaching	my brother	to swim.	

## C

I told you to . . . / I told you not to . . .



Anne told me to wait for her.



Paul told Sue not to wait for him.

## D

**make** and **let**After **make** and **let**, we do not use **to**.

- He's very funny. He **makes** me laugh. (*not* makes me to laugh)
- At school our teachers **made** us work very hard.
- Ada **let** me use her computer because mine wasn't working. (*not* let me to use)







You can say **Let's . . .** (= **Let us**) when you want people to do things with you.

- Come on! **Let's** dance.
- "Do you want to go out tonight?" "No, I'm tired. **Let's** stay home."

## 54.1 Write sentences beginning *I want you ... / I don't want you ... / Do you want me ... ?*

- (you have to come with me) *I want you to come with me.*
- (listen carefully) I want \_\_\_\_\_.
- (please don't be angry) I don't \_\_\_\_\_.
- (shall I wait for you?) Do you \_\_\_\_\_.
- (don't call me tonight) \_\_\_\_\_.
- (you should meet Sarah) \_\_\_\_\_.

## 54.2 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences.

<p>1 I'm sick. You should see a doctor.</p>  <p>BRIAN YOU</p>	<p>2 Where's the station? Turn left after the bridge.</p>  <p>YOU</p>	<p>3 Can you help me?</p>  <p>LINDA YOU</p>
<p>4 Don't call after 11 o'clock.</p>  <p>YOU SUE</p>	<p>5 Can I use your phone? Sure.</p>  <p>YOU YOSHI</p>	<p>6 Do you play the piano? Yes, my mother taught me.</p>  <p>YOU LEE</p>

- Brian was sick. I advised *him to see a doctor*.
- I wanted to get to the station. A woman told \_\_\_\_\_.
- Linda had a lot of luggage. She asked \_\_\_\_\_.
- Sue is going to call later. I told \_\_\_\_\_.
- I wanted to make a phone call. Yoshi let \_\_\_\_\_.
- Lee's mother taught \_\_\_\_\_.

## 54.3 Complete these sentences with the verbs in the list. Sometimes *to* is necessary (*to go / to wait*, etc.); sometimes *to* is not necessary (*go/wait*, etc.).

arrive borrow get go leave make repeat tell think wait

- Please stay! I don't want you *to leave* yet.
- I didn't hear what she said, so I asked her \_\_\_\_\_ it.
- "Should we begin?" "No, let's \_\_\_\_\_ a few minutes."
- Are they already here? I expected them \_\_\_\_\_ much later.
- Kevin's parents didn't want him \_\_\_\_\_ married.
- I want to stay here. You can't make me \_\_\_\_\_ with you.
- "Is that your bicycle?" "No, it's John's. He let me \_\_\_\_\_ it."
- Mika can't come to the party. She told me \_\_\_\_\_ you.
- Do you want something to drink? Would you like me \_\_\_\_\_ some coffee?
- "Achara doesn't like me." "What makes you \_\_\_\_\_ that?"



## A

Kelly wanted a newspaper,  
so she went to the store.

Why did she go to the store?  
To **buy** a newspaper.

She went to the store to **buy**  
a newspaper.



To . . . (to buy / to see, etc.) tells us *why* a person does something.

- "Why are you going out?" "To get some bread."
- Amy went to the airport **to meet** her friend.
- Fu Chen turned on the television **to watch** the news.
- I'd like to go to Mexico **to learn** Spanish.

money/time to (do something)

- We need some **money to buy** food.
- I don't have **time to watch** television.

## B

to . . . and for . . .

to + *verb*

(to buy / to see, etc.)

- I went to the store **to buy** a newspaper.  
(*not* for buy)
- They're going to Brazil **to see** their friends.
- We need some money **to buy** food.

for + *noun*

(for a newspaper / for food, etc.)

- I went to the store **for** a newspaper.
- They're going to Brazil **for** a holiday.
- We need some money **for** food.

## C

wait for . . .

- Please **wait** for me.
- Are you **waiting** for the bus?

wait to (do something)

- I'm **waiting** to talk to the manager.
- Are you **waiting** to see the doctor?

wait for (somebody/something) to . . .

- I can't leave yet. I'm **waiting** for John to call.
- Are you **waiting** for the mail to come?



# Exercises

**55.1** Write sentences beginning *I went to . . .* Choose from the boxes.

the station	the post office
a coffee shop	the supermarket

buy some food	get some stamps
<del>catch a train</del>	meet a friend

- I went to the station to catch a train*
- I went \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_

**55.2** Finish the sentences. Choose from the box.

to open this door	to wake him up	to see who it was
<del>to watch the news</del>	to read the newspaper	to get some fresh air

- I turned on the television *to watch the news*
- Alice sat down in an armchair \_\_\_\_\_
- Do I need a key \_\_\_\_\_?
- I went for a walk by the river \_\_\_\_\_
- Dave was sleeping. I knocked on his door \_\_\_\_\_
- The doorbell rang, so I looked out the window \_\_\_\_\_

**55.3** Use your own ideas to finish these sentences. Use *to . . .*

- I went to the store *to buy a newspaper*
- I'm very busy. I haven't got time \_\_\_\_\_
- I called Amy \_\_\_\_\_
- I'm going out \_\_\_\_\_
- I borrowed some money \_\_\_\_\_

**55.4** Write *to* or *for*.

- Ampol went to the store *to* buy some bread.
- We went to a restaurant \_\_\_\_\_ have dinner.
- Robert wants to go to college \_\_\_\_\_ study economics.
- I'm going to Toronto \_\_\_\_\_ an interview next week.
- I'm going to Vancouver \_\_\_\_\_ visit some friends of mine.
- Do you have time \_\_\_\_\_ a cup of coffee?
- I was late this morning. I didn't have time \_\_\_\_\_ comb my hair.
- Everybody needs money \_\_\_\_\_ live.
- My office is very small. There's only enough room \_\_\_\_\_ a desk and a chair.
- A: Excuse me, are you waiting \_\_\_\_\_ use the phone?  
B: No, I'm waiting \_\_\_\_\_ somebody.

**55.5** Finish these sentences. Choose from the list:

~~John / call~~    it / to arrive    you / tell me    the film / begin

- I can't leave yet. I'm waiting *for John to call*
- I sat down in the movie theater and waited \_\_\_\_\_
- We called an ambulance and waited \_\_\_\_\_
- "Do you know what to do?" "No, I'm waiting \_\_\_\_\_"

**A**

go to ... (go to work / go to San Francisco / go to a concert, etc.)

- What time do you usually go to work?
- I'm going to China next week.
- Tom didn't want to go to the concert.
- What time did you go to bed last night?
- I went to the dentist last week.

go to

go home (without to)

- I'm going home now. (*not* going to home)

**B**

go on ...

go on

a trip  
a tour  
an excursion  
a cruise  
vacation  
strike

- Children often go on school trips.
- When we were in Egypt, we went on a tour of the Pyramids.
- We're going on vacation next week.
- Last year I went to Costa Rica on vacation.
- The workers have gone on strike. (= they are refusing to work)

**C**

go for ...

go (somewhere) for

a walk  
a run  
a swim  
lunch, dinner, etc.

- "Where's John?" "He went for a walk."
- Did you go for a run this morning?
- The water looks nice. Let's go for a swim.
- Should we go out for dinner? I know a good restaurant.

**D**

go + -ing

We use go + -ing for many sports (swimming/skiing, etc.) and also for shopping:

I go  
he is going  
we went  
they have gone  
she wants to go

shopping  
swimming  
fishing  
sailing  
skiing  
jogging  
running, etc.

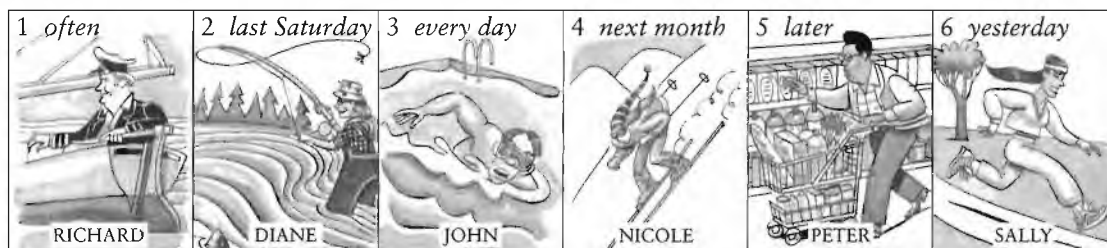


- Are you going shopping this afternoon?
- It's a nice day. Let's go swimming. (*or* Let's go for a swim.)
- Richard has a small boat, and he often goes sailing.
- I went jogging before breakfast this morning.

## 56.1 Write to/on/for where necessary.

- I'm going to China next week.
- Richard often goes — sailing.
- Sue went — Mexico last year.
- Would you like to go — the movies tonight?
- Brian goes — jogging every morning.
- I'm going out — a walk. Do you want to come?
- I'm tired because I went — bed very late.
- Mark is going — a trip — Turkey next week.
- The weather was warm and the lake was clean, so we went — a swim.
- The taxi drivers went — strike when I was in New York.
- I need some stamps, so I'm going — the post office.
- It's late. I have to go — home now.
- Would you like to go — a tour of the city?
- Do you want to go out — lunch today?
- My parents are going — a cruise this summer.

## 56.2 Use the pictures to complete the sentences. Use go/goes/going/went + -ing.



- Richard has a boat. He often goes sailing.
- Last Saturday Diane went —.
- John — every day.
- Nicole is going to Colorado next month. She's —.
- Peter is going out later. He has to —.
- Sally — after work yesterday.

## 56.3 Complete these sentences. Use the words in the box. Use to/on/for if necessary.

a swim	bed	home	shopping	the bank
a walk	Hawaii	riding	skiing	vacation

- The water looks great! Let's go for a swim.
- "Is John at home?" "No, he went — to get some money."
- I'm going — now. I have to buy some presents.
- I was very tired last night. I went — early.
- I wasn't enjoying the party, so I went — early.
- We live near the mountains. In winter we go — almost every weekend.
- Richard has a horse. He goes — a lot.
- It's a beautiful day! Would you like to go — in the park?
- A: Are you going — soon?  
B: Yes, next month. We're going —.

## A

get a letter / get a job, etc. (get + *noun*) = receive/buy/find

you don't have something

you get it

you have it

- "Did you **get** my post card?" "Yes, I **got** it yesterday." (= receive)
- I like your sweater. Where did you **get** it? (= buy)
- (*on the phone*) "Hello, can I speak to Amy, please?"  
"Sure. I'll **get** her." (= find and bring back)
- Is it difficult to **get** a job in your country? (= find)

## B

get hungry / get cold / get tired, etc. (get + *adjective*) = become

you're not hungry

you get hungry

you are hungry

- If you don't eat, you **get** hungry.
- Drink your coffee. It's **getting** cold.
- I'm sorry your mother is sick. I hope she **gets** better soon.
- We **got** wet because we didn't take an umbrella.

Also: **get** married

■ Nicole and Frank **are getting** married soon.

**get** dressed = put your clothes on

■ I **got** up and **got** dressed quickly.

**get** lost = lose your way

■ We **didn't** have a map, so we **got** lost.

## C

get to a place = arrive

- I usually **get to** work before 8:30. (= arrive at work)
- We left Boston at 10:15 and **got to** Ottawa at 11:30.

get here/there (without to)

- How did you **get** here? By bus?

get home (without to)

- What time did you **get** home last night?

get to

## D

get in / get out / get on / get off



get in (a car)

get out (of a car)



get on

(a bus / a train / a plane)



get off

- Kate **got in** the car and drove away. (You can also say: Kate **got into** the car . . .)
- A car stopped and a man **got out**. (*but* a man **got out of** the car)
- We **got on** the bus outside the hotel and **got off** at Church Street.

**57.1** Complete these sentences. Use *get/gets* and choose from the box.

my letter    a lot of snow    a room    the manager  
your jacket    a new computer    a ticket    the job

- I wrote to you last week. Did you *get my letter* \_\_\_\_\_ ?
- Where did you \_\_\_\_\_ ? It's really nice.
- We couldn't \_\_\_\_\_. All the hotels were full.
- I had an interview with the manager, but I didn't \_\_\_\_\_.
- Chicago has terrible weather. They \_\_\_\_\_ in winter.
- "Are you going to the concert?" "Yes, if I can \_\_\_\_\_."
- I'm going to \_\_\_\_\_. The one I have is too slow.
- I have a problem. Could you \_\_\_\_\_, please?

**57.2** Complete these sentences. Use *getting* + one of these words:

~~cold~~ dark late married ready

- Drink your coffee. It's *getting cold* \_\_\_\_\_.
- Turn on the light. It's \_\_\_\_\_.
- "I'm \_\_\_\_\_ next week." "Oh, really? Congratulations!"
- "Where's Karen?" "She's \_\_\_\_\_ to go out."
- It's \_\_\_\_\_. It's time to go home.

**57.3** Complete the sentences. Use *get/got* + one of these words:

angry better ~~hungry~~ lost married nervous old wet

- If you don't eat, you'll *get hungry* \_\_\_\_\_.
- Don't go out in the rain. You'll \_\_\_\_\_.
- My brother \_\_\_\_\_ last year. His wife's name is Julia.
- My boss \_\_\_\_\_ and shouted at us yesterday.
- We tried to find the hotel, but we \_\_\_\_\_.
- Everybody wants to stay young, but we all \_\_\_\_\_.
- The beginning of the film wasn't very good, but it \_\_\_\_\_.
- Most people \_\_\_\_\_ before exams.

**57.4** Write sentences with *I left ... and got to ...*

- (home / 7:30 → work / 8:15) *I left home at 7:30 and got to work at 8:15*
- (Toronto / 10:15 → New York / 11:45)  
I left Toronto at 10:15 and \_\_\_\_\_.
- (the party / 11:15 → home / midnight)  
\_\_\_\_\_.

Write a true sentence about yourself.

- I left \_\_\_\_\_.

**57.5** Write *got in / got out of / got on / got off*.

- Mei Lan *got in* \_\_\_\_\_ the car and drove away.
- I \_\_\_\_\_ the bus and walked to my house from the bus stop.
- Isabel \_\_\_\_\_ the car, locked the doors, and went into a store.
- I made a stupid mistake. I \_\_\_\_\_ the wrong train.

## A

Do is a general word for actions.

- What are you **doing** tonight? (*not* What are you making)
- "Shall I open the window?" "No, it's OK. I'll **do** it."
- Julia's job is very boring. She **does** the same thing every day.
- I **did** a lot of things yesterday.

What do you do? = What's your job?

- "What do you do?" "I work in a bank."

## B

Make = produce/create. For example:



She's making coffee. He made a cake.

They make toys.

It was made in China.

Compare do and make:

- I **did** a lot yesterday. I **cleaned** my room, I **wrote** some letters, and I **made** a cake.
- A: What do you **do** in your free time? Read? Play sports?
- B: I **make** clothes. I **make** all of my dresses. I also **make** toys for my children.

## C

Expressions with do

**do**  
homework  
(somebody) a favor  
an exercise  
(your) best  
housework  
the laundry  
the dishes

- Have the children **done** their homework?
- Erin, could you **do** me a favor?
- I have to **do** four exercises for homework tonight.
- I **did** my best, but I didn't win the race.
- I hate **doing** housework, especially cleaning.
- Tim usually **does** the laundry on Saturdays.
- I cooked, so you should **do** the dishes.

## D

Expressions with make

**make**  
a mistake  
an appointment  
a phone call  
a list  
a bed  
(a) noise

- I'm sorry, I **made** a mistake.
- I need to **make** an appointment to see the doctor.
- Excuse me, I have to **make** a phone call.
- Have you **made** a shopping list?
- Sometimes I forget to **make** my bed in the morning.
- It's late. Please don't **make** any noise.

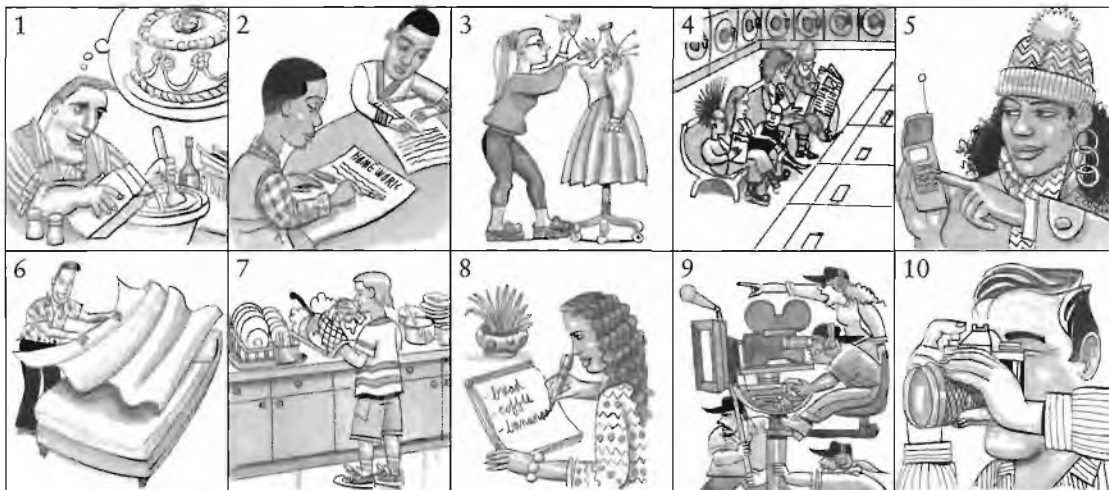
We say **make** a film/movie *but* take a photograph/picture.

- When was **this** movie **made**? *but* When was **this** photograph **taken**?

## 58.1 Write *make/making/made* or *do/doing/did/done*.

1. "Shall I open the window?" "No, it's OK. I'll *do* \_\_\_\_\_ it."
2. What did you \_\_\_\_\_ last weekend? Did you leave town?
3. Do you know how to \_\_\_\_\_ bread?
4. Paper is \_\_\_\_\_ from wood.
5. Fernando didn't help me. He sat in an armchair and \_\_\_\_\_ nothing.
6. "What do you \_\_\_\_\_?" "I'm a doctor."
7. I asked you to clean the bathroom. Have you \_\_\_\_\_ it?
8. "What do they \_\_\_\_\_ in that factory?" "Shoes."
9. I'm \_\_\_\_\_ some coffee. Would you like some?
10. Why are you mad at me? I didn't \_\_\_\_\_ anything wrong.
11. "What are you \_\_\_\_\_ tomorrow afternoon?" "I'm working."

## 58.2 What are these people doing?



1. *He's making a cake.*
2. They \_\_\_\_\_.
3. She \_\_\_\_\_.
4. \_\_\_\_\_.
5. \_\_\_\_\_.
6. \_\_\_\_\_.
7. \_\_\_\_\_.
8. \_\_\_\_\_.
9. \_\_\_\_\_.
10. \_\_\_\_\_.

## 58.3 Write *make* or *do* in the correct form.

1. I hate *doing* \_\_\_\_\_ housework, especially cleaning.
2. Why do you always \_\_\_\_\_ the same mistake?
3. "Can you \_\_\_\_\_ me a favor?" "It depends on what it is."
4. "Have you \_\_\_\_\_ your homework?" "Not yet."
5. I need to see the dentist, but I haven't \_\_\_\_\_ an appointment yet.
6. Chayan \_\_\_\_\_ his best, but he didn't pass his driver's test.
7. I painted the door, but I didn't \_\_\_\_\_ it very well.
8. When you've finished Exercise 1, you can \_\_\_\_\_ Exercise 2.
9. There's something wrong with the car. The engine is \_\_\_\_\_ a strange noise.
10. It was a bad mistake. It was the worst mistake I've ever \_\_\_\_\_.
11. Let's \_\_\_\_\_ a list of all the things we have to \_\_\_\_\_ today.



## A

have and have got (see Unit 9)

I have (something) or I've got (something) = it is mine

- I have a new car. or I've got a new car.
- She has long hair. or She's got long hair. (= She has got)
- Do Amy and Ed have any children? or Have Amy and Ed got any children?
- Tim doesn't have a job. or Tim hasn't got a job.
- How much time do you have? or How much time have you got?

Also:

I have	a headache / a toothache / a stomachache / a pain (in my leg, etc.)
I've got	a cold / a cough / a sore throat / a fever / the flu, etc.

- I have a headache. or I've got a headache.
- Do you have a cold? or Have you got a cold?

The past is I had (without got) / I didn't have / Did you have?, etc.

- When I first met Li Jing, she had short hair.
- He didn't have any money because he didn't have a job.
- Did you have a cold last week?

## B

have breakfast / have a good time, etc.

In these expressions have = eat or drink. You can't use "have got."

have	a sandwich / a pizza / a snack, etc.
	a cup of coffee / a glass of milk, etc.
	something to eat/drink

- "Where's Amy?" "She's having lunch."
- "Have a cookie!" "Oh, thank you."
- I had three cups of coffee this morning.
- Can I have something to eat?

We also use have (not have got) in these expressions:

have	a vacation / a party
	a dream
	an accident
	a baby
	an argument

- We're having a party next Friday. Can you come?
- Fu Chen had an accident on the way to work.
- Sandra just had a baby. It's a boy.
- Jack and I never agree. We have an argument every time we meet.

We also say:

have	fun / a (good) time
	a (nice) day / a (nice) weekend / a (great) vacation
	a (good) flight / a (great) trip, etc.

- "My vacation starts tomorrow." "Have a great time!"
- "How was your trip?" "We had a terrible flight, but after that I had fun."
- "Did you have a nice weekend?" "Yes, thanks. Very nice!"
- I'm having a bad day. Everything is going wrong.

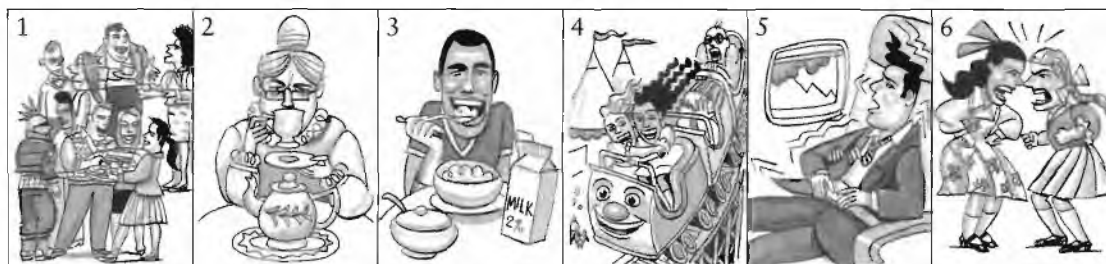
# Exercises

## 59.1 Write the correct form of *have* or *have got*.

1. *I didn't have* \_\_\_\_\_ time to do the shopping yesterday. (I / not / have)
2. "*Has Lisa got OR Does Lisa have* a car?" "No, she can't drive." (Lisa / have?)
3. He can't open the door. \_\_\_\_\_ a key. (he / not / have)
4. \_\_\_\_\_ a cold last week. He's better now. (Eric / have)
5. What's wrong? \_\_\_\_\_ a headache? (you / have?)
6. We wanted to go by taxi, but we \_\_\_\_\_ enough money. (we / not / have)
7. Liz is very busy. \_\_\_\_\_ much free time. (she / not / have)
8. \_\_\_\_\_ any problems when you were on vacation? (you / have?)

## 59.2 What are these people doing? Choose from the list.

an argument   breakfast   a cup of tea   a terrible flight   fun   a party



1. *They're having a party.* \_\_\_\_\_
2. She \_\_\_\_\_.
3. He \_\_\_\_\_.
4. They \_\_\_\_\_.
5. \_\_\_\_\_.
6. \_\_\_\_\_.

## 59.3 What do you say in these situations? Use *have*.

1. Mariko is going on vacation. What do you say to her before she goes?  
*Have a nice vacation!* \_\_\_\_\_
2. You meet Claire at the airport. She has just arrived. Ask her about her flight.  
*Did you have a good flight?* \_\_\_\_\_
3. Jiro is going on a long trip. What do you say to him before he leaves?  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. It's Monday morning. You are at work. Ask Paula about her weekend.  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. Paul has just come back from vacation. Ask him about his vacation.  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. Rachel is going out tonight. What do you say to her before she leaves?  
\_\_\_\_\_

## 59.4 Complete the sentences. Use *have/had* and choose from the list.

an accident   a glass of water   a baby   ~~a party~~   a bad dream   something to eat

1. We *had a party* \_\_\_\_\_ a few weeks ago. We invited fifty people.
2. "Should we \_\_\_\_\_?" "No, I'm not hungry."
3. I was thirsty, so I \_\_\_\_\_.
4. I \_\_\_\_\_ last night. It woke me up.
5. Soo Mi is a very good driver. She has never \_\_\_\_\_.
6. Rachel is going to \_\_\_\_\_. It will be her first child.

## A

## People



<i>subject:</i>	I	we	you	he	she	they
<i>object:</i>	me	us	you	him	her	them

## Subject

## Object

I I know Lynn.  
 we We know Lynn.  
 you You know Lynn.  
 he He knows Lynn.  
 she She knows Lynn.  
 they They know Lynn.

Lynn knows me. me  
 Lynn knows us. us  
 Lynn knows you. you  
 Lynn knows him. him  
 Lynn knows her. her  
 Lynn knows them. them

## B

## Things



<i>subject:</i>	it	they
<i>object:</i>	it	them

- I don't want **this book**. You can have **it**.
- I don't want **these books**. You can have **them**.
- Diane never drinks **milk**. She doesn't like **it**.
- I never go to **parties**. I don't like **them**.

## C

We use **me/her/them**, etc. (object) after a *preposition* (for/to/with, etc.).

- This letter isn't **for me**. It's **for you**.
- Who is that woman? Why are you looking **at her**?
- We're going to the movies. Do you want to come **with us**?
- Sue and Kevin are going to the movies. Do you want to go **with them**?
- "Where's the newspaper?" "You're sitting **on it**."

give it/them to . . .

- I need that book. Please give **it to me**.
- Robert needs these books. Can you give **them to him**, please?

# Exercises

## 60.1 Complete the sentences with *him/her/them*.

1. I don't know those girls. Do you know them ?
2. I don't know that man. Do you know \_\_\_\_\_ ?
3. I don't know those people. Do you know \_\_\_\_\_ ?
4. I don't know Dave's wife. Do you know \_\_\_\_\_ ?
5. I don't know Mr. Kwang. Do you know \_\_\_\_\_ ?
6. I don't know Sarah's parents. Do you know \_\_\_\_\_ ?
7. I don't know the woman in the black coat. Do you know \_\_\_\_\_ ?

## 60.2 Complete the sentences. Use *I/me/you/she/her, etc.*

1. I want to see her, but she doesn't want to see me .
2. They want to see me, but \_\_\_\_\_ don't want to see \_\_\_\_\_ .
3. She wants to see him, but \_\_\_\_\_ doesn't want to see \_\_\_\_\_ .
4. We want to see them, but \_\_\_\_\_ don't want to see \_\_\_\_\_ .
5. He wants to see us, but \_\_\_\_\_ don't want to see \_\_\_\_\_ .
6. They want to see her, but \_\_\_\_\_ doesn't want to see \_\_\_\_\_ .
7. I want to see them, but \_\_\_\_\_ don't want to see \_\_\_\_\_ .
8. You want to see her, but \_\_\_\_\_ doesn't want to see \_\_\_\_\_ .

## 60.3 Write sentences with *I like . . . , I don't like . . . , or Do you like . . . ?*

1. I don't eat tomatoes. I don't like them .
2. Eric is a very nice man. I like \_\_\_\_\_ .
3. This jacket isn't very nice. I don't \_\_\_\_\_ .
4. This is my new car. Do \_\_\_\_\_ ?
5. Mrs. Clark is not very friendly. I \_\_\_\_\_ .
6. These are my new shoes. \_\_\_\_\_ ?

## 60.4 Complete the sentences. Use *I/me/he/him, etc.*

1. Who is that woman? Why are you looking at her ?
2. "Do you know that man?" "Yes, I work with \_\_\_\_\_ ."
3. Where are the tickets? I can't find \_\_\_\_\_ .
4. I can't find my keys. Where are \_\_\_\_\_ ?
5. We're going out. You can come with \_\_\_\_\_ .
6. Mary likes music. \_\_\_\_\_ plays the piano.
7. I don't like dogs. I'm afraid of \_\_\_\_\_ .
8. I'm talking to you. Please listen to \_\_\_\_\_ .
9. Where is Anne? I want to talk to \_\_\_\_\_ .
10. My brother has a new job. \_\_\_\_\_ doesn't like \_\_\_\_\_ very much.

## 60.5 Complete the sentences.

1. I need that book. Can you give it to me ?
2. He wants the key. Can you give \_\_\_\_\_ ?
3. She wants the keys. Can you \_\_\_\_\_ ?
4. I need that letter. Can you \_\_\_\_\_ ?
5. They want the money. Can you \_\_\_\_\_ ?
6. We need the photographs. Can you \_\_\_\_\_ ?

## A

My hat.



Our hats.



Your hat.



His hat.



Her hat.



Their hats.



I → my  
 we → our  
 you → your  
 he → his  
 she → her  
 they → their  
 it → its

I like my job.  
 We like our jobs.  
 You like your job.  
 He likes his job.  
 She likes her job.  
 They like their jobs.

Hawaii (= it) is famous for its beaches.

We use my/your/his, etc. + a noun

my hands    his mother    her new car  
 our house    your best friend    their room

## B

his/her/their



AMY



NICK


MR. and  
MRS. LEE

her car  
(= Amy's car)


his bicycle



their son


her husband  
(= Amy's husband)


his sister



their daughter


her children  
(= Amy's children)


his parents



their children

## C

its and it's

its                      Hawaii is famous for its beaches.  
 it's (= it is)    I like Hawaii. It's a beautiful place. (= It is a beautiful place.)

# Exercises

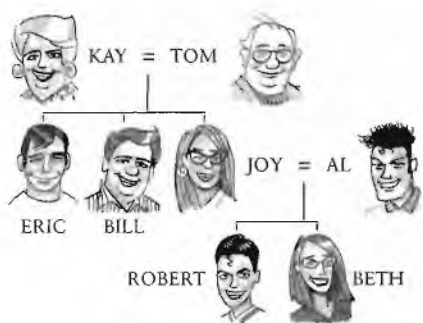
## 61.1 Complete these sentences.

- I'm going to wash my hands .
- She's going to wash \_\_\_\_\_ .
- We're going to wash \_\_\_\_\_ .
- He's going to wash \_\_\_\_\_ .
- They're going to wash \_\_\_\_\_ .
- Are you going to wash \_\_\_\_\_ ?

## 61.2 Complete these sentences.

- He lives with his parents .
- They live with \_\_\_\_\_ parents.
- We \_\_\_\_\_ parents.
- Mary lives \_\_\_\_\_ .
- I \_\_\_\_\_ parents.
- John \_\_\_\_\_ .
- Do you live \_\_\_\_\_ ?
- Most children \_\_\_\_\_ .

## 61.3 Look at the family tree, and complete the sentences with *his/her/their*.



- I saw Kay with her husband, Tom.
- I saw Joy and Al with \_\_\_\_\_ children.
- I saw Al with \_\_\_\_\_ wife, Joy.
- I saw Eric with \_\_\_\_\_ brother, Bill.
- I saw Joy with \_\_\_\_\_ brother Bill.
- I saw Kay and Tom with \_\_\_\_\_ son Bill.
- I saw Joy with \_\_\_\_\_ parents.
- I saw Beth and Robert with \_\_\_\_\_ parents.

## 61.4 Write *my/our/your/his/her/their/its*.

- Do you like your job?
- I know Mr. Chu, but I don't know \_\_\_\_\_ wife.
- Mr. and Mrs. Romo live in San Francisco. \_\_\_\_\_ son lives in Canada.
- We're going to have a party. We're going to invite all \_\_\_\_\_ friends.
- Amy is going out with \_\_\_\_\_ friends tonight.
- I like tennis. It's \_\_\_\_\_ favorite sport.
- "Is that \_\_\_\_\_ car?" "No, I don't have a car."
- I want to call Amy. Do you know \_\_\_\_\_ phone number?
- Do you think most people are happy with \_\_\_\_\_ jobs?
- I'm going to wash \_\_\_\_\_ hair before I go out.
- That's a beautiful tree. \_\_\_\_\_ leaves are a beautiful color.
- John has a brother and a sister. \_\_\_\_\_ brother is 25, and \_\_\_\_\_ sister is 21.

## 61.5 Complete the sentences. Use *my/his/their*, etc., with one of these words:

coat homework house husband ~~job~~ key name

- Jim doesn't enjoy his job . It's not very interesting.
- I can't open the door. I don't have \_\_\_\_\_ .
- Amy is married. \_\_\_\_\_ works in a bank.
- It's very cold today. Put on \_\_\_\_\_ when you go out.
- "What are the children doing?" "They're doing \_\_\_\_\_ ."
- "Do you know that man?" "Yes, but I don't know \_\_\_\_\_ ."
- We live on Main Street. \_\_\_\_\_ is on the corner of Main and First.

# Whose is this? It's mine/yours/hers, etc.

A



I → my → mine	It's my money.	It's mine.
we → our → ours	It's our money.	It's ours.
you → your → yours	It's your money.	It's yours.
he → his → his	It's his money.	It's his.
she → her → hers	It's her money.	It's hers.
they → their → theirs	It's their money.	It's theirs.

B

We use **my/your**, etc. + a *noun* (my hands / your book, etc.)

- My hands are cold.
- Mary gave me her umbrella.
- Is this your book?
- It's their problem, not our problem.

We use **mine/yours**, etc., without a noun.

- Is this book mine or yours? (= my book or your book)
- I didn't have an umbrella, so Mary gave me hers. (= her umbrella)
- It's their problem, not ours. (= not our problem)
- We went in our car, and they went in theirs. (= their car)

You can use **his** with or without a noun.

- "Is this his camera or hers?" "It's his."

C

a friend of **mine** / a friend of **his** / some friends of **yours**, etc.

- I went to the movies with a friend of mine. (*not* a friend of me)
- Tom was with a friend of his. (*not* a friend of him)
- Are those people friends of yours? (*not* friends of you)

D

Whose . . . ?

- Whose book is this? (= Is it your book? his book? my book?, etc.)

You can use **whose** with or without a noun.

- Whose money is this? } It's mine.
- Whose is this? }
- Whose shoes are these? } They're John's.
- Whose are these? }



# Exercises

## 62.1 Complete the sentences with *mine/yours*, etc.

1. It's your money. It's yours .
2. It's my bag. It's \_\_\_\_\_ .
3. It's our car. It's \_\_\_\_\_ .
4. They're her shoes. They're \_\_\_\_\_ .
5. It's their house. It's \_\_\_\_\_ .
6. They're your books. They're \_\_\_\_\_ .
7. They're my glasses. They're \_\_\_\_\_ .
8. It's his coat. It's \_\_\_\_\_ .

## 62.2 Choose the right word.

1. It's their/theirs problem, not our/ours. (*their* and *ours* are right)
2. This is a nice camera. Is it your/yours?
3. That's not my/mine umbrella. My/Mine is black.
4. Whose books are these? Your/Yours or my/mine?
5. Catherine is going out with her/hers friends tonight.
6. My/Mine room is bigger than her/hers.
7. They've got two children but I don't know their/theirs names.
8. Can we use your telephone? Our/Ours isn't working.

## 62.3 Complete these sentences. Use *friend(s) of mine/yours*, etc.

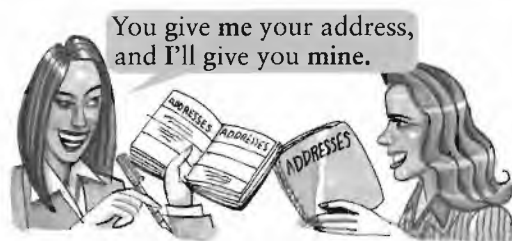
1. I went to the movies with a friend of mine .
2. They went on vacation with some friends of theirs .
3. She's going out with a \_\_\_\_\_ .
4. We had dinner with some \_\_\_\_\_ .
5. I played tennis with a \_\_\_\_\_ .
6. Tom is going to meet a \_\_\_\_\_ .
7. Do you know those people? Are they \_\_\_\_\_ ?







## 62.4 Look at the pictures. What are the people saying?

<p>1</p> <p>Whose car is this?</p> <p>It's theirs.</p>	<p>2</p> <p>is this?</p> <p>It's _____.</p>
<p>3</p> <p>these?</p> <p>They _____.</p>	<p>4</p> <p>_____?</p> <p>_____.</p>
<p>5</p> <p>_____?</p> <p>_____.</p>	<p>6</p> <p>_____?</p> <p>_____.</p>



# I, me, my, and mine



	I, etc. (Unit 60)	me, etc. (Unit 60)	my, etc. (Unit 61)	mine, etc. (Unit 62)
	I know Tom.	Tom knows me.	It's my car.	It's mine.
	We know Tom.	Tom knows us.	It's our car.	It's ours.
	You know Tom.	Tom knows you.	It's your car.	It's yours.
	He knows Tom.	Tom knows him.	It's his car.	It's his.
	She knows Tom.	Tom knows her.	It's her car.	It's hers.
	They know Tom.	Tom knows them.	It's their car.	It's theirs.

- "Do you know that man?" "Yes, I know **him**, but I can't remember his **name**."
- She was very happy because **we** invited her to stay with **us** at **our** house.
- A: Where are the children? Have **you** seen **them**?
- B: Yes, **they**'re playing with **their** friends in the park.
- That's **my** pen. Can you give it to **me**, please?
- "Is this your **umbrella**?" "No, it's **yours**."
- He didn't have an umbrella, so she gave **him** hers. (= she gave her umbrella to him)
- I'm going out with a friend of **mine** tonight. (*not* a friend of me)

Exercises

63.1 Answer the questions in the same way.



Do you know that man?



Do you know that woman?



1. Yes, I know him but I can't remember his name.      2. Yes, I know \_\_\_\_\_, but I can't remember \_\_\_\_\_.

Do you know those people?



Do you know me?



3. Yes, I \_\_\_\_\_, but I \_\_\_\_\_ names.      4. Yes, I \_\_\_\_\_, but \_\_\_\_\_.

63.2 Complete the sentences in the same way.

1. We invited her to stay with us at our house.  
2. He invited us to stay with \_\_\_\_\_ house.  
3. They invited me to stay with \_\_\_\_\_ house.  
4. I invited them \_\_\_\_\_.  
5. She invited us \_\_\_\_\_.  
6. Did you invite him \_\_\_\_\_?

63.3 Complete the sentences in the same way.

1. I gave him my address, and he gave me his.  
2. I gave her \_\_\_\_\_ address, and she gave me \_\_\_\_\_.  
3. He gave me \_\_\_\_\_ address, and I gave \_\_\_\_\_.  
4. We gave them \_\_\_\_\_ address, and they gave \_\_\_\_\_.  
5. She gave him \_\_\_\_\_ address, and \_\_\_\_\_.  
6. You gave us \_\_\_\_\_ address, and \_\_\_\_\_.  
7. They gave you \_\_\_\_\_ address, and \_\_\_\_\_.

63.4 Write him/her/yours, etc.

1. Where's Amy? Have you seen her \_\_\_\_\_?  
2. Where are my keys? Where did I put \_\_\_\_\_?  
3. This letter is for Bill. Can you give it to \_\_\_\_\_?  
4. We wrote to John but he didn't answer \_\_\_\_\_ letter.  
5. "I can't find my pen. Can I use \_\_\_\_\_?" "Sure."  
6. We're going to the movies. Why don't you come with \_\_\_\_\_?  
7. Did your sister pass \_\_\_\_\_ driver's test?  
8. Some people talk about \_\_\_\_\_ jobs all the time.  
9. Last night I went out for dinner with a friend of \_\_\_\_\_.

## A


He's looking at **himself**.

They're enjoying **themselves**.

I	→ me	→ myself
he	→ him	→ himself
she	→ her	→ herself
you	→ you	→ { yourself yourselves
we	→ us	→ ourselves
they	→ them	→ themselves

- I looked at **myself** in the mirror.
- He cut **himself** with a knife.
- She fell off her bike, but she didn't hurt **herself**.
- Please help **yourself**. (one person)
- Please help **yourselves**. (two or more people)
- We had a good vacation. **We** enjoyed **ourselves**.
- They had a nice time. **They** enjoyed **themselves**.

## B

Compare:

me/him/them, etc.



**She** is looking at **him**.  
└ different people ┘



- You never talk to **me**.
- I didn't pay for **them**.
- Did I hurt **you**?

myself/himself/themselves, etc.



**He** is looking at **himself**.  
└ the same person ┘



- Sometimes I talk to **myself**.
- They paid for **themselves**.
- Be careful! Don't hurt **yourself**.

## C

by myself / by yourself, etc. = alone

- I went on vacation **by myself**. (= I went alone)
- "Was she with friends?" "No, she was **by herself**."

## D

each other

- Kim and Amy are good friends. They know **each other** well.  
(= Kim knows Amy / Amy knows Kim)
- Paul and I live near **each other**. (= he lives near me / I live near him)

Compare **each other** and **-selves**:


- Ed and Sue looked at **each other**.  
(= Ed looked at Sue / Sue looked at Ed)



- Ed and Sue looked at **themselves**.  
(= Ed looked at Ed / Sue looked at Sue)

# Exercises


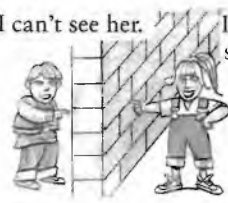




## 64.1 Complete the sentences with *myself/yourself*, etc.

1. He looked at *himself* in the mirror.
2. I'm not angry with you. I'm angry with \_\_\_\_\_.
3. Jennifer had a good time in Mexico. She enjoyed \_\_\_\_\_.
4. My friends had a good time in Mexico. They enjoyed \_\_\_\_\_.
5. He never thinks about other people. He only thinks about \_\_\_\_\_.
6. I want to know more about you. Tell me about \_\_\_\_\_ . (*one person*)
7. Goodbye! Have a good trip and take care of \_\_\_\_\_ ! (*two people*)

## 64.2 Write sentences with *by myself / by yourself*, etc.

1. I went to South America alone. *I went to South America by myself.*
2. When I saw him, he was alone. When I saw him, he \_\_\_\_\_.
3. Don't go out alone. Don't \_\_\_\_\_.
4. I went to the movies alone. I \_\_\_\_\_.
5. My sister lives alone. My sister \_\_\_\_\_.
6. Many people live alone. Many people \_\_\_\_\_.

## 64.3 Write sentences with *each other*.

<p>I like her.      I like him.</p> 	<p>I can't see her.      I can't see him.</p> 	<p>I often write to her.      I often write to him.</p> 
1. <i>They like each other.</i>	2. They can't _____.	3. They _____.
<p>I don't know him.      I don't know him.</p> 	<p>I'm sitting next to her.      I'm sitting next to him.</p> 	<p>I just gave her a present.      I just gave her a present.</p> 
4. _____	5. _____	6. _____

## 64.4 Complete the sentences. Use:

each other      ourselves/yourselfs/themselves      us/you/them

1. Paul and I live near *each other* .
2. Who are those people? Do you know *them* ?
3. You can help Taro, and Taro can help you. So you and Taro can help \_\_\_\_\_ .
4. There's food in the kitchen. If you and Bob are hungry, you can help \_\_\_\_\_ .
5. We didn't go to Megan's party. She didn't invite \_\_\_\_\_ .
6. When we go on vacation, we always enjoy \_\_\_\_\_ .
7. Diane and I are very good friends. We've known \_\_\_\_\_ for a long time.
8. "Did you see Sam and Sue at the party?" "Yes, but I didn't speak to \_\_\_\_\_ ."
9. Many people talk to \_\_\_\_\_ when they're alone.

# 's (Kate's camera / my brother's car, etc.)

My camera.



KATE

Kate's camera  
(her camera)

My car.



MY BROTHER

my brother's car  
(his car)



the manager's office  
(his or her office)

We normally use -'s for *people*.

- I stayed at **my sister's** house. (*not* the house of my sister)
- Have you met **Mr. Suzuki's** wife? (*not* the wife of Mr. Suzuki)
- Are you going to **James's** party?
- Paul is a **man's** name. Paula is a **woman's** name.

You can use -'s without a noun after it.

- Mi Ja's hair is longer than **Megan's**. (= Megan's hair)
- "Whose umbrella is this?" "It's **my mother's**." (= my mother's umbrella)
- "Where were you last night?" "I was at **Paul's**." (= Paul's house)

## friend's and friends'



MY FRIEND

My house.

my friend's house = *one friend*  
(= his house or her house)

We write -'s after friend/student/mother, etc. (*singular*):

my **mother's** car (*one mother*)  
my **father's** car (*one father*)



MY FRIENDS

my **friends'** house = *two or more friends*  
(= **their** house)

We write -' after friends/students/parents, etc. (*plural*):

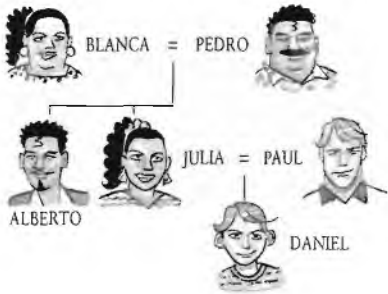
my **parents'** car (*two parents*)

We use of . . . for *things, places, etc.*

- Look at the roof **of that building**. (*not* that building's roof)
- We didn't see the beginning **of the film**. (*not* the film's beginning)
- What's the name **of this town**?
- Do you know the cause **of the problem**?
- We had to sit in the back **of the theater**.
- Madrid is the capital **of Spain**.

# Exercises

## 65.1 Look at the family tree. Write sentences about the people in the family.



Blanca and Pedro are married.  
They have a son, Alberto, and  
a daughter, Julia.  
Julia is married to Paul. Julia  
and Paul have a son, Daniel.

1. (Pedro / husband) Pedro is Blanca's husband
2. (Julia / mother) Julia is Daniel's mother.
3. (Blanca / wife) Blanca is \_\_\_\_\_ wife.
4. (Alberto / brother) Alberto \_\_\_\_\_
5. (Alberto / uncle) \_\_\_\_\_ uncle.
6. (Julia / wife) Julia \_\_\_\_\_
7. (Blanca / grandmother) \_\_\_\_\_
8. (Julia / sister) \_\_\_\_\_
9. (Paul / husband) \_\_\_\_\_
10. (Paul / father) \_\_\_\_\_
11. (Daniel / nephew) \_\_\_\_\_

## 65.2 Look at the pictures and answer the questions. Use only one word.

JANE

ANDY

ALICE

DIANE

DAVE

1. Whose is this?  
Alice's.

3. And this? \_\_\_\_\_

5. And this? \_\_\_\_\_

2. Whose is this? \_\_\_\_\_

4. And these? \_\_\_\_\_

6. And these? \_\_\_\_\_

## 65.3 Are these sentences right? Correct the sentences that are wrong.

- |  |                          |
|--|--------------------------|
| 1. I stayed at <u>the house of my sister</u> .                 | <u>my sister's house</u> |
| 2. What is <u>the name of this town</u> ?                      | <u>OK</u>                |
| 3. Do you like <u>the color of this coat</u> ?                 | _____                    |
| 4. Do you know <u>the phone number of Bill</u> ?               | _____                    |
| 5. <u>The job of my brother</u> is very interesting.           | _____                    |
| 6. Write your name at the <u>top of the page</u> .             | _____                    |
| 7. For me, morning is <u>the best part of the day</u> .        | _____                    |
| 8. <u>The favorite color of Paula</u> is blue.                 | _____                    |
| 9. When is <u>the birthday of your mother</u> ?                | _____                    |
| 10. <u>The house of my parents</u> isn't very big.             | _____                    |
| 11. <u>The walls of this house</u> are very thin.              | _____                    |
| 12. The car stopped at <u>the end of the street</u> .          | _____                    |
| 13. Are you going to <u>the party of Silvia</u> next week?     | _____                    |
| 14. <u>The manager of the hotel</u> is in a meeting right now. | _____                    |

## A



He has a camera.



She's waiting for a taxi.



It's a beautiful day.

a ... = one thing or person

- Alice works in a bank. (*not* in bank)
- Can I ask a question? (*not* ask question)
- I don't have a car.
- There's a woman at the bus stop.

## B

an (*not* a) before a/e/i/o/u

- Do you want an apple or a banana?
- I'm going to buy a hat and an umbrella.
- There was an interesting program on TV last night.

Also: an hour ("h" is not pronounced: an ~~hour~~)

But: a university (pronounced *yuniversity*)

a European country (pronounced *yuropean*)

Another (= an + other) is one word.

- Can I have another cup of coffee?

## C

We use a/an ... when we say what a thing or a person is. For example:

- The sun is a star.
- Football is a game.
- Dallas is a city in Texas.
- A mouse is an animal. It's a small animal.
- Joe is a very nice person.

We use a/an ... for jobs.

- A: What do you do?
- B: I'm a dentist. (*not* I'm dentist.)
- "What does Mark do?" "He's an engineer."
- Would you like to be a teacher?
- Beethoven was a composer.
- Picasso was a famous painter.
- Are you a student?



# Exercises

## 66.1 Write a or an.

1. an old book
2. a window
3. a horse
4. a airport
5. a new airport
6. a organization
7. a university
8. a hour
9. a economic problem

## 66.2 What are these things? Choose from the list.

airplane	flower	insect	planet	sport
<del>bird</del>	fruit	mountain	river	vegetable

1. A duck is a bird.
2. A carrot is a vegetable.
3. Tennis is a sport.
4. A 747 is a plane.
5. Everest is a mountain.
6. Saturn is a planet.
7. A banana is a fruit.
8. The Amazon is a river.
9. A rose is a flower.
10. A fly is a insect.

## 66.3 What are their jobs? Choose from the list and complete the sentences.

architect auto mechanic dentist electrician photographer sales clerk taxi driver



1. She's a dentist.
2. He's a taxi driver.
3. He is an electrician.
4. He's a photographer.
5. She's a sales clerk.
6. He's an architect.
7. He's a shop assistant.
8. And you? I'm a taxi driver.

## 66.4 Write sentences. Choose from each box. Use a/an.

I want to ask you	I can't ride
Lucia works in	Jim lives in
Tom never wears	My brother is
Amy wants to learn	Tonight I'm going to

+

old house	office
artist	foreign language
party	hat
<del>question</del>	bicycle

1. I want to ask you a question
2. Lucia works in an office
3. Tom never wears a hat
4. Amy wants to learn a foreign language
5. I can't ride a bicycle
6. Jim lives in an old house
7. My brother is an artist
8. Tonight I'm going to a party



# Flower(s) and bus(es) (Singular and Plural)

## A

The plural of a noun is usually -s.

*singular* = one → *plural* = two or more

a flower → some flowers  
a week → two weeks  
a nice place → many nice places  
this hat → these hats



a flower



some flowers

*Spelling* (see Appendixes 5.1–5.2)

-s / -sh / -ch / -x → -es

bus → buses dish → dishes church → churches  
box → boxes

also

potato → potatoes tomato → tomatoes

-y → -ies

baby → babies dictionary → dictionaries party → parties

but -ay / -ey / -oy → -ys

day → days monkey → monkeys boy → boys

-f / -fe → -ves

shelf → shelves leaf → leaves wife → wives

## B

These things are plural in English:



scissors



glasses



pants



jeans



shorts



pajamas

- Do you wear glasses?
- Where are the scissors? I need them.

You can also say a pair of scissors / a pair of pants / a pair of pajamas, etc.

- I need a new pair of jeans. or I need some new jeans. (*not* a new jeans)

## C

Some plurals do *not* end in -s.

this man → these men

one foot → two feet

that sheep → those sheep

a woman → some women

a tooth → all my teeth

a fish → a lot of fish

a child → many children

a mouse → some mice

Also: a person → two people / some people / a lot of people, etc.

- She's a nice person.
- They are nice people. (*not* nice persons)

## D

People is plural (= they), so we say people are / people have, etc.

- A lot of people speak English. (*not* speaks)
- I like the people here. They are very friendly.

Police is plural.

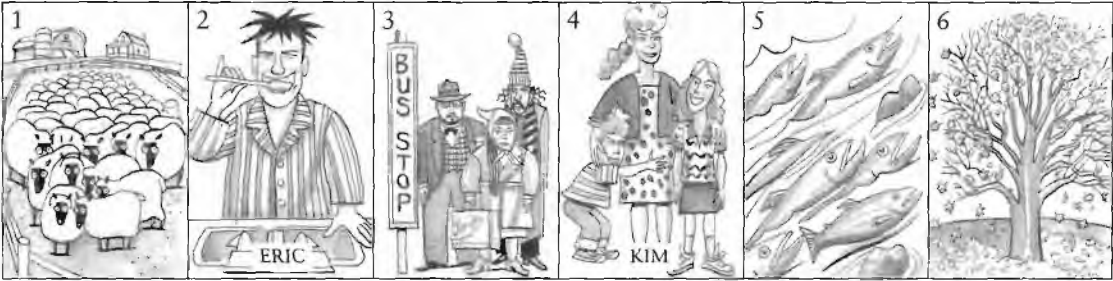
- "The police are here." "Why? What do they want?"

# Exercises

## 67.1 Write the plural.

- |                          |                   |                   |
|--------------------------|-------------------|-------------------|
| 1. flower <u>flowers</u> | 5. umbrella _____ | 9. family _____   |
| 2. boat _____            | 6. address _____  | 10. foot _____    |
| 3. woman _____           | 7. knife _____    | 11. holiday _____ |
| 4. city _____            | 8. sandwich _____ | 12. potato _____  |

## 67.2 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences.



- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. There are a lot of <u>sheep</u> in the field. | 4. Kim has two _____.                     |
| 2. Eric is brushing his _____.                   | 5. There are a lot of _____ in the river. |
| 3. There are three _____ at the bus stop.        | 6. The _____ are falling from the tree.   |

## 67.3 Are these sentences right? Correct the sentences that are wrong.

- I'm going to buy some flowers. OK
- I need a new jeans. a new pair of jeans OR some new jeans
- It's a lovely park with a lot of beautiful tree. \_\_\_\_\_
- There was a woman in the car with two mens. \_\_\_\_\_
- Sheep eat grass. \_\_\_\_\_
- Fernando is married and has three childs. \_\_\_\_\_
- Most of my friend are student. \_\_\_\_\_
- He put on his pajama and went to bed. \_\_\_\_\_
- We went fishing, but we didn't catch many fish. \_\_\_\_\_
- Do you know many persons in this town? \_\_\_\_\_
- I like your pant. Where did you get it? \_\_\_\_\_
- Montreal is usually full of tourist. \_\_\_\_\_
- I don't like mice. I'm afraid of them. \_\_\_\_\_
- This scissor isn't very sharp. \_\_\_\_\_

## 67.4 Which is right? Complete the sentences.

- |  |                     |
|--|---------------------|
| 1. It's a nice place. Many people <u>go</u> there on vacation. | (go or goes?)       |
| 2. Some people _____ always late.                              | (is or are?)        |
| 3. Their president is not popular. The people _____ like him.  | (don't or doesn't?) |
| 4. A lot of people _____ television every day.                 | (watch or watches?) |
| 5. Three people _____ injured in the accident.                 | (was or were?)      |
| 6. How many people _____ in that house?                        | (live or lives?)    |
| 7. _____ the police carry guns in your country?                | (Do or Does?)       |
| 8. The police _____ looking for the stolen car.                | (is or are?)        |
| 9. I need my glasses, but I can't find _____.                  | (it or them?)       |
| 10. I'm going to buy _____ new jeans today.                    | (a or some?)        |

# A car, some money (Countable and Uncountable 1)

A noun can be *countable* or *uncountable*.

## A

Countable nouns

For example: (a) car (a) man (a) key (a) house (a) flower (an) idea (an) accident

You can use *one/two/three* (etc.) + *countable nouns* (you can count them)



one car



two cars



three men



four houses

Countable nouns can be *singular* (= one) or *plural* (= two or more).

*singular* a car, the car, my car, etc.

*plural* cars, the cars, his cars, two cars, some cars, many cars, etc.

- I've got a car.
- New cars are very expensive.
- There aren't many cars in the parking lot.

You can't use the singular (car/house/key, etc.) alone. You need *a/an* (Unit 66).

- We can't get in without a key. (*not* without key)

## B

Uncountable nouns

For example: water air rice salt plastic money music tennis



water



salt



money



music

You can't say *one/two/three* (etc.) + *uncountable nouns* (you can't count them)

~~one water~~ ~~two musics~~

Uncountable nouns have only *one* form.

money the money my money some money much money, etc.

- I've got some money.
- Money isn't everything.
- There isn't much money in the box.

You can't use *a/an* + uncountable nouns: ~~a~~ money ~~a~~ music

But you can use *a piece of ... / a glass of ...*, etc. + uncountable nouns.

a glass of water

a carton of milk

a bowl of rice

a piece of candy

a cup of coffee

a bottle of perfume

a can of fruit

a game of tennis

# Exercises

**68.1** What are these things? Some are countable and some are uncountable. Write *a/an* if necessary. The names of these things are:

bucket	envelope	salt	spoon	teapot	toothpaste
egg	money	sand	tea	toothbrush	wallet



- |                          |                |                 |
|--------------------------|----------------|-----------------|
| 1. It's <u>salt</u> .    | 5. It's _____. | 9. It's _____.  |
| 2. It's <u>a spoon</u> . | 6. It's _____. | 10. It's _____. |
| 3. It's _____.           | 7. It's _____. | 11. It's _____. |
| 4. It's _____.           | 8. It's _____. | 12. It's _____. |

**68.2** Some of these sentences are right, but some need *a/an*. Write *a/an* if necessary.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. I haven't got watch. <u>a watch</u> | 9. Jamaica is island. _____              |
| 2. Do you like cheese? <u>OK</u>       | 10. I don't need key. _____              |
| 3. Beth never wears hat. _____         | 11. Everybody needs food. _____          |
| 4. Are you looking for job? _____      | 12. I've got good idea. _____            |
| 5. Eve doesn't eat meat. _____         | 13. Can you drive car? _____             |
| 6. Eve eats apple every day. _____     | 14. Do you want cup of tea? _____        |
| 7. I'm going to concert tonight. _____ | 15. I don't like tea without milk. _____ |
| 8. It was beautiful day. _____         | 16. Don't go out without coat. _____     |

**68.3** What are these things? Write *a ... of ...* for each picture. Choose from each box.



bottle	carton	jar	+	beans	juice	soup
bowl	cup	piece		coffee	<del>milk</del>	water
can	glass	piece		honey	paper	wood

- |                            |          |          |
|----------------------------|----------|----------|
| 1. <u>a carton of milk</u> | 4. _____ | 7. _____ |
| 2. _____                   | 5. _____ | 8. _____ |
| 3. _____                   | 6. _____ | 9. _____ |

# A car, some money (Countable and Uncountable 2)

## A

a/an and some

**A/an + singular countable nouns** (car/apple/shoe, etc.):

- I need a new car.
- Would you like an apple?



an apple

**Some + plural countable nouns** (cars/apples/shoes, etc.):

- I need some new shoes.
- Would you like some apples?



some apples

**Some + uncountable nouns** (water/money/music, etc.):

- I need some money.
- Would you like some cheese? or
- Would you like a piece of cheese?



some cheese or  
a piece of cheese

Compare a and some:

- Nicole bought a hat, some shoes, and some perfume.
- I read a newspaper, wrote some letters, and listened to some music.

## B

Many nouns are sometimes countable and sometimes uncountable. For example:



a cake



some cakes



some cake or  
a piece of cake



a chicken



some  
chickens



some chicken or  
a piece of chicken

- I'm going to make a cake tonight.
- Look! The bakery has some nice cakes today.
- Would you like a piece of chicken? (or . . . some chicken?)

## C

Be careful with these nouns – they are usually uncountable:

**advice information weather news bread hair furniture paper work**

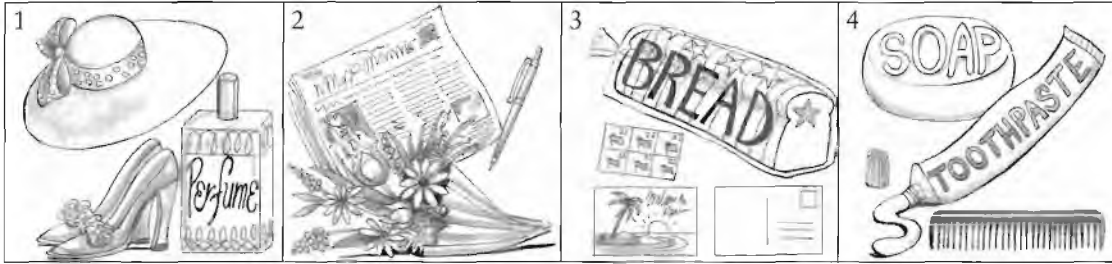
- Can I talk to you? I need some advice.
- I need some information about hotels in Mexico City. (*not informations*)
- We're having nice weather this year.
- Listen! I just got some good news. (*not a good news*)
- I'm going to buy some bread. (*not a bread*)
- Sue has very long hair. (*not hairs*)
- They've got some very nice furniture in their house. (*not furnitures*)
- I need some paper / a piece of paper. I want to make a list.
- "Do you like your job?" "Yes, but it's hard work." (*not a hard work*)

We say a job, not "a work."

- I've got a new job. (*not a new work*)

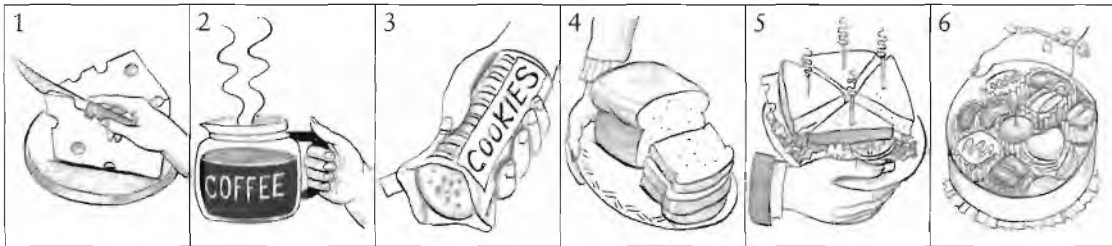
# Exercises

69.1 What did you buy? Use the pictures and write sentences (*I bought . . .*).



1. *I bought a hat, some shoes, and some perfume.*
2. I bought \_\_\_\_\_.
3. \_\_\_\_\_.
4. \_\_\_\_\_.

69.2 Write sentences with *Would you like a . . . ?* or *Would you like some . . . ?*.



1. *Would you like some cheese?*
2. Would you like \_\_\_\_\_ ?
3. Would \_\_\_\_\_ ?
4. \_\_\_\_\_.
5. \_\_\_\_\_.
6. \_\_\_\_\_.

69.3 Write *a/an* or *some*.

1. I read a book and listened to some music.
2. I need \_\_\_\_\_ money. I want to buy \_\_\_\_\_ food.
3. We met \_\_\_\_\_ interesting people at the party.
4. I'm going to open \_\_\_\_\_ window to get \_\_\_\_\_ fresh air.
5. Ratana didn't eat much for lunch – only \_\_\_\_\_ apple and \_\_\_\_\_ bread.
6. We live in \_\_\_\_\_ big house. There's \_\_\_\_\_ nice yard with \_\_\_\_\_ beautiful trees.
7. I'm going to make a table. First I need \_\_\_\_\_ wood.
8. Listen to me. I'm going to give you \_\_\_\_\_ advice.
9. I want to write a letter. I need \_\_\_\_\_ paper and \_\_\_\_\_ pen.

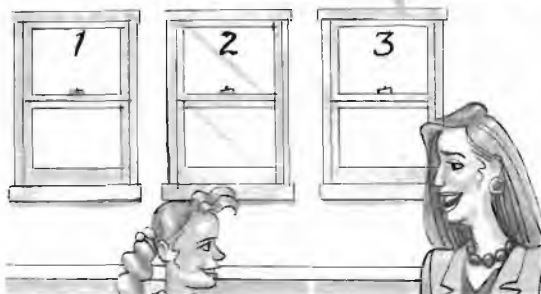
69.4 Which is right?

1. I'm going to buy some new ~~shoe~~/shoes. (*shoes* is right)
2. Mark has brown eye/eyes.
3. Shu Ling has short black hair/hairs.
4. The guidebook had some information/informations about the city.
5. We're going to buy some new chair/chairs.
6. We're going to buy some new furniture/furnitures.
7. It's hard to find a work/job right now.
8. We had wonderful weather / a wonderful weather when we were on vacation.

## A

a/an

Can you open a window?



There are *three* windows here.  
a window = window 1 or 2 or 3

- I have **a** car. (There are many cars and I have one.)
- Can I ask **a** question? (There are many questions – can I ask one?)
- Is there **a** hotel near here? (There are many hotels – is there one near here?)
- Paris is **a** interesting city. (There are many interesting cities and Paris is one.)
- Lisa is **a** student. (There are many students and Lisa is one.)

the

Can you open the window?



There is only *one* window here –  
**the** window.

- I'm going to wash **the** car tomorrow. (= my car)
- Can you repeat **the** question, please? (= the question that you asked)
- We enjoyed our vacation. **The** hotel was very nice. (= our hotel)
- Paris is **the** capital of France. (There is only one capital of France.)
- Lisa is **the** youngest student in her class. (There is only one youngest student.)

Compare a and the:

I bought **a** jacket and **a** shirt. **The** jacket was cheap, but **the** shirt was expensive.  
(= **the** jacket and **the** shirt that I bought)

## B

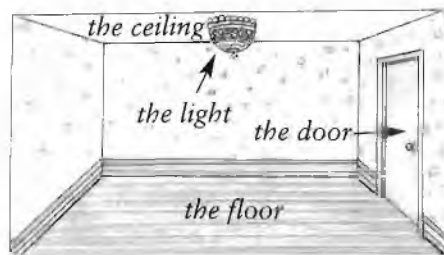
We say **the** . . . when it is clear which thing or person we mean. For example:

the door / the ceiling / the floor / the light, etc. (*of a room*)

the roof / the backyard / the kitchen / the bathroom, etc. (*of a house*)

the airport / the police station / the train station / the mayor's office, etc. (*of a city*)

- "Where's Tom?" "In **the** kitchen."  
(= the kitchen of this house or apartment)
- Turn off **the** light and close **the** door.  
(= the light and the door of the room)
- Do you live far from **the** airport?  
(= the airport of your town)
- I'd like to speak to **the** manager, please.  
(= the manager of this store, etc.)









# Exercises

## 70.1 Write a/an or the.

1. We enjoyed our trip. The hotel was very nice.
2. "Can I ask a question?" "Sure. What do you want to know?"
3. You look very tired. You need a vacation.
4. "Where's Tom?" "He's in the kitchen."
5. Tracy is a interesting person. You should meet her.
6. Excuse me, can you tell me how to get to a post office?
7. A: Let's go and see a movie tonight.  
B: OK, that's a good idea. What do you want to see?
8. It's a nice morning. Let's go for a walk.
9. Amanda is a student. When she finishes school, she wants to be a journalist. She lives in a apartment near a college where she is studying. A apartment is small, but she likes it.
10. Peter and Mary have two children, a boy and a girl. A boy is seven years old, and a girl is three. Peter works in a factory. Mary doesn't have a job right now.

## 70.2 Complete the sentences. Use a or the + one of these words:

airport cup door floor picture radio

<p>1</p>  <p>Can you open <u>the door</u>, please?</p>	<p>2</p>  <p>How far is it to _____?</p>	<p>3</p>  <p>Can I have _____ of coffee, please?</p>
<p>4</p>  <p>That's _____ nice - I like it.</p>	<p>5</p>  <p>Can you turn off _____, please?</p>	<p>6</p>  <p>Why are you sitting on _____?</p>

## 70.3 Write a/an or the where necessary.

1. Don't forget to turn off light when you go out. turn off the light
2. Enjoy your trip, and don't forget to send me postcard. \_\_\_\_\_
3. What is name of this town? \_\_\_\_\_
4. Canada is very big country. \_\_\_\_\_
5. What is largest city in Canada? \_\_\_\_\_
6. I like this room, but I don't like color of ceiling. \_\_\_\_\_
7. "Are you OK?" "No, I've got headache." \_\_\_\_\_
8. We live in old house near station. \_\_\_\_\_
9. What is name of director of movie we saw last night? \_\_\_\_\_



## A

We use **the** when it is clear which thing or person we mean.

- What is **the name** of this street? (This street has only one name.)
- Who is **the best player** on your team?
- Can you tell me **the time**, please? (= the time *now*)
- My office is on **the first floor**. (= the first floor of the building)

Don't forget to use **the**.

- Do you live near **the airport**? (*not* near airport)
- Excuse me, where is **the nearest bank**? (*not* where is nearest . . .)

## B

**the same** . . .

- We live on **the same street**. (*not* on same street)
- "Are these two books different?" "No, they're **the same**." (*not* they're same)

## C

We say:

**the sun / the moon / the world / the sky / the ocean / the country**

- **The sky** is blue and **the sun** is shining.
- Do you live in a city or in **the country**?



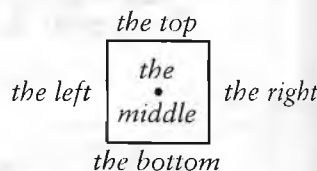
**the police**

- After the robbery, **the police** asked us a lot of questions.



**the top / the end / the middle / the left, etc.**

- Write your name at **the top** of the page.
- My house is at **the end** of this block.
- The table is in **the middle** of the room.
- Do you drive on **the right** or on **the left** in your country?



play **the piano / the guitar / the trumpet**, etc. (musical instruments)

- Paula is learning to play **the piano**.



**the radio**

- I listen to **the radio** a lot.



## D

We do *not* use **the** with:

**television/TV**

- I watch **television/TV** a lot.
- What's on **television** tonight?
- but* ■ Can you turn off **the TV**? (= the TV set)

**breakfast/lunch/dinner**

- What did you have for **breakfast**? (*not* the breakfast)
- **Dinner** is ready!

**next/last + week/month/year/summer/Monday, etc.**

- I'm not working **next week**. (*not* the next week)
- Did you take a vacation **last summer**? (*not* the last summer)



# Exercises

## 71.1 Write *the* where necessary. Write *OK* if the sentence is correct.

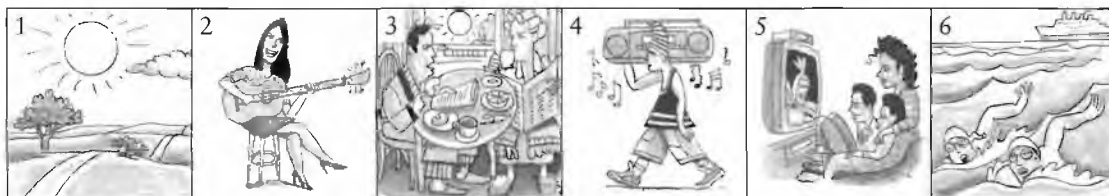
1. What is name of this street? the name
2. What's on television tonight? OK
3. Our apartment is on second floor. \_\_\_\_\_
4. Would you like to go to moon? \_\_\_\_\_
5. What's best hotel in this town? \_\_\_\_\_
6. What time is lunch? \_\_\_\_\_
7. How far is it to football stadium? \_\_\_\_\_
8. We're taking a trip at end of May. \_\_\_\_\_
9. What are you doing next weekend? \_\_\_\_\_
10. I didn't like her first time I met her. \_\_\_\_\_
11. I'm going out after dinner. \_\_\_\_\_
12. What's biggest city in world? \_\_\_\_\_
13. My sister got married last month. \_\_\_\_\_
14. My dictionary is on top shelf on right. \_\_\_\_\_
15. We live in country about five miles from nearest town. \_\_\_\_\_

## 71.2 Complete the sentences. Use *the same* + one of these words:

age color problem street time

1. I live on Water Street and you live on Water Street. We live on the same street.
2. I arrived at 8:30 and you arrived at 8:30. We arrived at \_\_\_\_\_.
3. Jim is 25 and Sue is 25. Jim and Sue are \_\_\_\_\_.
4. My shirt is dark blue and so is my jacket. My shirt and jacket are \_\_\_\_\_.
5. I have no money and you have no money. We have \_\_\_\_\_.

## 71.3 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use *the* if necessary.



1. The sun is shining.
2. She's playing \_\_\_\_\_.
3. They're having \_\_\_\_\_.
4. He's listening to \_\_\_\_\_.
5. They're watching \_\_\_\_\_.
6. They're swimming in \_\_\_\_\_.

## 71.4 Complete these sentences. Choose from the list. Use *the* if necessary.

capital ~~dinner~~ police lunch middle name sky television

1. We had dinner at a restaurant last night.
2. We stayed at a very nice hotel, but I don't remember \_\_\_\_\_.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ is very clear tonight. You can see all the stars.
4. I watched three movies on \_\_\_\_\_ last night.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ stopped me because I was driving too fast.
6. Tokyo is \_\_\_\_\_ of Japan.
7. "What did you have for \_\_\_\_\_?" "A salad."
8. I woke up in \_\_\_\_\_ of the night.

**Go to work   go home   go to the movies**

She's at work.



They're going to school.



He's in bed.

We say:

(go) to work, (be) at work, start work, finish work

- Goodbye! I'm going to work now. (*not* to the work)
- I finish work at 5 o'clock every day.

(go) to school, (be) at school, start school, finish school, etc.

- What did you learn at school today? (*not* at the school)
- Some children don't like school.

(go) to college, (be) in college

- Helen wants to go to college when she finishes high school.
- What did you study in college?

(go) to prison/jail, (be) in prison/jail

- Why is he in prison? What did he do?

(go) to church, (be) in/at church

- Dave usually goes to church on Sundays.

(go) to bed, (be) in bed

- I'm tired. I'm going to bed (*not* to the bed)
- "Where's Kim?" "She's in bed."

(go) home, (be) (at) home, etc.

- I'm tired. I'm going home. (*not* to home)
- Are you going out tonight, or are you staying home? (*or* staying at home)



We say:

(go to) the bank / the post office / the hospital / the station / the airport

- "Are you going to the bank?" "No, the post office."
- Brian was in an accident. He had to go to the hospital.
- Does this bus go to the airport?

(go to) the theater / the movies

- I never go to the theater, but I go to the movies a lot.

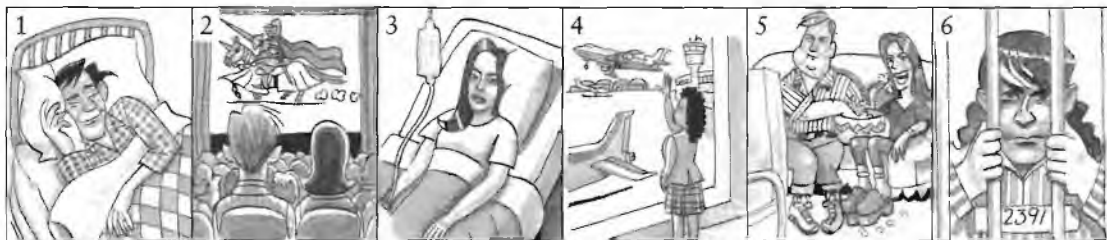
(go to) the doctor, the dentist

- You're sick. Why don't you go to the doctor?
- I'm going to the dentist tomorrow.



# Exercises

**72.1** Where are these people? Complete the sentences. Sometimes you need *the*.



1. He's in bed . 3. She's in \_\_\_\_\_ . 5. They're at \_\_\_\_\_ .  
2. They're at \_\_\_\_\_ . 4. She's at \_\_\_\_\_ . 6. He's in \_\_\_\_\_ .

**72.2** Complete the sentences. Choose from the list. Use *the* if necessary.

**bank bed church home post office school station**

1. I need some money. I have to go to the bank .  
2. Dave usually goes to church on Sundays.  
3. In the U.S., children start \_\_\_\_\_ at the age of five.  
4. There were a lot of people at \_\_\_\_\_ waiting for the train.  
5. I called you last night, but you weren't at \_\_\_\_\_ .  
6. I'm going to \_\_\_\_\_ now. Good night!  
7. I'm going to \_\_\_\_\_ to get some stamps.

**72.3** Complete the sentences. Use *go*. Sometimes you need *the*.

1. If you want to catch a plane, you go to the airport .  
2. If you want to see a movie, you go to \_\_\_\_\_ .  
3. If you are tired and you want to sleep, you \_\_\_\_\_ .  
4. If you rob a bank and the police catch you, you \_\_\_\_\_ .  
5. If you have a problem with your teeth, you \_\_\_\_\_ .  
6. If you want to study after you finish high school, you \_\_\_\_\_ .  
7. If you are injured in an accident, you \_\_\_\_\_ .

**72.4** Write *the* where necessary. Write *OK* if the sentence is correct.

1. We went to movies last night. to the movies  
2. I finish work at 5 o'clock every day. OK  
3. Yuki wasn't feeling well yesterday, so she went to doctor. \_\_\_\_\_  
4. I wasn't feeling well this morning, so I stayed in bed. \_\_\_\_\_  
5. Why is Angela always late for work? \_\_\_\_\_  
6. "Where are your children?" "They're at school." \_\_\_\_\_  
7. We have no money in bank. \_\_\_\_\_  
8. When I was younger, I went to church every Sunday. \_\_\_\_\_  
9. What time do you usually get home from work? \_\_\_\_\_  
10. "Where shall we meet?" "At station." \_\_\_\_\_  
11. Jim is sick. He's in hospital. \_\_\_\_\_  
12. Makoto takes his children to school every day. \_\_\_\_\_  
13. Would you like to go to college? \_\_\_\_\_  
14. Would you like to go to theater tonight? \_\_\_\_\_

## A



Do not use **the** for general ideas.

- I like **music**, especially **classical music**.  
(*not* the music . . . the classical music)
- We don't eat **meat** very often. (*not* the meat)
- Life is not possible without **water**.  
(*not* The life . . . the water)
- I hate **exams**. (*not* the exams)
- Do you know where they sell **foreign newspapers**?
- I'm not very good at writing **letters**.



Do not use **the** for games and sports.

- My favorite sports are **tennis** and **skiing**. (*not* the tennis . . . the skiing)

Do not use **the** for languages or academic subjects (**history/geography/physics/biology**, etc.).

- Do you think **English** is difficult? (*not* the English)
- Tom's brother is studying **physics** and **chemistry**.

## B

**Flowers or the flowers?**

Compare:

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <b>Flowers</b> are beautiful.<br/>(= flowers in general)</li> <li>■ I don't like cold <b>weather</b>.<br/>(= cold weather in general)</li> <li>■ We don't eat <b>fish</b> very often. (= fish in general)</li> <li>■ Are you interested in <b>history</b>? (= history in general)</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ I love your garden!<br/><b>The flowers</b> are beautiful.<br/>(= the flowers in this garden)</li> <li>■ The <b>weather</b> isn't very good today. (= the weather today)</li> <li>■ We had a great meal last night. <b>The fish</b> was excellent.<br/>(= the fish we ate last night)</li> <li>■ Are you interested in <b>the history</b> of your country?</li> </ul> |
|---|---|



# Exercises

## 73.1 What do you think about these things?

dogs	big cities	fishing	TV quiz shows	exams	parties
museums	tea	basketball	computer games	loud music	hard work

Choose seven things from the box. Write sentences beginning:

I like    I don't like    I love    I hate    I don't mind (= it's OK)

1. *I hate exams.*
2. \_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_\_\_
6. \_\_\_\_\_
7. \_\_\_\_\_
8. \_\_\_\_\_

## 73.2 Are you interested in these things? Write sentences with:

I'm (very) interested in ...    I know a lot about ...    I don't know much about ...  
I'm not interested in ...    I know a little about ...    I don't know anything about ...

1. (history) *I'm very interested in history.*
2. (politics) I \_\_\_\_\_
3. (sports) \_\_\_\_\_
4. (art) \_\_\_\_\_
5. (astronomy) \_\_\_\_\_
6. (economics) \_\_\_\_\_

## 73.3 Which is right?

1. My favorite sport is tennis / ~~the tennis~~. (*tennis* is right)
2. I like this hotel. Rooms / The rooms are very nice. (*The rooms* is right)
3. Everybody needs friends / the friends.
4. Tracy doesn't go to parties / the parties very often.
5. I went shopping this morning. Stores / The stores were very crowded.
6. "Where's milk / the milk?" "It's in the fridge."
7. I don't like milk / the milk. I never drink it.
8. "Do you play any sports?" "Yes, I play football / the football."
9. These days a lot of people use computers / the computers.
10. We went for a swim. Water / The water was very cold.
11. I don't like swimming in cold water / the cold water.
12. Excuse me, can you pass salt / the salt, please?
13. I like this town. I like people / the people here.
14. Vegetables / The vegetables are good for you.
15. I can't sing this song. I don't know words / the words.
16. I enjoy taking pictures / the pictures. It's my hobby.
17. Look at pictures / the pictures that I took when I was on vacation.
18. English / The English is used a lot in international business / the international business.
19. Money / The money doesn't always bring happiness / the happiness.

## The . . . (Names of Places)

## A

Places (continents, countries, states, islands, cities, etc.)

In general we do not use **the** + names of places.

- Bangkok is the capital of Thailand.
- Easter Island is in the Pacific.
- Peru is in South America.
- Quebec is a province of Canada.



But we use **the** in names with **republic/states/kingdom**.

- |                        |  |
|------------------------|--|
| the Dominican Republic | the United States of America (the USA) |
| the Czech Republic     | the United Kingdom (the UK)            |



## B

**the** -s (plural names)

We use **the** + plural names of countries/islands/mountains.

- |                 |                    |
|-----------------|--------------------|
| the Netherlands | the Canary Islands |
| the Philippines | the Andes          |



## C

Oceans, rivers, etc.

We use **the** + names of oceans/seas/rivers/canals.

- |                         |                    |
|-------------------------|--------------------|
| the Pacific (Ocean)     | the Amazon (River) |
| the Mediterranean (Sea) | the Panama Canal   |



## D

Places in towns (streets, buildings, etc.)

In general we do not use **the** + names of streets, squares, etc.

- |                                  |                                |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| ■ Kevin lives on Central Avenue. | ■ Times Square is in New York. |
| ■ Where is Main Street, please?  |                                |



We do not use **the** + names + airports/stations/universities/parks, etc.

- |                      |                          |
|----------------------|--------------------------|
| Kennedy Airport      | McGill University        |
| Pennsylvania Station | Yosemite (National Park) |



But we use **the** + names of universities with **of** (see Section E).

We generally use **the** with names of hotels, restaurants, theaters, museums, monuments.

- |  |                            |
|--|----------------------------|
| the Milton (Hotel)                       | the New Broadway (Theater) |
| the Millhouse (Restaurant)               | the Metropolitan (Museum)  |
| the Springfield Cineplex (movie theater) | the Lincoln Memorial       |



## E

**the** . . . of . . .

We use **the** + names with **of** . . .

- |                              |                         |
|------------------------------|-------------------------|
| the University of California | the Great Wall of China |
| the Bank of Nova Scotia      | the Tower of London     |



## F

**the north / the south / the east / the west**

- "Which part of Canada did you go to?" "To the west/north."



# Exercises

**74.1** Answer these geography questions. Choose from the box. Use *The* if necessary.



1. Bogota is the capital of Colombia.
2. The Atlantic is between Africa and the Americas.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ is a country in northern Europe.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ is a river in South America.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ is the largest continent in the world.
6. \_\_\_\_\_ is the largest ocean.
7. \_\_\_\_\_ is a river in Europe.
8. \_\_\_\_\_ is a country in East Africa.
9. \_\_\_\_\_ is between Canada and Mexico.
10. \_\_\_\_\_ are mountains in South America.
11. \_\_\_\_\_ is the capital of Thailand.
12. \_\_\_\_\_ are mountains in Asia.
13. \_\_\_\_\_ is between Europe and Africa.
14. \_\_\_\_\_ is an island in the Caribbean.
15. \_\_\_\_\_ are a group of islands near Florida.

Amazon  
Andes  
Asia  
Atlantic  
Bahamas  
Bangkok  
Bogota  
Himalayas  
Jamaica  
Kenya  
Mediterranean  
Pacific  
Rhine  
Sweden  
United States

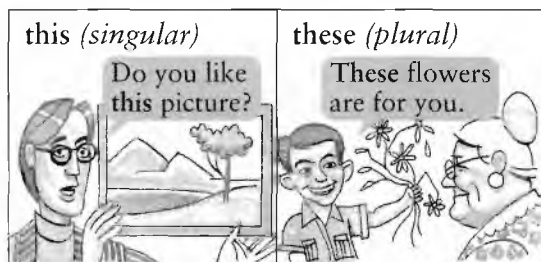
**74.2** Write *the* where necessary. If the sentence is correct, write *OK*.

1. Kevin lives on Central Avenue. OK
2. We went to see a play at National Theater. at the National Theater
3. Have you ever been to China? \_\_\_\_\_
4. Have you ever been to Philippines? \_\_\_\_\_
5. Can you tell me where Westside Cineplex is? \_\_\_\_\_
6. Can you tell me where Fifth Street is? \_\_\_\_\_
7. Can you tell me where Museum of Modern Art is? \_\_\_\_\_
8. I'll meet you in front of Washington Monument. \_\_\_\_\_
9. The sun rises in east and sets in west. \_\_\_\_\_
10. Europe is bigger than Australia. \_\_\_\_\_
11. Which river is longer – Mississippi or Nile? \_\_\_\_\_
12. We stayed at Park Hotel near Central Park. \_\_\_\_\_
13. How far is it from Times Square to Penn Station? \_\_\_\_\_
14. Rocky Mountains are in North America. \_\_\_\_\_
15. Texas is famous for oil and cowboys. \_\_\_\_\_
16. Panama Canal joins Atlantic Ocean and Pacific Ocean. \_\_\_\_\_
17. I hope to go to United States next year. \_\_\_\_\_
18. Alan went to University of Michigan. \_\_\_\_\_

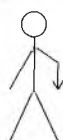


# This/these and that/those

## A



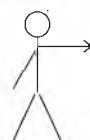
this  
these



this picture  
(= this picture *here*)  
these flowers  
(= these flowers *here*)



that  
those



that picture  
(= that picture *there*)  
those people  
(= those people *there*)

## B

We use **this/these/that/those** with a *noun* (this picture / these girls, etc.) or without a noun.

- |  |   |                       |
|--|---|-----------------------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ This hotel is expensive, but it's very nice.</li> <li>■ Do you like <b>these shoes</b>? I bought them last week.</li> <li>■ "Who's <b>that girl</b>?" "I don't know."</li> <li>■ Those apples look good. Can I have one?</li> </ul>                             | } | <i>with a noun</i>    |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ This is a nice hotel, but it's very expensive.</li> <li>■ "Excuse me, is <b>this</b> your bag?" "Oh yes, thank you."</li> <li>■ Who's <b>that</b>? (= Who is that person?)</li> <li>■ Which shoes do you like better – <b>these</b> or <b>those</b>?</li> </ul> | } | <i>without a noun</i> |

## C

**That** = something that *has happened*

- "I'm sorry, I forgot to call you." "That's all right."
- That was a really nice meal. Thank you very much.

**That** = what somebody *has just said*

- "You're a teacher, aren't you?" "Yes, **that's** right."
- "Mark has a new job." "He does? I didn't know **that**."
- "I'm going on vacation next week." "Oh, **that's** nice."

## D

We use **this is** ... and **is this** ... ?  
on the telephone.

- Hello, **this is** Dave. (= the speaker)
- Is **this** Sarah? (= the other person)



We use **this is** ... to introduce people.

- Amy: Brian, **this is** Chris.
- Brian: Hi, Chris. Nice to meet you.
- Chris: Hi, Brian.



# Exercises

**75.1** Complete the sentences. Use *this/these/that/those* + one of these words:

birds dishes house postcards chair shoes

1 Do you like <u>these shoes</u> ?	2 Who lives in _____?	3 How much are _____?
4 Look at _____!	5 Excuse me, is _____ free?	6 _____ are dirty.

**75.2** Write questions: *Is this/that your . . . ?* or *Are these/those your . . . ?*

1 <u>Is this your bag?</u>	2 _____	3 _____	4 _____	5 _____
6 _____	7 _____	8 _____	9 _____	10 _____

**75.3** Complete the sentences with *this is* or *that's* or *that*.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. A: I'm sorry I'm late.<br>B: <u>That's</u> all right.                               | 5. A: Beth plays the piano very well.<br>B: Really? I didn't know _____. |
| 2. A: I can't come to the party tomorrow.<br>B: Oh, _____ too bad. Why not?            | 6. (Mark meets Paul's sister Amy.)<br>Paul: Mark, _____ my sister Amy.   |
| 3. (on the telephone)<br>Sue: Hello, Kim. _____ Sue.<br>Kim: Oh, hi, Sue. How are you? | Mark: Hi, Amy.   |
| 4. A: You're lazy!<br>B: _____ not true!   | 7. A: I'm sorry I was angry yesterday.<br>B: _____ OK. Forget it!        |
|  | 8. A: You're a friend of John's, aren't you?<br>B: Yes, _____ right.     |

## A

one (= a . . .)

These cookies are delicious. Would you like **one**?



Would you like **one**?  
= Would you like **a cookie**?

**one** = a cookie / an apple, etc.

- I need a **pen**. Do you have **one**? (**one** = a pen)
- A: Is there a **bank** near here?  
B: Yes, there's **one** on the corner. (**one** = a bank)

## B

one and ones

one (singular)



Which **one** do you want?

Which **one**? = Which **hat**?

**one** = hat/car/girl, etc.

this one / that one

- Which car is yours? **This one** or **that one**? (= this car or that car)

the one . . .

- A: Which hotel did you stay at?  
B: **The one** near the airport.
- I found this **key**. Is it **the one** (that) you lost?

the . . . one

- I don't like the black **coat**, but I like **the red one**.
- Don't buy that **camera**. Buy **the other one**.

a/an . . . one

- This **cup** is dirty. Can I have a **clean one**?
- That cookie was good. I'm going to have **another one**.

ones (plural)



Which **ones** do you want?

**The white ones.**

Which **ones**? = Which **flowers**?

**ones** = flowers/cars/girls, etc.

these/those (without ones)

- Which flowers do you want? **These** or **those**? (*usually not* these ones or those ones)

the ones . . .

- A: Which books are yours?  
B: **The ones** on the table.
- I found these **keys**. Are they **the ones** (that) you lost?

the . . . ones

- I don't like the black **shoes**, but I like **the brown ones**.
- Don't buy those **apples**. Buy **the other ones**.

some . . . ones

- These **cups** are dirty. Can we have **some clean ones**?
- My **shoes** are old. I'm going to buy **some new ones**.

# Exercises

**76.1** A asks B some questions. Use the information in the box to write B's answers. Use *one* (not *a/an* ...) in the answers.

B doesn't need a car.	B just had a cup of coffee.
There's a drugstore on First Avenue.	B is going to buy a bicycle.
<del>B doesn't have a pen.</del>	B doesn't have an umbrella.

- |                                       |   |
|---------------------------------------|---|
| 1. A: Can you lend me a pen?          | B: I'm sorry, <u>I don't have one</u> . |
| 2. A: Would you like to have a car?   | B: No, I don't _____.                   |
| 3. A: Do you have a bicycle?          | B: No, but _____.                       |
| 4. A: Can you lend me an umbrella?    | B: I'm sorry, but _____.                |
| 5. A: Would you like a cup of coffee? | B: No, thank you. _____.                |
| 6. A: Is there a drugstore near here? | B: Yes, _____.                          |

**76.2** Complete the sentences. Use *a/an* ... *one*. Use the words in the list.

better big ~~clean~~ different new old

- This cup is dirty. Can I have a clean one ?
- I'm going to sell my old car and buy \_\_\_\_\_.
- That's not a very good photograph. This is \_\_\_\_\_.
- I want today's newspaper. This is \_\_\_\_\_.
- This box is too small. I need \_\_\_\_\_.
- Why do we always go to the same restaurant? Let's go to \_\_\_\_\_.

**76.3** Use the information in the box to complete these conversations. Use *one/ones*.

The coat is black.	I took the photos at the beach last week.
The girl is tall with long hair.	The shoes are brown.
<del>The hotel is near the airport.</del>	The picture is on the wall.
The house has a red door.	The books are on the top shelf.
The flowers are yellow.	The man has a mustache and glasses.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. A: We stayed at a hotel.<br>B: <u>Which one</u> ?<br>A: <u>The one near the airport</u> | 6. A: Are those your books?<br>B: _____ ?<br>A: _____         |
| 2. A: Those shoes are nice.<br>B: Which _____ ?<br>A: The _____ ones.                      | 7. A: Do you know that girl?<br>B: _____ ?<br>A: _____        |
| 3. A: That's a nice house.<br>B: _____ ?<br>A: _____ with _____.                           | 8. A: Those flowers are beautiful.<br>B: _____ ?<br>A: _____  |
| 4. A: I like that coat.<br>B: _____ ?<br>A: _____  | 9. A: Who's that man?<br>B: _____ ?<br>A: _____               |
| 5. A: I like that picture.<br>B: _____ ?<br>A: _____                                       | 10. A: Have you seen my photos yet?<br>B: _____ ?<br>A: _____ |

# Some and any

## A

**some**



I've got  
some money.

Use **some** in *positive* sentences.

- I'm going to buy **some** clothes.
- There's **some** milk in the fridge.
- We made **some** mistakes.

**any**



I haven't got  
any money.

Use **any** in *negative* sentences.

- I'm **not** going to buy **any** clothes.
- There **isn't** **any** orange juice in the fridge.
- We **didn't** make **any** mistakes.

## B

**any** and **some** in questions

In most questions (but not all) we use **any** (*not some*).

- Is there **any** milk in the fridge?
- Does he have **any** friends?
- Do you need **any** help?

We normally use **some** (not **any**) when we *offer* things (*Would you like . . . ?*)

- A: Would you like **some** coffee?
- B: Yes, please.

or when we *ask for* things (*Can I have . . . ?*, etc.).

- A: Can I have **some** soup, please?
- B: Yes. Help yourself.
- A: Can you lend me **some** money?
- B: Sure. How much do you need?

Do you have  
any money?



Would you like  
some coffee?



## C

**some** and **any** without a *noun*

- I didn't take any pictures, but Amy took **some**. (= some pictures)
- You can have some coffee, but I don't want **any**. (= any coffee)
- I just made some coffee. Would you like **some**? (= some coffee)
- "Where's your luggage?" "I don't have **any**." (= any luggage)
- "Are there any cookies?" "Yes, there are **some** in the kitchen." (= some cookies)

## D

**something/somebody** (*or someone*)

- She said **something**.
- I saw **somebody** (*or someone*).
- Would you like **something** to eat?
- **Somebody's** at the door.

**anything/anybody** (*or anyone*)

- She **didn't** say **anything**.
- I **didn't** see **anybody** (*or anyone*).
- Are you doing **anything** tonight?
- Where's Amy? Has **anybody** seen her?

# Exercises

## 77.1 Write *some* or *any*.

1. I bought *some* cheese, but I didn't buy *any* bread.
2. I'm going to the post office. I need stamps.
3. There aren't gas stations in this part of town.
4. Eric and Alice don't have children.
5. Have you got brothers or sisters?
6. There are beautiful flowers in the park.
7. Do you know good hotels in Miami?
8. "Would you like coffee?" "Yes, please."
9. When we were on vacation, we visited very interesting places.
10. Don't buy rice. We don't need .
11. I went out to buy oranges, but they didn't have at the store.
12. I'm thirsty. Can I have water, please?

## 77.2 Complete the sentences. Use *some* or *any* + one of these words:

air	friends	help	letters	pictures
batteries	fruit	languages	milk	shampoo

1. I want to wash my hair. Is there *any shampoo* ?
2. This evening I'm going to write .
3. I don't have my camera, so I can't take .
4. Do you speak foreign ?
5. Last night I went to a restaurant with of mine.
6. Can I have in my coffee, please?
7. That clock isn't working. There aren't in it.
8. It's hot in this office. I'm going out for fresh .
9. "Would you like ?" "No, thank you. I'm not hungry right now."
10. I can do this job alone. I don't need .

## 77.3 Complete the sentences. Use *some* or *any*.

1. Min Fang didn't take any pictures, but *I took some* . (I / take)
2. "Where's your luggage?" "*I don't have any* ." (I / not / have)
3. "Do you need any money?" "No, thank you. ." (I / have)
4. "Can I borrow some money?" "Sorry, ." (I / not / have)
5. The tomatoes weren't very good, so . (I / not / buy)
6. There were some nice oranges at the store, so . (I / buy)

## 77.4 Write *something/somebody/anything/anybody*.

1. Luis said *something* to me, but I didn't understand it.
2. "What's wrong?" "There's in my eye."
3. Do you know about politics?
4. I went to the store, but I didn't buy .
5. broke the window. I don't know who.
6. There isn't in the bag. It's empty.
7. I'm looking for my keys. Has seen them?
8. Would you like to drink?
9. I didn't eat because I wasn't hungry.
10. This is a secret. Please don't tell .

# Not + any, no, and none

A



The parking lot is empty.

There **aren't any** cars } in the parking lot.  
There are **no** cars }

How many cars are there in the parking lot?  
**None.**

not (-n't) + any

- There **aren't any** cars in the parking lot.
- Karen and Steve **don't have any** children.
- You can have some coffee, but I **don't want any**.

no + noun (no cars / no garage, etc.)

**no . . . = not + any or not + a**

- There are **no cars** in the parking lot. (= there **aren't any** cars)
- We have **no coffee**. (= we **don't have any** coffee)
- It's a nice house, but there's **no garage**. (= there **isn't a** garage)

We use **no . . .** especially after have/has and there is/are.

**negative verb + any = positive verb + no**

- They **don't have any** children. or They **have no** children.  
(not They don't have no children)
- There **isn't any** sugar in your coffee. or There's **no** sugar in your coffee.

B

Compare **no** and **none**:

Use **no + noun** (no money / no children, etc.).

- We have **no money**.
- Everything was OK. There were **no problems**.

Use **none** alone (*without a noun*).

- "How much money do you have?" "**None.**" (= no money)
- "Were there any problems?" "No, **none.**" (= no problems)

C

**none** and **no one**

**none** = 0 (zero)

**no one** = **nobody**

**None** is an answer for **How much?** / **How many?** (things or people).

- "How much money do you have?" "**None.**" (= no money)
- "How many people did you meet?" "**None.**" (= no people)

**No one** is an answer for **Who?**

- "Who did you meet?" "**No one.**" or "**Nobody.**"

# Exercises

## 78.1 Write these sentences again with **no**.

1. We don't have any money. We have no money.
2. There aren't any stores near here. There are .
3. Carol doesn't have any free time. \_\_\_\_\_
4. There isn't a light in this room. \_\_\_\_\_

## Write these sentences again with **any**.

5. We have no money. We don't have any money.
6. There's no gas in the car. \_\_\_\_\_
7. There are no buses today. \_\_\_\_\_
8. Marcos has no brothers or sisters. \_\_\_\_\_

## 78.2 Write **no** or **any**.

1. There's no sugar in your coffee.
2. My brother is married, but he doesn't have \_\_\_\_\_ children.
3. Sue doesn't speak \_\_\_\_\_ foreign languages.
4. I'm afraid there's \_\_\_\_\_ coffee. Would you like some tea?
5. "Look at those birds!" "Birds? Where? I can't see \_\_\_\_\_ birds."
6. "Do you know where Jessica is?" "No, I have \_\_\_\_\_ idea."

## Write **no**, **any**, or **none**.

7. There aren't \_\_\_\_\_ pictures on the wall.
8. The weather was cold, but there was \_\_\_\_\_ wind.
9. I wanted to buy some oranges, but they didn't have \_\_\_\_\_ at the store.
10. Everything was correct. There were \_\_\_\_\_ mistakes.
11. "How much luggage have you got?" "\_\_\_\_\_."
12. "How much luggage have you got?" "I haven't got \_\_\_\_\_."

## 78.3 Complete the sentences. Use **any** or **no** + one of these words:

air conditioning	difference	friends	money	problems
answer	film	furniture	photographs	questions

1. Everything was OK. There were no problems .
2. They want to take a vacation, but they have \_\_\_\_\_ .
3. I'm not going to answer \_\_\_\_\_ .
4. He's always alone. He has \_\_\_\_\_ .
5. There is \_\_\_\_\_ between these two machines. They're exactly the same.
6. There wasn't \_\_\_\_\_ in the room. It was completely empty.
7. I tried to call you yesterday, but there was \_\_\_\_\_ .
8. The house is hot because there isn't \_\_\_\_\_ .
9. I can't take \_\_\_\_\_ . There's \_\_\_\_\_ in the camera.

## 78.4 Write short answers (one or two words) to these questions. Use **None** where necessary.

1. How many letters did you write yesterday? Two. OR A lot OR None.
2. How many sisters do you have? \_\_\_\_\_
3. How much coffee did you drink yesterday? \_\_\_\_\_
4. How many pictures have you taken today? \_\_\_\_\_
5. How many legs does a snake have? \_\_\_\_\_



# Not + anybody/anyone/anything and nobody/no one/nothing

## A

not + anybody / anyone  
nobody / no one  
(for *people*)



There isn't **anybody** / **anyone** in the room.

There is **nobody** / **no one** in the room.

A: Who is in the room?

B: Nobody. / No one.

-body and -one are the same:  
anybody = anyone    nobody = no one

not + anything  
nothing  
(for *things*)



There isn't **anything** in the bag.

There is **nothing** in the bag.

A: What's in the bag?

B: Nothing.

## B

not + anybody/anyone

■ I don't know **anybody** (or *anyone*) here.

nobody = not + anybody

no one = not + anyone

■ I'm lonely. I have **nobody** to talk to.  
(= I don't have *anybody*.)

■ The house is empty. There is **no one** in it.  
(= There isn't *anyone* in it.)

not + anything

■ I can't remember **anything**.

nothing = not + anything

■ She said **nothing**.  
(= She *didn't* say *anything*.)

■ There's **nothing** to eat.  
(= There isn't *anything* to eat.)

## C

You can use **nobody** / **no one** / **nothing** at the beginning of a sentence or alone (to answer a question).

■ The house is empty. **Nobody** lives there.  
(*not* *Anybody* lives there)

■ "Who did you speak to?" "No one."

■ **Nothing** happened.  
(*not* *Anything* happened)

■ "What did you say?" "Nothing."

## D

Remember: *negative verb* + **anybody/anyone/anything**  
*positive verb* + **nobody/no one/nothing**

■ He **doesn't** know **anything**. (*not* he *doesn't* know *nothing*)

■ **Don't** tell **anybody**. (*not* *don't* tell *nobody*)

■ There **is** **nothing** to do in this town. (*not* there *isn't* *nothing*)

# Exercises

## 79.1 Write these sentences again with *nobody* / *no one* or *nothing*.

1. There isn't anything in the bag. *There's nothing in the bag*
2. There isn't anybody in the office. There's \_\_\_\_\_.
3. I don't have anything to do. I \_\_\_\_\_.
4. There isn't anything on TV. \_\_\_\_\_.
5. There wasn't anyone at home. \_\_\_\_\_.
6. We didn't find anything. \_\_\_\_\_.

## 79.2 Write these sentences again with *anybody/anyone* or *anything*.

1. There's nothing in the bag. *There isn't anything in the bag*
2. There was nobody on the bus. There wasn't \_\_\_\_\_.
3. I have nothing to read. \_\_\_\_\_.
4. I have no one to help me. \_\_\_\_\_.
5. Sarai heard nothing. \_\_\_\_\_.
6. We have nothing for dinner. \_\_\_\_\_.

## 79.3 Answer these questions with *nobody* / *no one* or *nothing*.

- 1a. What did you say? *Nothing*
- 2a. Who saw you? *Nobody*
- 3a. What do you want? \_\_\_\_\_
- 4a. Who did you meet? \_\_\_\_\_
- 5a. Who knows the answer? \_\_\_\_\_
- 6a. What did you buy? \_\_\_\_\_
- 7a. What happened? \_\_\_\_\_
- 8a. Who was late? \_\_\_\_\_

Now answer the same questions with full sentences. Use *nobody* / *no one* / *nothing* or *anybody* / *anyone* / *anything*.

- 1b. *I didn't say anything*
- 2b. *Nobody saw me*
- 3b. I don't \_\_\_\_\_
- 4b. I \_\_\_\_\_
- 5b. \_\_\_\_\_ the answer.
- 6b. \_\_\_\_\_
- 7b. \_\_\_\_\_
- 8b. \_\_\_\_\_

## 79.4 Complete the sentences. Use *nobody* / *no one* / *nothing* / *anybody* / *anyone* / *anything*.

1. That house is empty. *Nobody* lives there.
2. Brian has a bad memory. He can't remember *anything*.
3. Be quiet! Don't say \_\_\_\_\_.
4. I didn't know about the meeting. \_\_\_\_\_ told me.
5. "What did you have to eat?" "\_\_\_\_\_. I wasn't hungry."
6. I didn't eat \_\_\_\_\_. I wasn't hungry.
7. Jenny was sitting alone. She wasn't with \_\_\_\_\_.
8. I'm sorry I can't help you. There's \_\_\_\_\_ I can do.
9. I don't know \_\_\_\_\_ about car engines.
10. The museum is free. It doesn't cost \_\_\_\_\_ to go in.
11. I heard a knock on the door, but when I opened it, there was \_\_\_\_\_ there.
12. Antonio spoke very fast. I didn't understand \_\_\_\_\_.
13. "What are you doing tonight?" "\_\_\_\_\_. Why?"
14. Helen is out of town. \_\_\_\_\_ knows where she is. She didn't tell \_\_\_\_\_ where she was going.

## A



Somebody (or someone) has broken the window.

**somebody/someone** = a person, but we don't know who



She has something in her mouth.

**something** = a thing, but we don't know what



Tom lives somewhere near Toronto.

**somewhere** = in/to a place, but we don't know where

## B

People (-body or -one)

**somebody or someone**  
**anybody or anyone**  
**nobody or no one**

- There is **somebody** (or **someone**) at the door.
- Is there **anybody** (or **anyone**) at the door?
- There **isn't** **anybody** (or **anyone**) at the door.
- There is **nobody** (or **no one**) at the door.

**-body** and **-one** are the same: **somebody** = **someone**, **nobody** = **no one**, etc.

Things (-thing)

**something**  
**anything**  
**nothing**

- Holly said **something**, but I didn't understand her.
- Are you doing **anything** this weekend?
- I was angry, but I **didn't** say **anything**.
- "What did you say?" "Nothing."

Places (-where)

**somewhere**  
**anywhere**  
**nowhere**

- Ruth's parents live **somewhere** in Southern California.
- Did you go **anywhere** interesting on vacation?
- I'm staying here. I'm **not** going **anywhere**.
- I don't like this town. There is **nowhere** to go.

## C

**something/anybody, etc. + adjective** (big/cheap/interesting, etc.)

- Did you meet **anybody** **interesting** at the party?
- We always go to the same place. Let's go **somewhere** **new**.
- "What's in that letter?" "It's **nothing** **important**."

## D

**something/anybody, etc. + to . . .**

- I'm hungry. I want **something** **to eat**. (= something that I can eat)
- Tony doesn't have **anybody** **to talk to**. (= anybody that he can talk to)
- There is **nowhere** **to go** in this town. (= no place where people can go)

# Exercises

## 80.1 Write *somebody* (or *someone*) / *something* / *somewhere*.

- |    |                               |                            |
|----|-------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. | Holly said <u>something</u> . | What did she say?          |
| 2. | I lost _____ this morning.    | What did you lose?         |
| 3. | Sue and Tom have gone _____.  | Where have they gone?      |
| 4. | I'm going to call _____.      | Who are you going to call? |

## 80.2 Write *nobody* (or *no one*) / *nothing* / *nowhere*.

- 1a. What did you say?  
2a. Where are you going?  
3a. What do you want?  
4a. Who are you looking for?

Nothing

Answer the same questions with full sentences. Use *not* + *anybody/anything/anywhere*.

- 1b. I didn't say anything.      3b. \_\_\_\_\_  
2b. I'm not \_\_\_\_\_ .      4b. \_\_\_\_\_

## 80.3 Write *somebody/anything/nowhere*, etc.

- It's dark. I can't see anything.
- Jay lives somewhere near Toronto.
- Do you know \_\_\_\_\_ about computers?
- "Listen!" "What? I can't hear \_\_\_\_\_."
- "What are you doing here?" "I'm waiting for \_\_\_\_\_."
- We need to talk. There's \_\_\_\_\_ I want to tell you.
- "Did \_\_\_\_\_ see the accident?" "No, \_\_\_\_\_."
- We weren't hungry, so we didn't eat \_\_\_\_\_.
- "What's going to happen?" "I don't know. \_\_\_\_\_ knows."
- "Do you know \_\_\_\_\_ in Tokyo?" "Yes, a few people."
- "What's in that suitcase?" "\_\_\_\_\_. It's empty."
- I'm looking for my glasses. I can't find them \_\_\_\_\_.
- I don't like cold weather. I want to live \_\_\_\_\_ warm.
- Is there \_\_\_\_\_ interesting on TV tonight?
- Have you ever met \_\_\_\_\_ famous?

## 80.4 Complete the sentences. Choose from the boxes.

You can use these words more than once:

something	anything	nothing
somewhere	anywhere	nowhere

Use these words once:

do	eat	play	sit
drink	go	read	stay

- We don't go out very much because there's nowhere to go.
- There isn't any food in the house. We don't have \_\_\_\_\_.
- I'm bored. I have \_\_\_\_\_.
- "Why are you standing?" "Because there isn't \_\_\_\_\_."
- "Would you like \_\_\_\_\_?" "Yes, please – a glass of water."
- All the hotels were full. There was \_\_\_\_\_.
- I want \_\_\_\_\_. I'm going to buy a magazine.
- We're going to buy a house with a yard. Our boys need \_\_\_\_\_.

## A

every



Every house on the street is the same.

every house on the street =  
all the houses on the street

We use **every** + *singular noun* (every house / every country, etc.).

- Alice has been to **every country** in Europe.
- **Every summer** we take a vacation at the beach.
- She looks different **every time** I see her.

Use a *singular verb* after **every**.

- **Every house** on the street **is** the same. (*not are* the same)

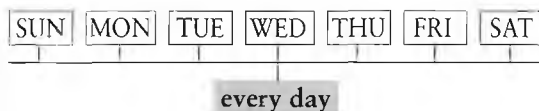
Compare **every** and **all**:

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <b>Every student</b> in the class passed the exam.</li> <li>■ <b>Every country</b> <b>has</b> a national flag.</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <b>All the students</b> in the class passed the exam.</li> <li>■ <b>All countries</b> <b>have</b> a national flag.</li> </ul> |
|--|--|

## B

every day and all day

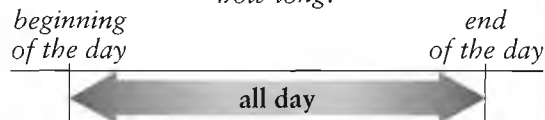
every day = on all days

*how often?*


- It rained **every day** last week.
- Bill watches TV for about two hours **every evening**. (= on all evenings)

Also: every morning/night/summer, etc.

all day = the complete day

*how long?*


- Yesterday it rained **all day**.
- On Monday, I watched TV **all evening**. (= the complete evening)

Also: all morning/night/summer, etc.

## C

everybody (or everyone) / everything / everywhere

**everybody or everyone**

(*people*)

**everything**

(*things*)

**everywhere**

(*places*)

- **Everybody** (*or Everyone*) needs friends.  
(= all people need friends)
- Have you got **everything** you need?  
(= all the things you need)
- I lost my watch. I've looked **everywhere** for it.  
(= I've looked in all places)

Use a *singular verb* after **everybody/everyone/everything**.

- **Everybody** **has** problems. (*not everybody have*)

## 81.1 Complete the sentences. Use **every** + one of these words:

day room ~~student~~ time word

1. Every student in the class passed the exam.
2. My job is very boring. \_\_\_\_\_ is the same.
3. Kate is a very good tennis player. When we play, she wins \_\_\_\_\_.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ in the hotel has a color TV.
5. "Did you understand what she said?" "Most of it but not \_\_\_\_\_."

## 81.2 Complete the sentences with **every day** or **all day**.

1. Yesterday it rained all day.
2. I buy a newspaper \_\_\_\_\_, but sometimes I don't read it.
3. I'm not going out tomorrow. I'll be at home \_\_\_\_\_.
4. I drink about four cups of coffee \_\_\_\_\_.
5. Paula was sick yesterday, so she stayed in bed \_\_\_\_\_.
6. Last year we went to the beach for a week, and it rained \_\_\_\_\_.
7. I'm tired because I've been working hard \_\_\_\_\_.

## 81.3 Write **every** or **all**.

1. Bill watches TV for about two hours every evening.
2. Barbara gets up at 6:30 \_\_\_\_\_ morning.
3. The weather was nice yesterday, so we sat outside \_\_\_\_\_ afternoon.
4. I'm leaving town on Monday. I'll be away \_\_\_\_\_ week.
5. "How often do you go skiing?" "\_\_\_\_\_ year. Usually in March."
6. A: Were you at home at 10 A.M. yesterday?  
B: Yes, I was home \_\_\_\_\_ morning. I went out after lunch.
7. My sister likes new cars. She buys one \_\_\_\_\_ year.
8. I saw Brian at the party, but he didn't speak to me \_\_\_\_\_ evening.
9. We take a vacation for two or three weeks \_\_\_\_\_ summer.

## 81.4 Write **everybody**/**everything**/**everywhere**.

1. Everybody needs friends.
2. Chris knows \_\_\_\_\_ about computers.
3. I like the people here. \_\_\_\_\_ is very friendly.
4. This is a nice hotel. It's comfortable and \_\_\_\_\_ is very clean.
5. Kevin never uses his car. He goes \_\_\_\_\_ on his motorcycle.
6. Let's have dinner. \_\_\_\_\_ is hungry.
7. Sue's house is full of books. There are books \_\_\_\_\_.
8. You're right. \_\_\_\_\_ you say is true.

## 81.5 Write a verb (one word).

1. Everybody has problems.
2. Are you ready yet? Everybody \_\_\_\_\_ waiting for you.
3. Eric is very popular. Everyone \_\_\_\_\_ him.
4. This town is completely different. Everything \_\_\_\_\_ changed.
5. I got home very late. I came in quietly because everyone \_\_\_\_\_ asleep.
6. Everybody \_\_\_\_\_ mistakes!

# All, most, some, any, and no/none

## A

Compare:

children/money/books, etc. (in general)

- Children like to play.  
(= children in general)
- Money isn't everything.  
(= money in general)
- I enjoy reading books.
- Everybody needs friends.

the children / the money / these books, etc.

- Where are **the children**?  
(= our children)
- I want to buy a car, but I haven't got **the money**. (= the money for a car)
- Have you read **these books**?
- I often go out with **my friends**.

## B

most / most of / some / some of, etc.



all



most



some



any



no / none / not + any

most/some, etc. + noun

all		cities
most		children
some	of	books
any		money
no		

- Most children like to play.  
(= children in general)
- I don't want any money.
- Some books are better than others.
- He has no friends.
- All cities have the same problems.  
(= cities in general)

Do not use of in these sentences:

- Most people drive too fast.  
(not most of people)
- Some birds can't fly. (not some of birds)

most of / some of, etc. + the/this/my, etc.

all	(of)	the
most		this/that
some	of	these/those
any		my/your, etc.
none		

- Most of the children in this school are under 11 years old.
- I don't want any of this money.
- Some of these books are very old.
- None of my friends can ski.

But we say all the . . . / all my . . . , etc.  
(with or without of).

- All the students in our class passed the exam. (or All of the students . . .)
- Silvia has lived in Miami all her life.  
(or . . . all of her life.)

## C

all of it / most of them / none of us, etc.

all		it
most		them
some	of	us
any		you
none		

- We can have some of this cake but not all of it.
- A: Do you know those people?  
B: Most of them, but not all of them.
- Some of us are going out tonight. Why don't you come with us?
- I have a lot of history books, but I haven't read any of them.
- "How many of these books have you read?" "None of them."

# Exercises

**82.1** Complete the sentences. Use the word in parentheses (*some/most, etc.*). Sometimes you need *of* (*some of / most of, etc.*).

1. Most children like to play. (most)
2. Some of this money is yours. (some)
3. \_\_\_\_\_ people never stop talking. (some)
4. \_\_\_\_\_ the stores downtown close at 6:00. (most)
5. You can change your money in \_\_\_\_\_ banks. (some)
6. I don't like \_\_\_\_\_ the pictures in the living room. (any)
7. He's lost \_\_\_\_\_ his money. (all)
8. \_\_\_\_\_ my friends are married. (none)
9. Do you know \_\_\_\_\_ the people in this photograph? (any)
10. \_\_\_\_\_ birds can fly. (most)
11. I enjoyed \_\_\_\_\_ the film, but I didn't like the ending. (most)
12. \_\_\_\_\_ sports are very dangerous. (some)
13. We can't find anywhere to stay. \_\_\_\_\_ the hotels are full. (all)
14. Try \_\_\_\_\_ this cheese. It's delicious. (some)
15. The weather was bad when we were on vacation. It rained \_\_\_\_\_ the time. (most)

**82.2** Look at the pictures and answer the questions. Use *all/most/some/none + of them / of it*.



1. How many of the people are women?
2. How many of the boxes are on the table?
3. How many of the men are wearing hats?
4. How many of the windows are open?
5. How many of the people are standing?
6. How much of the money is Ben's?

Most of them.

**82.3** Right or wrong? Correct the sentences that are wrong. Write *OK* if the sentence is correct.

1. Most of children like to play.
2. All the students failed the exam.
3. Some of people work too hard.
4. Some of questions on the exam were very easy.
5. I haven't seen any of those people before.
6. All of insects have six legs.
7. Have you read all these books?
8. Most of students in our class are very nice.
9. Most of my friends are going to the party.
10. I'm very tired this morning – I was awake most of night.

Most children

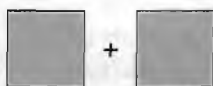
OK



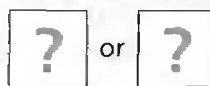
# Both, either, and neither

## A

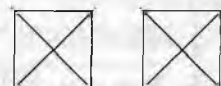
We use **both/either/neither** to talk about two things or people.



**both**



**either**



**neither** (not + **either**)

- Rosemary has two children. **Both** are married. (**both** = the two children)
- Would you like tea or coffee? You can have **either**. (**either** = tea or coffee)
- A: Do you want to go to the movies or the theater?  
B: **Neither**. I want to stay home. (**neither** = not the movies *or* the theater)

Compare **either** and **neither**:

- “Would you like tea or coffee?” { “**Either**. It doesn’t matter.” (= tea or coffee)  
“I don’t want **either**.” (*not* I don’t want neither)  
“**Neither**.” (= not tea *or* coffee)

## B

**Both/either/neither** + *noun*

<b>both</b>	+ <i>plural</i>	<b>both</b>	windows/books/children, etc.
<b>either</b>	} + <i>singular</i>	<b>either</b>	window/book/child, etc.
<b>neither</b>		<b>neither</b>	

- Last year I went to Miami and Seattle. I liked **both** cities very much.
- First I worked in an office, and then in a store. **Neither** job was very interesting.
- There are two ways to get to the airport. You can go **either** way.

## C

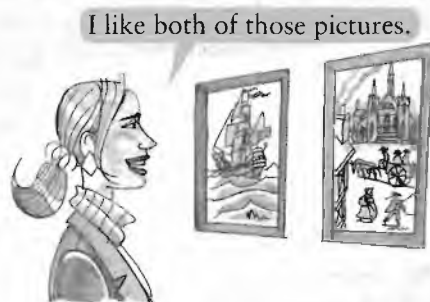
**both of ... / either of ... / neither of ...**

<b>both</b>	<b>of</b>	<b>the</b>
<b>either</b>		<b>these/those</b>
<b>neither</b>		<b>my/your/Amy’s, etc.</b>

- **Neither** of my parents is Canadian.
- I haven’t read **either** of these books.

You can say **both** (of) **the** ... / **both** (of) **those** ... / **both** (of) **my** ... , etc. (with or without of).

- I like **both** of those pictures. *or* I like **both** those pictures.
- **Both** of Amy’s sisters are married. *or* **Both** Amy’s sisters are married.



## D

**both of them / neither of us, etc.**

<b>both</b>	<b>of</b>	<b>them</b>
<b>either</b>		<b>us</b>
<b>neither</b>		<b>you</b>

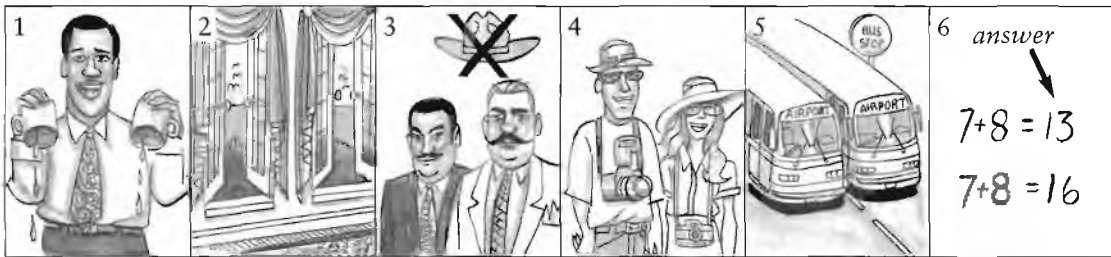
- Tiffany has two sisters. **Both** of them are married.
- Tom and I didn’t eat anything. **Neither** of us was hungry.
- Who are those two people? I don’t know **either** of them.

# Exercises

## 83.1 Write both/either/neither. Use of where necessary.

1. Last year I went to Miami and Seattle. I liked both cities very much.
2. There were two pictures on the wall. I didn't like either of them.
3. It was a good football game. \_\_\_\_\_ teams played well.
4. It wasn't a good football game. \_\_\_\_\_ team played well.
5. "Is your friend Canadian or American?" "\_\_\_\_\_. She's Australian."
6. We went away for two days, but the weather was bad. It rained \_\_\_\_\_ days.
7. A: I bought two newspapers. Which one do you want?  
B: \_\_\_\_\_. It doesn't matter which one.
8. I invited Diana and Mike to the party, but \_\_\_\_\_ them came.
9. "Do you go to work by car or by bus?" "\_\_\_\_\_. I always walk."
10. "Which hat do you like, this one or that one?" "I don't like \_\_\_\_\_ them."
11. "Do you work, or are you a student?" "\_\_\_\_\_. I work and I'm a student, too."
12. Paula and I didn't know the time because \_\_\_\_\_ us had a watch.
13. Lee has two sisters and a brother. \_\_\_\_\_ sisters are married.
14. Lee has two sisters and a brother. I know her brother, but I haven't met \_\_\_\_\_ her sisters.

## 83.2 Complete the sentences for the pictures. Use Both . . . or Neither . . .



1. Both cups are empty.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ are open.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ wearing a hat.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ cameras.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ to the airport.
6. \_\_\_\_\_ right.

## 83.3 A man and a woman answered some questions. Their answers were the same.

Write sentences with *Both of them* / *Neither of them* . . .



Are you married?	No	No
How old are you?	21	21
Are you a student?	Yes	Yes
Do you have a car?	No	No
Where do you live?	Boston	Boston
Do you like to cook?	Yes	Yes
Can you play the piano?	No	No
Do you read the newspaper?	Yes	Yes
Are you interested in sports?	No	No

1. Neither of them is married.
2. Both of them are 21
3. \_\_\_\_\_ students.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ a car.
5. \_\_\_\_\_
6. \_\_\_\_\_
7. \_\_\_\_\_
8. \_\_\_\_\_
9. \_\_\_\_\_

## A



a lot of money



not much money



a lot of books



not many books

We use **much** + *uncountable noun*  
(**much** food / **much** money, etc.).

- Did you buy **much** food?
- We don't have **much** luggage.
- How **much** money do you want?
- A: Have you got any money?  
B: I've got some but **not much**.

We use **many** + *plural noun*  
(**many** books / **many** people, etc.).

- Did you buy **many** books?
- We don't know **many** people.
- How **many** pictures did you take?
- A: Did you take any pictures?  
B: I took some but **not many**.

We use **a lot of** + both kinds of noun.

- We bought **a lot of** food.
- Paula doesn't have **a lot of** free time.

Note that we say:

- There is **a lot of** food/money/water.  
(*singular verb*)

- We bought **a lot of** books.
- Did they ask you **a lot of** questions?

- There are **a lot of** trees/stores/people.  
(*plural verb*)
- **A lot of** people like soccer. (*not* likes)

## B

We use **much** in *questions* and *negative sentences*.

- Do you drink **much** coffee?
- I **don't** drink **much** coffee.

But we do not often use **much** in *positive sentences*.

- I **drink** **a lot of** coffee. (*not* I drink **much** coffee)
- "Do you drink **much** coffee?" "Yes, **a lot**." (*not* Yes, **much**)

We use **many** and **a lot of** in all kinds of sentences (question/positive/negative).

- Do you **have** **many** friends / **a lot of** friends?
- We **have** **many** friends / **a lot of** friends.
- We **don't have** **many** friends / **a lot of** friends.

## C

**much** and **a lot** without a noun

- Diane spoke to me, but she didn't say **much**.
- "Do you watch TV **much**?" "No, **not much**." (= not often)
- We like films, so we go to the movies **a lot**. (*not much* – see section B)
- I don't like him very **much**.

# Exercises

## 84.1 Write *much* or *many*.

1. Did you buy much food?
2. There aren't \_\_\_\_\_ hotels in this town.
3. We don't have \_\_\_\_\_ gas.
4. Were there \_\_\_\_\_ people on the train?
5. Did \_\_\_\_\_ students fail the exam?
6. Paula doesn't have \_\_\_\_\_ money.
7. I wasn't hungry, so I didn't eat \_\_\_\_\_.
8. I haven't seen Eric for \_\_\_\_\_ years.

Write *How much* or *How many*.

9. \_\_\_\_\_ people are coming to the party?
10. \_\_\_\_\_ milk should I get at the store?
11. \_\_\_\_\_ bread did you buy?
12. \_\_\_\_\_ players are there on a football team?

## 84.2 Complete the sentences. Use *much* or *many* with one of these words:

~~books~~ countries luggage people time times

1. I don't read very much. I don't have many books.
2. Hurry up! We don't have \_\_\_\_\_.
3. Do you travel a lot? Have you been to \_\_\_\_\_?
4. Tina hasn't lived here very long, so she doesn't know \_\_\_\_\_.
5. "Do you have \_\_\_\_\_?" "No, only this suitcase."
6. I know Tokyo very well. I've been there \_\_\_\_\_.

## 84.3 Complete the sentences with *a lot of* + one of these:

accidents ~~books~~ fun interesting things traffic

1. I like to read. I have a lot of books.
2. We enjoyed our visit to the museum. We saw \_\_\_\_\_.
3. This road is very dangerous. There are \_\_\_\_\_ here.
4. We enjoyed our vacation. We had \_\_\_\_\_.
5. It took me a long time to drive here. There was \_\_\_\_\_.

## 84.4 In some of these sentences, *much* is not natural. Change the sentences or write OK.

1. Do you drink much coffee? OK
2. I drink much tea. a lot of tea
3. It was a cold winter. We had much snow. \_\_\_\_\_
4. There wasn't much snow last winter. \_\_\_\_\_
5. It costs much money to travel around the world. \_\_\_\_\_
6. This pen was cheap. It didn't cost much. \_\_\_\_\_
7. Do you know much about computers? \_\_\_\_\_
8. "Do you have any luggage?" "Yes, much." \_\_\_\_\_

## 84.5 Write sentences about these people. Use *much* and *a lot*.

1. Jim loves movies. (go to the movies) He goes to the movies a lot
2. Nicole thinks TV is boring. (watch TV) She doesn't watch TV much.
3. Tina is a good tennis player. (play tennis) She \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Mark doesn't like to drive. (use his car) He \_\_\_\_\_.
5. Paul spends most of his time at home. (go out) \_\_\_\_\_.
6. Sue has been all over the world. (travel) \_\_\_\_\_.

## A little / a few and little / few

## A

(a) little + *uncountable noun*

- (a) little water
- (a) little money
- (a) little time
- (a) little soup



a little water

(a) few + *plural noun*

- (a) few books
- (a) few questions
- (a) few people
- (a) few days



a few books

## B

a little = some but not much

- She didn't eat anything, but she drank a little water.
- I speak a little Spanish.  
(= some Spanish but not much)
- A: Can you speak Spanish?  
B: A little.

a few = some but not many

- Last night I wrote a few letters.
- We're going away for a few days.
- I speak a few words of Spanish.
- A: Do you have any stamps?  
B: A few. Do you want one?

## C

✗ little (without a) = almost no or almost nothing

- There was little food in the fridge.  
It was almost empty.

You can say very little.

- Dan is very thin because he eats very little. (= almost nothing)

✗ few (without a) = almost no

- There were few people in the theater.  
It was almost empty.

You can say very few.

- Your English is very good. You make very few mistakes.

## D

little and a little

A little is a *positive* idea.

- They have a little money, but they're not rich. (= they have some money)

Little (or very little) is a *negative* idea.

- They are very poor. They have (very) little money. (= almost no money)

I have a little money. I have little money.



few and a few

A few is a *positive* idea.

- I have a few friends, so I'm not lonely.  
(= I have some friends)

Few (or very few) is a *negative* idea.

- I'm sad and I'm lonely. I have (very) few friends. (= almost no friends)

I have a few friends. I have few friends.



# Exercises

## 85.1 Answer the questions with a *little* or a *few*.

1. "Do you have any money?" "Yes, a little."
2. "Do you have any envelopes?" "Yes, \_\_\_\_\_."
3. "Do you want sugar in your coffee?" "Yes, \_\_\_\_\_, please."
4. "Did you take any pictures when you were on vacation?" "Yes, \_\_\_\_\_."
5. "Does your friend speak English?" "Yes, \_\_\_\_\_."
6. "Are there any good restaurants in this town?" "Yes, \_\_\_\_\_."

## 85.2 Write a *little* or a *few* + one of these words:

chairs days fresh air friends letters milk Russian times

1. Last night I wrote a few letters to my family and friends.
2. Can I have \_\_\_\_\_ in my coffee, please?
3. "When did Julia leave?" " \_\_\_\_\_ ago."
4. "Do you speak any foreign languages?" "I can speak \_\_\_\_\_."
5. "Are you going to the movies alone?" "No, I'm going with \_\_\_\_\_."
6. "Have you ever been to Mexico?" "Yes, \_\_\_\_\_."
7. There wasn't much furniture in the room – just a table and \_\_\_\_\_.
8. I'm going out for a walk. I need \_\_\_\_\_.

## 85.3 Complete the sentences. Use *very little* or *very few* + one of these words:

coffee hotels mistakes people rain time work

1. Your English is very good. You make very few mistakes.
2. I drink \_\_\_\_\_. I don't like it much.
3. The weather here is very dry in the summer. There is \_\_\_\_\_.
4. It's difficult to find a place to stay in this town. There are \_\_\_\_\_.
5. Hurry up. There's \_\_\_\_\_ before the movie starts.
6. The town is very quiet at night. \_\_\_\_\_ go out.
7. Some people in my office are very lazy. They do \_\_\_\_\_.

## 85.4 Write *very little* / a *little* / *very few* / a *few*.

1. There was very little food in the fridge. It was almost empty.
2. "When did Sarah go out?" " \_\_\_\_\_ minutes ago."
3. I can't decide now. I need \_\_\_\_\_ time to think about it.
4. There was \_\_\_\_\_ traffic, so we got there early.
5. Let's take a taxi. There are \_\_\_\_\_ buses after 9 o'clock at night.
6. "Would you like more soup?" "Yes, \_\_\_\_\_, please."
7. They sent us a map, so we had \_\_\_\_\_ trouble finding their house.

## 85.5 Right or wrong? Correct the sentences that are wrong. Write OK if the sentence is correct.

1. We're going away for few days next week. for a few days
2. Everybody needs little luck. \_\_\_\_\_
3. I can't talk to you now – I've got few things to do. \_\_\_\_\_
4. I eat very little meat – I don't like it very much. \_\_\_\_\_
5. Excuse me, can I ask you few questions? \_\_\_\_\_
6. There were little people on the bus – it was almost empty. \_\_\_\_\_

# Old, nice, interesting, etc. (Adjectives)

## A

Adjective + noun (nice day / blue eyes, etc.)

adjective + noun

It's a nice day today.  
Laura has brown eyes.  
There's a very old church in this town.  
Do you like Italian food?  
I don't speak any foreign languages.  
There are some beautiful yellow flowers in the garden.

The adjective is *before* the noun.

- They live in a **modern house**. (*not* a house modern)
- Have you met any **famous people**? (*not* people famous)

The ending of an adjective is always the same.

a different place    different places (*not* differents)

## B

be (am/is/was, etc.) + adjective

- The weather **is nice** today.
- These flowers **are very beautiful**.
- **Are you cold**? Should I close the window?
- I'm **hungry**. Can I have something to eat?
- The movie **wasn't very good**. It was boring.
- Please **be quiet**. I'm studying.



## C

look/feel/smell/taste/sound + adjective



- "You look tired." "Yes, I feel tired."
- Eric told me about his new job. It **sounds very interesting**.
- I'm not going to eat this fish. It **doesn't smell good**.

Compare:

He **is** feels tired.  
looks

They **are** look happy.  
sound

It **is** smells good.  
tastes

# Exercises

## 86.1 Put the words in the right order.

- (new / live in / house / they / a) They live in a new house.
- (like / jacket / I / that / green) I \_\_\_\_\_.
- (music / like / do / classical / you?) Do \_\_\_\_\_?
- (had / wonderful / a / I / trip) \_\_\_\_\_.
- (went to / restaurant / a / Chinese / we) \_\_\_\_\_.

## 86.2 The words in the box are adjectives (dark, foreign, etc.) or nouns (air, job, etc.). Use an adjective and a noun to complete each sentence.

air	dangerous	foreign	hot	knife	long	vacation
clouds	dark	fresh	job	languages	sharp	water

- Do you speak any foreign languages?
- Look at those \_\_\_\_\_. It's going to rain.
- Sue works very hard, and she's very tired. She needs a \_\_\_\_\_.
- You need \_\_\_\_\_ to make tea.
- Can you open the window? We need some \_\_\_\_\_.
- I need a \_\_\_\_\_ to cut these onions.
- Fire fighting is a \_\_\_\_\_.

## 86.3 Write sentences for the pictures. Choose from the boxes.

feel(s)	look(s)	sound(s)	+	happy	nice	surprised
look(s)	smell(s)	taste(s)		new	sick	terrible

1 You <u>sound happy</u> . 	2 It _____. 	3 I _____. 
4 You _____. 	5 They _____. 	6 It _____. 

## 86.4 A and B don't agree. Complete B's sentences. Use the word in parentheses ( ).

A

- You look tired.
- This is a new coat.
- I'm American.
- You look cold.
- These bags are heavy.
- The soup looks good.

B

- |                                   |         |
|-----------------------------------|---------|
| I do? I <u>don't feel tired</u> . | (feel)  |
| Really? It _____.                 | (look)  |
| You are? You _____.               | (sound) |
| Really? I _____.                  | (feel)  |
| They are? They _____.             | (look)  |
| Really? It _____.                 | (taste) |



# Quickly, badly, suddenly, etc. (Adverbs)

A



He ate his dinner very **quickly**.

**Quickly** and **suddenly** are adverbs.



**Suddenly**, the shelf fell down.

Adjective + -ly → adverb

adjective	quick	bad	sudden	careful	heavy	etc.
adverb	quickly	badly	suddenly	carefully	heavily	etc.

Spelling (see Appendix 5.2): easy → easily heavy → heavily

B

Adverbs tell you *how* something happens or *how* somebody does something.

- The train **stopped suddenly**.
- I **opened** the door **slowly**.
- Please listen **carefully**.
- I **understand** you **perfectly**.



It's raining **heavily**.

Compare:

adjective (see Unit 86)

- Sue is very **quiet**.
- **Be careful**!
- It was a **bad** game.
- I felt **nervous**. (= I was nervous)

adverb

- Sue speaks very **quietly**. (*not* speaks very quiet)
- Listen **carefully**! (*not* listen careful)
- Our team played **badly**. (*not* played bad)
- I waited **nervously**.

C

These words are adjectives *and* adverbs: **hard fast late early**

- |                                   |  |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| ■ Sue's job is very <b>hard</b> . | ■ Sue <b>works</b> very <b>hard</b> . ( <i>not</i> hardly) |
| ■ Ben is a <b>fast</b> runner.    | ■ Ben can <b>run fast</b> .                                |
| ■ The bus was <b>late/early</b> . | ■ I went to bed <b>late/early</b> .                        |

D

**good** (adjective) → **well** (adverb)

- |                                      |   |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| ■ Your English is very <b>good</b> . | ■ You <b>speak</b> English very <b>well</b> . ( <i>not</i> very good) |
| ■ It was a <b>good</b> game.         | ■ Our team played <b>well</b> .                                       |

But **well** is also an adjective (= not sick, in good health).

- "How are you?" "I'm very **well**, thank you. And you?"

**87.1** Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with one of these adverbs:

angrily badly early fast heavily quietly



1. It's raining heavily.
2. He sings very \_\_\_\_\_.
3. They came in \_\_\_\_\_.
4. She shouted at me \_\_\_\_\_.
5. She can run very \_\_\_\_\_.
6. He got to work \_\_\_\_\_.

**87.2** Complete the sentences. Choose from the boxes.

come	know	sleep	win
explain	listen	think	work

+

carefully	clearly	hard	well
carefully	easily	quickly	well

1. I'm going to tell you something very important, so please listen carefully.
2. Amy! \_\_\_\_\_! Run!
3. They \_\_\_\_\_. At the end of the day, they're always tired.
4. I'm tired this morning. I didn't \_\_\_\_\_ last night.
5. You play tennis much better than me. When we play, you always \_\_\_\_\_.
6. \_\_\_\_\_ before you answer this question.
7. I've met Alice a few times, but I don't \_\_\_\_\_ her very \_\_\_\_\_.
8. Our teacher doesn't \_\_\_\_\_ things very \_\_\_\_\_. We never understand him.

**87.3** Which is right?

1. Don't eat so quick/quickly. It's not good for you. (quickly is right)
2. Why are you angry/angrily? I haven't done anything.
3. Can you speak slow/slowly, please?
4. Come on, Dave! Why are you always so slow/slowly?
5. Bill is a very careful/carefully driver.
6. Tracy is studying hard/hardly for her exams.
7. "Where's Diane?" "She was here, but she left sudden/suddenly."
8. Please be quiet/quietly. I'm studying.
9. Some companies pay their workers very bad/badly.
10. That jacket looks nice/nicely. Are you going to buy it?

**87.4** Write good or well.

1. Your English is really good. You speak it very well.
2. Jackie did very \_\_\_\_\_ on her exams.
3. The food was very \_\_\_\_\_. I enjoyed it a lot.
4. Mark has a difficult job, but he does it \_\_\_\_\_.
5. How are your parents? Are they \_\_\_\_\_?
6. Did you have a \_\_\_\_\_ vacation? Was the weather \_\_\_\_\_?

## Old/older and expensive / more expensive

## A



Older / heavier / more expensive are *comparative* forms.

The comparative is **-er** (older) or **more** . . . (more expensive).

## B

**-er** (older, heavier, etc.)

Short words (1 syllable) → **-er**

old → **older**      slow → **slower**      cheap → **cheaper**

nice → **nicer**      late → **later**      big → **bigger**

*Spelling* (see Appendix 5): big → bigger      hot → hotter      thin → thinner

Words ending in **-y** → **-ier**

easy → **easier**      heavy → **heavier**      early → **earlier**

- Rome is **old**, but Athens is **older**. (*not* more old)
- Is it **cheaper** to go by car or by train? (*not* more cheap)
- Helen wants a **bigger** car.
- This coat is OK, but I think the other one is **nicer**.
- Don't write a letter. It's **easier** to call. (*not* more easy)

**far** → **farther**

- "How **far** is it to the station? A mile?" "No, it's **farther**. About two miles."

## C

**more** . . .

Long words (2/3/4 syllables) → **more** . . .

careful → **more careful**      polite → **more polite**

expensive → **more expensive**      interesting → **more interesting**

- You should be **more careful**.
- I don't like my job. I want to do something **more interesting**.
- Is it **more expensive** to go by car or by train?

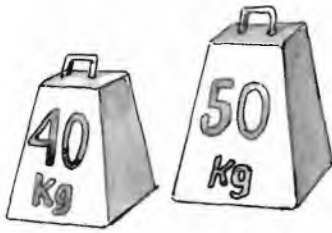
## D

**good/well** → **better**      **bad** → **worse**

- The weather wasn't very **good** yesterday, but it's **better** today.
- "Do you feel **better** today?" "No, I feel **worse**."
- Which is **worse** – a headache or a toothache?

# Exercises

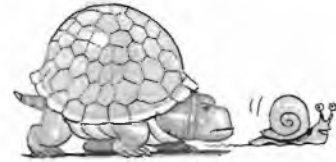
**88.1** Look at the pictures and write the comparative (*older / more interesting*, etc.).



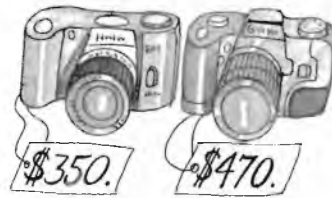
1. heavy heavier



2. big \_\_\_\_\_



3. slow \_\_\_\_\_



4. expensive \_\_\_\_\_



5. high \_\_\_\_\_



6. dangerous \_\_\_\_\_

**88.2** Write the comparative.

- |                     |                   |
|---------------------|-------------------|
| 1. old <u>older</u> | 6. good _____     |
| 2. strong _____     | 7. large _____    |
| 3. happy _____      | 8. serious _____  |
| 4. modern _____     | 9. pretty _____   |
| 5. important _____  | 10. crowded _____ |

**88.3** Write the opposite.

- |                         |                 |
|-------------------------|-----------------|
| 1. younger <u>older</u> | 4. better _____ |
| 2. colder _____         | 5. nearer _____ |
| 3. cheaper _____        | 6. easier _____ |

**88.4** Complete the sentences. Use a comparative.

- Helen's car isn't very big. She wants a bigger one.
- My job isn't very interesting. I want to do something more interesting.
- You're not very tall. Your brother is \_\_\_\_\_.
- David doesn't work very hard. I work \_\_\_\_\_.
- My chair isn't very comfortable. Yours is \_\_\_\_\_.
- Your idea isn't very good. My idea is \_\_\_\_\_.
- This house isn't very nice. Our house is \_\_\_\_\_.
- My suitcase isn't very heavy. Your suitcase is \_\_\_\_\_.
- I'm not very interested in art. I'm \_\_\_\_\_ in history.
- It isn't very warm today. It was \_\_\_\_\_ yesterday.
- These tomatoes don't taste very good. The other ones tasted \_\_\_\_\_.
- Britain isn't very big. France is \_\_\_\_\_.
- Los Angeles isn't very beautiful. San Francisco is \_\_\_\_\_.
- This knife isn't very sharp. Do you have a \_\_\_\_\_ one?
- People today aren't very polite. In the past, they were \_\_\_\_\_.

## Older than . . . and more expensive than . . .

A



I'm taller than you.

HOTEL PRICES (per person, per night)	
Capitol Hotel	\$350
Grand Hotel	\$110
Western Hotel	\$195

She's taller than him.

The Capitol Hotel is more expensive than the Grand.

We use **than** after comparatives (older than . . . / more expensive than . . . , etc.).

- Athens is **older than** Rome.
- Are oranges **more expensive than** bananas?
- It's **easier to call than** to write a letter.
- "How are you today?" "Not bad. **Better than** yesterday."
- The restaurant is **more crowded than** usual.

B

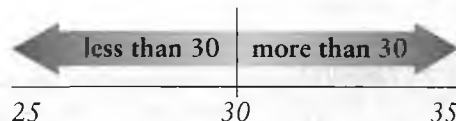
We usually say: **than me / than him / than her / than us / than them**. You can say:

- I can run faster **than him**. *or* I can run faster **than he can**.
- You are a better singer **than me**. *or* You are a better singer **than I am**.
- I got up earlier **than her**. *or* I got up earlier **than she did**.

C

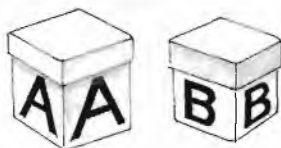
more/less than . . .

- A: How much are those shoes? Fifty dollars?
- B: No, **more than** that. (= more than \$50)
- The film was very short – **less than** an hour.
- They've got **more money than** they need.
- You go out **more than** me.

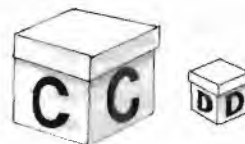


D

a little older / much older, etc.



Box A is a little bigger than Box B.



Box C is much bigger than Box D.

a little	bigger	than . . .
much	older	
	better	
	more difficult	
	more expensive	

- Canada is **much** bigger than France.
- Emma is **a little** older than Gary – she's 26 and he's 24.
- The hotel was **much more** expensive than I expected.
- You go out **much more** than me.

# Exercises

## 89.1 Write sentences about Liz and Ben. Use *than*.



LIZ

1. I'm 26.
2. I'm not a good swimmer.
3. I'm 5 feet, 10 inches tall.
4. I start work at 8 o'clock.
5. I don't work very hard.
6. I don't have much money.
7. I'm a very good driver.
8. I'm not very patient.
9. I'm not a very good dancer.
10. I'm very intelligent.
11. I speak French very well.
12. I don't go to the movies much.



BEN

1. I'm 24.
2. I'm a very good swimmer.
3. I'm 5 feet, 8 inches tall.
4. I start work at 8:30.
5. I work very hard.
6. I have a lot of money.
7. I'm not a very good driver.
8. I'm very patient.
9. I'm a good dancer.
10. I'm not very intelligent.
11. I don't speak French well.
12. I go to the movies a lot.

- |  |                     |
|--|---------------------|
| 1. Liz <i>is older than Ben</i> .            | 7. Liz is a _____ . |
| 2. Ben <i>is a better swimmer than Liz</i> . | 8. Ben _____ .      |
| 3. Liz is _____ .                            | 9. Ben _____ .      |
| 4. Liz starts _____ Ben.                     | 10. Liz _____ .     |
| 5. Ben _____ .                               | 11. Liz _____ .     |
| 6. Ben has _____ .                           | 12. Ben _____ .     |

## 89.2 Complete the sentences. Use *than*.

1. He isn't very tall. You *'re taller than him* OR *'re taller than he is* .
2. She isn't very old. You're \_\_\_\_\_ .
3. I don't work very hard. You work \_\_\_\_\_ .
4. He doesn't watch TV very much. You \_\_\_\_\_ .
5. I'm not a very good cook. You \_\_\_\_\_ .
6. We don't know many people. You \_\_\_\_\_ .
7. They don't have much money. You \_\_\_\_\_ .
8. I can't run very fast. You can \_\_\_\_\_ .
9. She hasn't been here very long. You \_\_\_\_\_ .
10. They didn't get up very early. You \_\_\_\_\_ .
11. He wasn't very surprised. You \_\_\_\_\_ .

## 89.3 Complete the sentences with *a little* or *much* + a comparative (*older/better*, etc.).

1. Emma is 26. Gary is 24.  
Emma *is a little older than Gary* .
2. Brian's mother is 52. His father is 69.  
Brian's mother \_\_\_\_\_ .
3. My camera cost \$100. Yours cost \$96.  
My camera \_\_\_\_\_ .
4. Yesterday I felt terrible. Today I feel great.  
I feel \_\_\_\_\_ .
5. Today the temperature is 12 degrees Celsius. Yesterday it was 10 degrees.  
It's \_\_\_\_\_ .
6. Amy is an excellent tennis player. I'm not very good.  
Amy \_\_\_\_\_ .

# Not as . . . as

A

not as . . . as

I'm 93.



I'm 96.



She's old, but she's not as old as he is.



Box A isn't as big as Box B.

- Rome is **not as old** as Athens. (= Athens is **older**)
- The Grand Hotel **isn't as expensive** as the Western. (= the Western is **more expensive**)
- I **don't play tennis as often** as you. (= you play **more often**)
- The weather is better than it was yesterday. It **isn't as cold**. (= as cold as it was yesterday)

B

not as much as . . . / not as many as . . .

- I haven't got as much money as you. (= you've got **more money**)
- I don't know as many people as you. (= you know **more people**)
- I don't go out as much as you. (= you go out **more**)

C

Compare **not as . . . as** and **than**:

- Rome is **not as old** as Athens.  
Athens is **older than** Rome. (*not older as* Rome)
- Tennis **isn't as popular** as soccer.  
Soccer is **more popular than** tennis.
- I **don't go out as much** as you.  
You go out **more than** me.

D

We usually say: as **me** / as **him** / as **her**, etc. You can say:

- She's not as old as **him**. *or* She's not as old as **he** is.
- You don't work as hard as **me**. *or* You don't work as hard as **I** do.


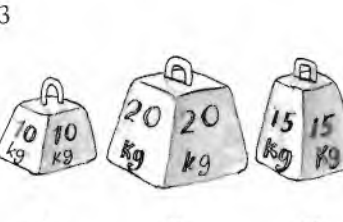


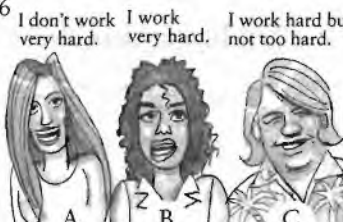
E

We say **the same as** . . .

- The weather today is **the same** as yesterday.
- Your son's hair is **the same color** as yours.
- I arrived at **the same time** as Tim.

# Exercises

## 90.1 Look at the pictures and write sentences about A, B, and C.

<p>1</p>  <p>A B C</p>	<p>2</p> <p>_____ A</p> <p>_____ B</p> <p>_____ C</p>	<p>3</p>  <p>A B C</p>
<p>4</p> <p>I'm 45. I'm 50. I'm 40.</p>  <p>A B C</p>	<p>5</p>  <p>A B C</p>	<p>6</p> <p>I don't work very hard. I work very hard. I work hard but not too hard.</p>  <p>A B C</p>

- A is bigger than C but not as big as B.
- A is \_\_\_\_\_ B but not \_\_\_\_\_ C.
- C is \_\_\_\_\_ A but \_\_\_\_\_.
- A is \_\_\_\_\_ but \_\_\_\_\_.
- B has \_\_\_\_\_.
- C works \_\_\_\_\_.

## 90.2 Write sentences with as ... as ....

- Athens is older than Rome. Rome isn't as old as Athens.
- My room is bigger than yours. Your room isn't \_\_\_\_\_.
- You got up earlier than me. I didn't \_\_\_\_\_.
- We played better than them. They \_\_\_\_\_.
- I've been here longer than you. You \_\_\_\_\_.
- She's more nervous than him. He \_\_\_\_\_.

## 90.3 Write as or than.

- Athens is older than Rome.
- I don't watch TV as much \_\_\_\_\_ you.
- You eat more \_\_\_\_\_ me.
- I feel better \_\_\_\_\_ I felt yesterday.
- Jim isn't as intelligent \_\_\_\_\_ he thinks.
- Belgium is smaller \_\_\_\_\_ Switzerland.
- Brazil isn't as big \_\_\_\_\_ Canada.
- I can't wait more \_\_\_\_\_ an hour.

## 90.4 Complete the sentences about Lee, Ed, and Kim. Use the same age / the same street, etc.



LEE

I'm 22.  
I live on Hill Street.  
I got up at 7:15.  
I haven't got a car.



ED

I'm 24.  
I live on Oak Street.  
I got up at 7:15.  
My car is black.



KIM

I'm 24.  
I live on Hill Street.  
I got up at 7:45.  
I have a car. It's black.

- (age) Ed is the same age as Kim
- (street) Lee lives \_\_\_\_\_.
- (time) Lee got up \_\_\_\_\_.
- (color) Ed's \_\_\_\_\_.



A



Box A is **bigger** than Box B.

Box A is **bigger than** all the other boxes.

Box A is **the biggest** box.

**Bigger / older / more expensive**, etc., are *comparative* forms. (see Unit 88)

**Biggest / oldest / most expensive**, etc., are *superlative* forms.

### Motel Prices in Jamestown

Best West Motel	\$120	Oak Tree Motel	\$85
Sleep Inn	\$105	Cozy Cabins	\$60
Rainbow Motel	\$95		

The Best West Motel is **more expensive** than the Sleep Inn.

The Best West Motel is **more expensive than** all the other motels in town.

The Best West Motel is **the most expensive** motel in town.

B

The superlative form is **-est (oldest) or most . . . (most expensive)**.

Short words (old/cheap/nice, etc.) → the **-est**

old → **the oldest**    cheap → **the cheapest**    nice → **the nicest**

*but* good → **the best**    bad → **the worst**

*Spelling* (see Appendix 5): big → **the biggest**    hot → **the hottest**

Words ending in **-y** (easy/heavy, etc.) → the **-iest**

easy → **the easiest**    heavy → **the heaviest**    pretty → **the prettiest**

Long words (careful/expensive/interesting, etc.) → **the most . . .**

careful → **the most careful**    interesting → **the most interesting**

C

We say: **the oldest . . . / the most expensive . . .**, etc. (with **the**).

- The church is very old. It's **the oldest** building in the town.  
(= it is older **than** all the other buildings)
- What is **the longest** river in the world?
- Money is important, but it isn't **the most important** thing in life.
- Excuse me, where is **the nearest** bank?

D

You can use **the oldest / the best / the most expensive**, etc., without a noun.

- Ken is a good player, but he isn't **the best** on the team. (= the best player)

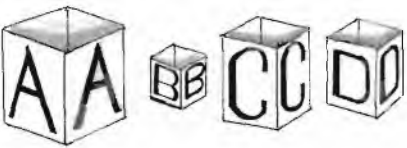
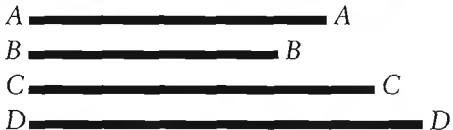


E

Superlative + **I've ever . . . / you've ever . . .**, etc.

- The movie was very bad. I think it's **the worst** movie I've ever seen.
- What is **the most unusual** thing you've ever done?

# Exercises

## 91.1 Write sentences with comparatives (older, etc.) and superlatives (the oldest, etc.).

1.  (big/small)  
(A/D) A is bigger than D.  
(A) A is the biggest  
(B) B is the smallest.
2.  (long/short)  
(C/A) C is \_\_\_\_\_ A.  
(D) D is \_\_\_\_\_  
(B) B \_\_\_\_\_
3.  (young/old)  
(D/C) D \_\_\_\_\_  
(B) \_\_\_\_\_  
(C) \_\_\_\_\_
4.  (expensive/cheap)  
(D/A) \_\_\_\_\_  
(C) \_\_\_\_\_  
(A) \_\_\_\_\_
5. 

Restaurant A	excellent
Restaurant B	good
Restaurant C	OK
Restaurant D	terrible

 (good/bad)  
(A/C) \_\_\_\_\_  
(A) \_\_\_\_\_  
(D) \_\_\_\_\_

## 91.2 Complete the sentences. Use a superlative + a noun (the oldest building, etc.).

1. This building is very old. It's the oldest building in town.
2. It was a very happy day. It was \_\_\_\_\_ of my life.
3. It's a very good movie. It's \_\_\_\_\_ I've ever seen.
4. She's a very popular singer. She's \_\_\_\_\_ in the country.
5. It was a very bad mistake. It was \_\_\_\_\_ I've ever made.
6. It's a very pretty city. It's \_\_\_\_\_ I've ever seen.
7. It was a very cold day. It was \_\_\_\_\_ of the year.
8. He's a very boring person. He's \_\_\_\_\_ I've ever met.

## 91.3 Write sentences with a superlative (the longest, etc.). Choose from the boxes.

Alaska	Jupiter	high	city	planet	Africa	South America
Brazil	the Nile	large	country	river	Australia	the USA
Everest	Sydney	long	mountain	state	the solar system	the world

1. Alaska is the largest state in the USA.
2. Brazil \_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_\_\_
6. \_\_\_\_\_

## A

I've only got \$2.00.



She can't buy a sandwich.  
She doesn't have **enough** money.



He can't reach the shelf.  
He isn't **tall enough**.

## B

**enough** + *noun* (**enough** money / **enough** people, etc.)

- "Is there **enough** salt in the soup?" "Yes, it's fine."
- We wanted to play football, but we didn't have **enough** players.
- Why don't you buy a car? You have **enough** money. (*not* money enough)

**enough** without a noun

- I've got some money, but not **enough** to buy a car. (= I need more money to buy a car)
- "Would you like some more cake?" "No, thanks. I've had **enough**."
- You're always at home. You don't go out **enough**.

## C

*Adjective* + **enough** (good **enough** / tall **enough**, etc.)

- "Do you want to go swimming?" "No, it isn't **warm enough**." (*not* enough warm)
- Can you hear the radio? Is it **loud enough** for you?
- Don't buy that coat. It's nice, but it isn't **long enough**. (= it's too short)

Remember:

**enough** + *noun*    *but*    *adjective* + **enough**

<b>enough</b> money	tall <b>enough</b>
<b>enough</b> time	good <b>enough</b>
<b>enough</b> people	old <b>enough</b>

## D

We say:

**enough** for somebody/something

**enough** to do something

**enough** for somebody/something  
to do something

- This sweater isn't **big enough** for me.
- I don't have **enough** money for a car.
- I don't have **enough** money to buy a car. (*not* for buy a car)
- Is your English **good enough** to have a conversation? (*not* for have)
- There aren't **enough** chairs for everybody to sit down.

**92.1** Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use *enough* + one of these words:

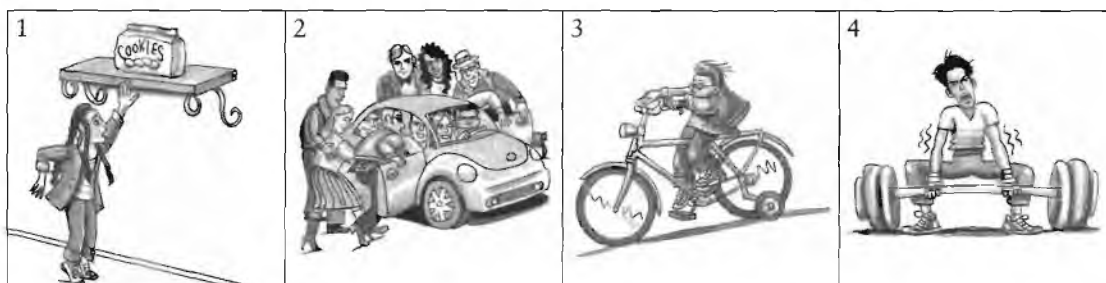
chairs money paint wind



1. She doesn't have enough money.
2. There aren't \_\_\_\_\_.
3. She doesn't have \_\_\_\_\_.
4. There isn't \_\_\_\_\_.

**92.2** Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use one of these adjectives + *enough*:

big long strong tall



1. She isn't tall enough.
2. The car \_\_\_\_\_.
3. His legs \_\_\_\_\_.
4. He \_\_\_\_\_.

**92.3** Complete the sentences. Use *enough* with one of these words:

big eat fruit loud old practice sugar time tired

1. "Is there enough salt in the soup?" "Yes, it's fine."
2. Can you hear the radio? Is it loud enough for you?
3. He can quit school if he wants – he's \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Did you have \_\_\_\_\_ to answer all the questions on the exam?
5. This house isn't \_\_\_\_\_ for a large family.
6. Tina is very thin. She doesn't \_\_\_\_\_.
7. Lisa isn't a very good tennis player because she doesn't \_\_\_\_\_.
8. You don't eat \_\_\_\_\_. You should eat a banana every day.
9. It's late, but I don't want to go to bed. I'm not \_\_\_\_\_ to sleep.

**92.4** Complete the sentences. Use *enough* with the words in parentheses ( ).

1. We haven't got enough money to buy a car. (money / buy)
2. This knife isn't \_\_\_\_\_ tomatoes. (sharp / cut)
3. The water wasn't \_\_\_\_\_ swimming. (warm / go)
4. Do we have \_\_\_\_\_ sandwiches? (bread / make)
5. We played well but not \_\_\_\_\_ the game. (well / win)
6. I don't have \_\_\_\_\_ the newspaper. (time / read)

## A



The shoes are  
**too big** for her.



Uggghhh!

There is **too much**  
sugar in it.

## B

**too + adjective/adverb** (too big / too hard, etc.)

- Can you turn the radio down?  
It's **too loud**. (= louder than I want)
- I can't work. I'm **too tired**.
- I think you work **too hard**.



It's **too loud**.

## C

**too much / too many** = more than you want, more than is good

- Emily studies all the time. I think she studies **too much**.
- I don't like the weather here. There is **too much rain**. (= more rain than is good)
- Let's go to another restaurant. There are **too many people** here.
- Traffic is a problem here. There are **too many cars**.

## D

Compare **too** and **not enough**:



**too big**

- The hat is **too big** for him.
- The radio is **too loud**. Can you turn it down, please?
- There's **too much sugar** in my coffee. (= more than I want)
- I don't feel well. I ate **too much**.



**not big enough**

- The hat **isn't big enough** for him. (= it's **too small**)
- The radio **isn't loud enough**. Can you turn it up, please?
- There's **not enough sugar** in my coffee. (= I want more sugar)
- You're very thin. You **don't eat enough**.

## E

We say:

**too . . . for somebody/something**

**too . . . to do something**

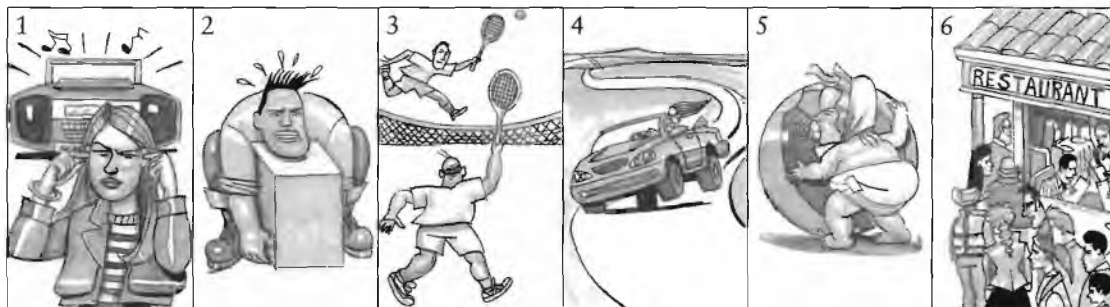
**too . . . for somebody/something  
to do something**

- These shoes are **too big** for me.
- It's a small house – **too small for a large family**.
- I'm **too tired to go out**. (*not for go out*)
- It's **too cold to sit** outside.
- She speaks **too fast for me to understand**.

# Exercises

**93.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use *too* + one of these words:**

big crowded fast heavy loud low



1. The radio is too loud .
2. The box is \_\_\_\_\_ .
3. The net is \_\_\_\_\_ .
4. She's driving \_\_\_\_\_ .
5. The ball is \_\_\_\_\_ .
6. The restaurant is \_\_\_\_\_ .

**93.2 Write *too* / *too much* / *too many* / *enough*.**

1. You're always at home. You don't go out enough .
2. I don't like the weather here. There's too much rain.
3. I can't wait for them. I don't have \_\_\_\_\_ time.
4. There was nowhere to sit on the beach. There were \_\_\_\_\_ people.
5. You're always tired. I think you work \_\_\_\_\_ hard.
6. "Did you have \_\_\_\_\_ to eat?" "Yes, thank you."
7. You drink \_\_\_\_\_ coffee. It's not good for you.
8. You don't eat \_\_\_\_\_ vegetables. You should eat some every day.
9. I don't like the weather here. It's \_\_\_\_\_ cold.
10. Our team didn't play well. We made \_\_\_\_\_ mistakes.
11. "Would you like some ice in your tea?" "Yes, but not \_\_\_\_\_ ."

**93.3 Complete the sentences. Use *too* or *enough* with the words in parentheses ( ).**

1. I couldn't work. I was too tired . (tired)
2. Can you turn the radio up, please? It isn't loud enough . (loud)
3. I don't want to walk home. It's \_\_\_\_\_ . (far)
4. Don't buy anything at that store. It \_\_\_\_\_ . (expensive)
5. You can't put all your things in that bag. It \_\_\_\_\_ . (big)
6. I couldn't do the exercise. It \_\_\_\_\_ . (hard)
7. Your work needs to be better. It \_\_\_\_\_ . (good)
8. Sorry, I can't talk now. I \_\_\_\_\_ . (busy)
9. I thought the movie was boring. It \_\_\_\_\_ . (long)

**93.4 Complete the sentences. Use *too* + adjective + *to* do something.**

1. I'm not going out. It's too cold to go out . (cold)
2. I'm not going to bed. It's \_\_\_\_\_ . (early)
3. They're not getting married. They're \_\_\_\_\_ . (young)
4. Nobody swims here. It's \_\_\_\_\_ . (dangerous)
5. Don't call her now. It's \_\_\_\_\_ . (late)
6. I didn't say anything. I was \_\_\_\_\_ . (surprised)

# He speaks English very well. (Word Order 1)

## A

Verb + object

Sue **reads** **the newspaper** every day.  
*subject verb object*

The verb and the object are usually together.

We say:

Sue **reads the newspaper** every day.

(*not* Sue reads every day the newspaper)



SUE (*subject*) THE NEWSPAPER (*object*)

verb + object

He	speaks	English	very well. ( <i>not</i> He speaks very well English)
I	like	Italian food	very much. ( <i>not</i> I like very much . . . )
Did you	watch	television	all evening?
We	invited	a lot of people	to the party.
Paul often	wears	a black hat.	
I	opened	the door	slowly.
I always	make	the same mistake.	
I'm going to	borrow	some money	from the bank.

## B

Place and time

We went **to a party** **last night** .  
*place time*

Place is usually before time. We say:

We went **to a party last night**. (*not* last night to a party)

place  
(*where?*)

+

time  
(*when? how long? how often?*)

Liz walks	to work	every day. ( <i>not</i> every day to work)
Will you be	at home	tonight? ( <i>not</i> tonight at home?)
I usually go	to bed	early. ( <i>not</i> early to bed)
We arrived	at the airport	at 7 o'clock.
They've lived	in the same house	for 20 years.
Jim's father has been	in the hospital	since June.

## 94.1 Right or wrong? Correct the sentences that are wrong.

1. Did you watch all evening television? Did you watch television all evening?
2. Sue reads a newspaper every day. OK
3. I like very much this picture. \_\_\_\_\_
4. Tom started last week his new job. \_\_\_\_\_
5. I want to speak English fluently. \_\_\_\_\_
6. April bought for her friend a present. \_\_\_\_\_
7. I drink every day three cups of coffee. \_\_\_\_\_
8. Don't eat your dinner too quickly! \_\_\_\_\_
9. I borrowed from my brother fifty dollars. \_\_\_\_\_

## 94.2 Put the words in order.

1. (the door / opened / I / slowly) I opened the door slowly.
2. (two letters / I / this morning / wrote) I \_\_\_\_\_.
3. (entered / quietly / the house / the thief) \_\_\_\_\_
4. (Megan / very well / French / doesn't speak) \_\_\_\_\_
5. (a lot of work / did / I / yesterday) \_\_\_\_\_
6. (Mary / do you know / well?) \_\_\_\_\_
7. (we / enjoyed / very much / the party) \_\_\_\_\_
8. (the problem / carefully / I / explained) \_\_\_\_\_
9. (we / at the airport / some friends / met) \_\_\_\_\_
10. (did you buy / in Canada / that jacket?) \_\_\_\_\_
11. (every day / do / the same thing / we) \_\_\_\_\_
12. (football / don't like / very much / I) \_\_\_\_\_

## 94.3 Put the words in order.

1. (to work / every day / walks / Liz) Liz walks to work every day.
2. (at the hotel / I / early / arrived) I \_\_\_\_\_.
3. (goes / every year / to Puerto Rico / Julia) Julia \_\_\_\_\_.
4. (we / since 1998 / here / have lived) We \_\_\_\_\_.
5. (in Montreal / Sue / in 1980 / was born) Sue \_\_\_\_\_.
6. (didn't go / yesterday / Paul / to work) Paul \_\_\_\_\_.
7. (to the bank / yesterday afternoon / went / Megan)  
Megan \_\_\_\_\_.
8. (I / in bed / this morning / had breakfast) I \_\_\_\_\_.
9. (next September / Barbara / to college / is going)  
Barbara \_\_\_\_\_.
10. (I / a beautiful bird / this morning / in the yard / saw)  
I \_\_\_\_\_.
11. (many times / have been / my parents / to Tokyo)  
My \_\_\_\_\_.
12. (my umbrella / I / last night / left / in the restaurant)  
I \_\_\_\_\_.
13. (to the movies / tomorrow / are you going?)  
Are \_\_\_\_\_?
14. (the children / I / took / this morning / to school)  
I \_\_\_\_\_.



# Always/usually/often, etc. (Word Order 2)

## A

We often use these words with the verb in the middle of a sentence.

always	often	ever	rarely	also	already	all
usually	sometimes	never	seldom	just	still	both

- My brother **never** speaks to me.
- She's **always** late.
- Do you **often** go to restaurants?
- I **sometimes** eat too much. (*or Sometimes I eat too much.*)
- I don't want to go to the movies. I've **already** seen that film.
- I've got three sisters. They're **all** married.

## B

Always/never, etc., usually go *before* the verb.

*verb*

always	go
often	play
never	feel
(etc.)	(etc.)

- I **always** go to work by car. (*not I go always*)
- Megan **often** plays tennis. (*not Megan plays often tennis*)
- You **sometimes** look unhappy.
- They **usually** have dinner at 7 o'clock.
- We **rarely** (*or seldom*) watch television.
- Richard is a good swimmer. He **also** plays tennis and volleyball. (*not He plays also tennis*)
- I've got three sisters. They **all** live in the same city.

Always/never, etc., go *after* am/is/are/was/were.

am	always
is	often
are	never
was	(etc.)
were	

- I **am** never sick. (*not I never am sick*)
- They **are** usually at home in the evening.
- It **is** often very cold here in the winter.
- When I was a child, I **was** always late for school.
- "Is Nicole **still** here?" "No, she **went** home."
- I've got two brothers. They're **both** doctors.

## C

Always/never, etc., go *between* two verbs (have . . . been / can . . . find, etc.).

*verb 1*

*verb 2*

will	always often never (etc.)	go
can		find
do		remember
(etc.)		(etc.)
have	(etc.)	gone
has		been
		(etc.)

- I **will** always remember you.
- It **doesn't** often rain here.
- Do you **usually** drive to work?
- I **can** never find my keys.
- Have you **ever** been to Egypt?
- Nicole **isn't** here. She **just** went out.
- The children **have** all finished their homework.

# Exercises

## 95.1 Look at Paul's answers. Write sentences with *often/never*, etc.



PAUL

- |                                      |               |                                 |
|--------------------------------------|---------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. Do you ever play tennis?          | Yes, often.   | <i>Paul often plays tennis.</i> |
| 2. Do you get up early?              | Yes, always.  | He _____.                       |
| 3. Are you ever late for work?       | No, never.    | He _____.                       |
| 4. Do you ever get angry?            | Sometimes.    | _____.                          |
| 5. Do you go swimming much?          | No, rarely.   | _____.                          |
| 6. Are you home in the evening much? | Yes, usually. | _____.                          |

## 95.2 Write these sentences with the words in parentheses ( ).

- My brother calls me. (never) *My brother never calls me.*
- Susan is polite. (always) Susan \_\_\_\_\_.
- Kim started a new job. (just) Kim \_\_\_\_\_.
- I go to bed before midnight. (rarely) \_\_\_\_\_.
- The bus isn't late. (usually) \_\_\_\_\_.
- I don't eat fish. (often) \_\_\_\_\_.
- I will forget what you said. (never) \_\_\_\_\_.
- Have you lost your passport? (ever) \_\_\_\_\_.
- Do you work in the same place? (still) \_\_\_\_\_.
- They stay at the same hotel. (always) \_\_\_\_\_.
- Diane doesn't work on Saturday. (usually) \_\_\_\_\_.
- Is Tina here? (already) \_\_\_\_\_.
- What do you have for breakfast? (usually) \_\_\_\_\_.
- I can remember his name. (never) \_\_\_\_\_.

## 95.3 Write sentences with *also*. Use the words in parentheses ( ).

- Do you play football? (tennis) *Yes, and I also play tennis.*
- Do you speak Spanish? (Russian) Yes, and I \_\_\_\_\_.
- Are you tired? (hungry) Yes, and \_\_\_\_\_.
- Have you been to England? (Ireland) Yes, \_\_\_\_\_.
- Did you buy any clothes? (some books) \_\_\_\_\_.

## 95.4 Write sentences with *both* and *all*.



I live in  
Buenos Aires.  
I play soccer.  
I'm a student.  
I have a car.

I live in  
Buenos Aires.  
I play soccer.  
I'm a student.  
I have a car.



I'm married. I was born in England.  
I live in Toronto.

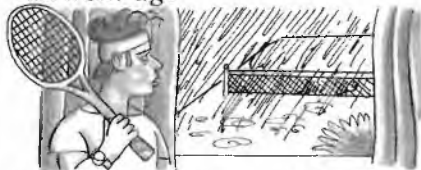


- They both live in Buenos Aires.*  
They \_\_\_\_\_ soccer.  
They \_\_\_\_\_ students.  
\_\_\_\_\_ cars.
- They \_\_\_\_\_ married.  
They \_\_\_\_\_ England.  
\_\_\_\_\_.

## A

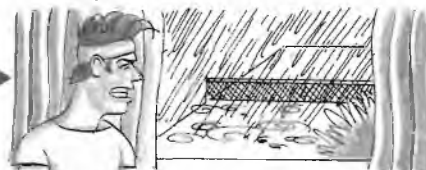
still

an hour ago



An hour ago it was raining.

now



It is still raining now.

still = something is the same as before

- I had a lot to eat but I'm **still** hungry. (= I was hungry before and I'm hungry now)
- "Did you sell your car?" "No, I **still** have it."
- "Do you **still** live in Vancouver?" "No, I live in Montreal now."

## B

yet

20 minutes ago



Twenty minutes ago they were waiting for Bill.

Bill will be here soon.



now

They are **still** waiting for Bill. Bill hasn't come yet.

Where's Bill? He's really late.



yet = until now

We use **yet** in *negative* sentences (He **hasn't** come yet.) and in *questions* (Has he come yet?). **Yet** is usually at the end of a sentence.

- "Where's Diane?" "She **isn't** here yet." (= she will come later)
- "What are you doing tonight?" "I **don't** know yet." (= I will know later)
- "Are you ready to go yet?" "Not yet. In a minute." (= I will be ready, but I'm not ready now)
- "Have you decided what to do yet?" "No, I'm still thinking about it."

Compare yet and still:

- She **hasn't** left yet. = She's **still** here. (*not* she's yet here)
- I **haven't** finished my homework yet. (= I'm **still** doing it)

## C

already = earlier than expected

- "What time is John coming?" "He's **already** here."
- "I want to tell you what happened." "That's OK. I **already** know."
- Megan **doesn't** want to go to the movies. She's **already** seen the film.

# Exercises

**96.1** You meet Lisa. The last time you saw her was two years ago. You ask her some questions with *still*.









LISA *two years ago*



I play the piano.  
I have an old car.  
I'm a student.  
I'm studying Japanese.  
I go to the movies a lot.  
I want to be a teacher.

1. *Do you still play the piano?*
2. Do you \_\_\_\_\_?
3. Are \_\_\_\_\_?
4. \_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_\_\_
6. \_\_\_\_\_

**96.2** Write three sentences for each situation. Look at the example carefully.

- |    | <i>before</i>  | <i>now</i>   |   |
|----|--|--|---|
| 1. |                                   |   | (before) <i>They were waiting for the bus</i><br>(still) <i>They are still waiting.</i><br>(yet) <i>The bus hasn't come yet</i> |
| 2. | <i>I'm looking for a job.</i><br> |   | (before) He was _____.<br>(still) He _____.<br>(yet) _____ yet.   |
| 3. |                                   |   | (before) She _____.<br>(still) _____<br>(yet) _____   |
| 4. |                                  |  | (before) They _____.<br>(still) _____<br>(yet) _____  |

**96.3** Write questions with *yet*.

1. You and Sue are going out together. You are waiting for her to get ready. Maybe she is ready now. You ask Sue: *Are you ready yet?*
2. You are waiting for Megan to arrive. She wasn't here ten minutes ago. Maybe she is here now. You ask somebody: \_\_\_\_\_ Megan \_\_\_\_\_?
3. Mary had a blood test and is waiting for the report. Maybe she has gotten the report now. You ask her: \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_?
4. A few days ago you spoke to Tom. He couldn't decide where to go on vacation. Maybe he has decided now. You ask him: \_\_\_\_\_?

**96.4** Complete the sentences. Use *already*.

1. What time is John coming?
2. Do you and Joe want to see the movie?
3. I have to see Julie before she leaves.
4. Do you need a pen?
5. Should I pay the bill?
6. Should I tell Paul about the meeting?

He *'s already* \_\_\_\_\_ here.  
No, we *'ve already seen* \_\_\_\_\_ it.  
It's too late. She \_\_\_\_\_.  
No thanks. I \_\_\_\_\_ one.  
No, it's OK. I \_\_\_\_\_.  
No, he \_\_\_\_\_ . I told him.

**Give me that book! Give it to me!****A**

give/lend/pass/send/show

After these verbs, there are two possible structures:

(give) something to somebody

- I gave the keys to Liz.

(give) somebody something

- I gave Liz the keys.



I the keys

LIZ

**B**

(give) something to somebody

		something	to somebody
That's my book.	Give	it	to me.
These are Sue's keys. Can you	give	them	to her?
Can you	give	these flowers	to your mother?
I	lent	my car	to a friend of mine.
Did you	send	a postcard	to Kate?
We've seen these photos. You	showed	them	to us.

**C**

(give) somebody something

		somebody	something	
	Give	me	that book.	It's mine.
Tom	gave	his mother	some flowers.	
I	lent	John	some money.	
How much money did you	lend	him?		please?
I	sent	you	a postcard.	
Nicole	showed	us	her vacation photos.	
Can you	pass	me	the salt,	

You can also say: **buy/get** somebody something.

- I **bought** my mother some flowers. (= I bought some flowers for my mother)
- Can you **get** me a newspaper when you go out? (= get a newspaper for me)

**D**

Compare:

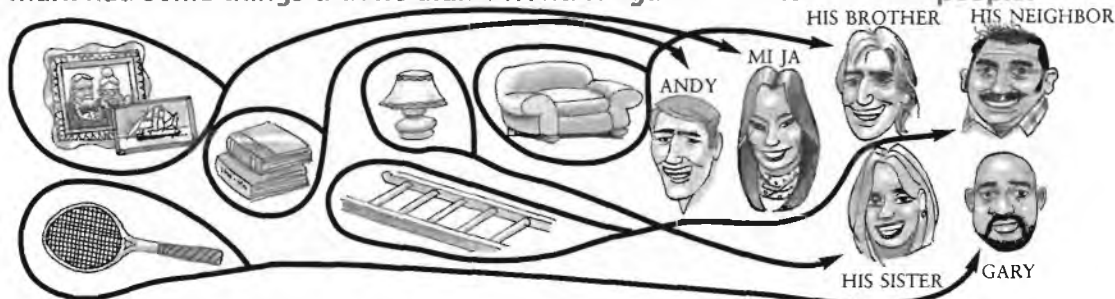
- I gave the keys to Liz.  
I gave Liz the keys. (*but not* I gave to Liz the keys)
- That's my book. Can you give it to me?  
Can you give me that book? (*but not* give to me that book)

We prefer the first structure (give something to somebody) when the *thing* is **it** or **them**.

- I gave **it** to her. (*not* I gave her it)
- Here are the keys. Give **them** to your father. (*not* Give your father them)

# Exercises

97.1 Mark had some things that he didn't want. He gave them to different people.



Write sentences beginning *He gave* . . . .

1. What did Mark do with the armchair?
2. What did he do with the tennis racket?
3. What happened to the books?
4. What about the lamp?
5. What did he do with the pictures?
6. And the ladder?

*He gave it to his brother*

He gave \_\_\_\_\_.

He \_\_\_\_\_.

97.2 You gave some gifts to these people. Write a sentence for each person.



1. *I gave Paul a book*

2. I gave \_\_\_\_\_.

3. I \_\_\_\_\_.

4. \_\_\_\_\_.

5. \_\_\_\_\_.

6. \_\_\_\_\_.

97.3 Write questions beginning *Can you give me ... ? / Can you pass me ... ?*, etc.

1. (you want the salt – pass) *Can you pass me the salt?*
2. (you need an umbrella – lend) Can you \_\_\_\_\_?
3. (you want my address – give) Can \_\_\_\_\_ your \_\_\_\_\_?
4. (you need ten dollars – lend) \_\_\_\_\_
5. (you want some information – send) \_\_\_\_\_
6. (you want to see the letter – show) \_\_\_\_\_
7. (you want some stamps – get) \_\_\_\_\_

97.4 Which is right?

1. I gave to Liz the keys. / I gave Liz the keys. (*I gave Liz the keys* is right.)
2. I'll lend to you some money if you want. / I'll lend you some money if you want.
3. Did you send the letter me? / Did you send the letter to me?
4. I want to buy for you a present. / I want to buy you a present.
5. Can you pass to me the sugar, please? / Can you pass me the sugar, please?
6. This is Megan's bag. Can you give it to her? / Can you give her it?
7. I showed to the officer my driver's license. / I showed the officer my driver's license.

# At 8 o'clock, on Monday, in April, etc.

## A

at



at  
8 o'clock  
10:30  
midnight, etc.  
night  
the end of . . .

- I start work at 8 o'clock.
- The banks close at 5:00.
- I can't sleep at night.
- I'm taking a trip at the end of October.

## B

on



(on) Sunday(s), Monday(s), etc.  
April 25, June 6, etc.  
Monday morning, Tuesday afternoon, Friday night, etc.

You can say:

- Goodbye! See you on Friday. or See you Friday. (with or without on)
- Do you work on Sundays? or Do you work Sundays?
- The concert is on November 20<sup>th</sup>. or The concert is November 20<sup>th</sup>.
- I'm leaving on Friday night. or I'm leaving Friday night.

We say on the weekend / on weekends (always with on).

- They like to go to restaurants on the weekend / on weekends.

## C

in



in April, June, etc.  
2005, 1990, etc.  
the spring/summer/fall/winter  
the morning/afternoon/evening

- I'm taking a trip in October.
- Emma was born in 1984.
- The park is beautiful in the fall.
- Do you often go out in the evening?

## D

We do not use at/on/in before next/last/this/every.

- I'm going to Chicago next Monday. (not on next Monday)
- We go on vacation every summer. Last summer we went to Europe.
- What are you doing this weekend?

## E

in five minutes / in a few days / in six weeks / in two years, etc.



now



in five minutes

- Hurry! The train leaves in five minutes.  
(= it leaves five minutes from now)
- Goodbye! I'll see you in a few days.  
(= a few days from now)

## 98.1 Write at or in.

1. Emma was born in 1984.
2. I got up at 8 o'clock this morning.
3. I like to get up early in the morning.
4. I like to look at the stars at night.
5. My brother got married in May.
6. We often go to the beach in the summer.
7. Let's meet at 7:30 tomorrow evening.
8. The company started in 1989.
9. I'll send you the money at the end of the month.
10. The café is open at the evening. It closes at midnight.

## 98.2 Write at/in/on.

- |                            |   |                                  |
|----------------------------|---|----------------------------------|
| 1. <u>in</u> April         | 6. <u>at</u> September                  | 11. <u>on</u> Friday morning     |
| 2. <u>on</u> June 6        | 7. <u>at</u> September 24 <sup>th</sup> | 12. <u>on</u> Saturday night     |
| 3. <u>at</u> half past two | 8. <u>at</u> the weekend                | 13. <u>at</u> night              |
| 4. <u>in</u> 1987          | 9. <u>at</u> 11:45                      | 14. <u>at</u> the end of the day |
| 5. <u>on</u> Wednesday     | 10. <u>at</u> the morning               | 15. <u>in</u> the winter         |

## 98.3 Which sentence is correct – A, B, or both of them?

A

B

- |  |  |             |
|--|--|-------------|
| 1. I'm taking a trip in October.                     | I'm taking a trip on October.                  | <u>A</u>    |
| 2. Do you work Sundays?                              | Do you work on Sundays?                        | <u>both</u> |
| 3. I always feel tired at the evening.               | I always feel tired in the evening.            | <u>at</u>   |
| 4. I'm leaving next Saturday.                        | I'm leaving on next Saturday.                  | <u>on</u>   |
| 5. Tim started his new job on May 18 <sup>th</sup> . | Tim started his new job May 18 <sup>th</sup> . | <u>on</u>   |
| 6. Laura finished high school in 1998.               | Laura finished high school 1998.               | <u>in</u>   |
| 7. We meet on every Tuesday.                         | We meet every Tuesday.                         | <u>at</u>   |
| 8. We don't often go out in night.                   | We don't often go out at night.                | <u>at</u>   |
| 9. I can't meet you Thursday.                        | I can't meet you on Thursday.                  | <u>on</u>   |
| 10. Lisa saw Sam Monday night.                       | Lisa saw Sam at Monday night.                  | <u>on</u>   |
| 11. I'm leaving in the end of this month.            | I'm leaving at the end of this month.          | <u>at</u>   |
| 12. Tim goes to the gym on Fridays.                  | Tim goes to the gym Fridays.                   | <u>on</u>   |

## 98.4 Write sentences with in.

1. It's 5:25 now. The train leaves at 5:30.  
The train leaves in five minutes.
2. It's Monday today. I'll call you on Thursday.  
I'll call you on Thursday.
3. Today is June 14<sup>th</sup>. My exam is June 28<sup>th</sup>.  
My exam is on June 28<sup>th</sup>.
4. It's 3 o'clock now. Tom will be here at 3:30.  
Tom will be here at 3:30.



From . . . to, until, since, and for

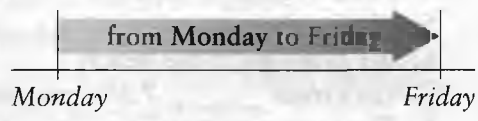
A

from . . . to . . .

- We lived in Canada from 1982 to 1990.
- I work from Monday to Friday.

You can also say from . . . until . . .

- We lived in Canada from 1982 until 1990.



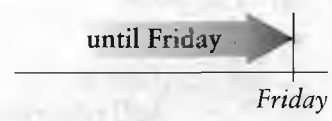
B

until + the end of a period of time

until

Friday  
December  
3 o'clock  
I come back

- They're going away tomorrow. They'll be away until Friday.
- I went to bed early, but I wasn't tired. I read a book until 3 A.M.
- Wait here until I come back.



You can also say till (= until).

- Wait here till I come back.

Compare:

- "How long will you be away?" "Until Monday."
- "When are you coming back?" "On Monday."

C

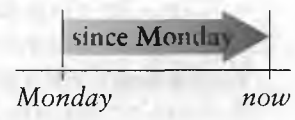
since + a time in the past (to now)

We use since after the *present perfect* (have been / have done, etc.).

since

Monday  
1998  
2:30  
I arrived

- John is in the hospital. He has been there since Monday. (= from Monday to now)
- Mr. and Mrs. Han have been married since 1988. (= from 1988 to now)
- It's been raining since I arrived.



Compare:

- We lived in Canada from 1982 to 1990.  
We lived in Canada until 1990.
- Now we live in Japan. We came to Japan in 1990.  
We've lived in Japan since 1990. (= from 1990 until now)

We use for (not since) + a period of time (three days / ten years / a long time, etc.).

- We've lived in Japan for a long time. (not since a long time)

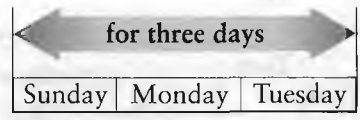
D

for + a period of time

for

three days  
ten years  
ten minutes  
a long time

- Ed stayed with us for three days.
- She's been married for ten years.
- I'm going away for a few weeks.
- I'm going away for the weekend.



# Exercises

## 99.1 Read the information and complete the sentences. Use *from ... to* / *until* / *since*.

ALEX



I live in Japan  
now.  
I lived in Canada  
before.  
I came to Japan  
in 1990.

JIN SOOK



I live in Australia  
now.  
I lived in Korea  
before.  
I came to Australia  
in 2001.

BETH



I work in a  
restaurant now.  
I worked in a  
hotel before.  
I started work in the  
restaurant in 2000.

ADAM



I'm a salesman  
now.  
I was a teacher  
before.  
I started work as a  
salesman in 1999.

- (Alex / Canada / 1982–1990) Alex lived in Canada from 1982 to 1990.
- (Alex / Canada / → 1990) Alex lived in Canada \_\_\_\_\_ 1990.
- (Alex / Japan / 1990 →) Alex has lived in Japan \_\_\_\_\_.
- (Jin Sook / Korea / → 2001) Jin Sook lived in \_\_\_\_\_.
- (Jin Sook / Australia / 2001 →) Jin Sook has lived in \_\_\_\_\_.
- (Beth / a hotel / 1999–2000) Beth worked \_\_\_\_\_ 1999 \_\_\_\_\_.
- (Beth / a restaurant / 2000 →) Beth has worked \_\_\_\_\_.
- (Adam / a teacher / 1995–1999) Adam was a \_\_\_\_\_.
- (Adam / a salesman / 1999 →) Adam has been \_\_\_\_\_.

### Now write sentences with *for*.

- (Alex / Canada) Alex lived in Canada for eight years.
- (Alex / Japan) Alex has lived in Japan \_\_\_\_\_.
- (Jin Sook / Australia) Jin Sook has \_\_\_\_\_.
- (Beth / a hotel) Beth worked \_\_\_\_\_.
- (Beth / restaurant) Beth \_\_\_\_\_.
- (Adam / a teacher) Adam \_\_\_\_\_.
- (Adam / a salesman) Adam \_\_\_\_\_.

## 99.2 Write *until/since/for*.

- Mr. and Mrs. Han have been married since 1988.
- I was tired this morning. I stayed in bed \_\_\_\_\_ 10 o'clock.
- We waited for Sue \_\_\_\_\_ half an hour, but she didn't come.
- "How long have you been here?" "\_\_\_\_\_ seven-thirty."
- "How long did you stay at the party last night?" "\_\_\_\_\_ midnight."
- David and I are good friends. We have known each other \_\_\_\_\_ ten years.
- I'm tired. I'm going to lie down \_\_\_\_\_ a few minutes.
- (in an airplane that's landing) Please stay in your seats \_\_\_\_\_ the plane stops at the gate.
- This is my house. I've lived here \_\_\_\_\_ I was seven years old.
- Ampol is out of town. He'll be away \_\_\_\_\_ Wednesday.
- Next week I'm going to Los Angeles \_\_\_\_\_ three days.
- I usually finish work at 5:30, but sometimes I work \_\_\_\_\_ six.
- "How long have you known Amy?" "\_\_\_\_\_ we were in high school."
- Where have you been? I've been waiting for you \_\_\_\_\_ twenty minutes.

## A

before, during, and after



before the movie



during the movie

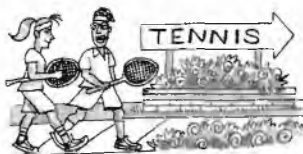


after the movie

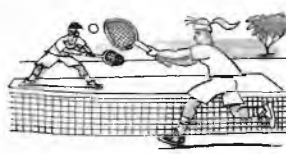
- Everybody is nervous **before** exams.
- I fell asleep **during** the movie.
- We were tired **after** our visit to the museum.

## B

before, while, and after



before we played



while we were playing



after we played

- Don't forget to close the window **before** you go out.
- I often fall asleep **while** I'm reading.
- They watched TV **after** they did the dishes.

## C

during, while, and for

We use **during** + *noun* (during the movie). We use **while** + *verb* (while I'm watching).

- We didn't speak **during** the meal. *but*
- We didn't speak **while** we were eating. (*not* during we were eating)

Use **for** (*not* during) + *a period of time* (three days / two hours / a year, etc.).

- We played tennis **for** two hours. (*not* during two hours)
- I lived in London **for** a year. (*not* during a year)

## D

You can use **before/after** + *-ing* (before going / after eating, etc.).

- I always have breakfast **before** going to work. (= before I go to work)
- **After** doing the dishes, they watched TV. (= after they did)

Do not say "before to go," "after to do," etc.

- **Before** eating the apple, I washed it carefully. (*not* before to eat)
- I started work **after** reading the newspaper. (*not* after to read)

# Exercises

## 100.1 Complete the sentences. Choose from the boxes.

after    during  
before    while

+

lunch    the end    they went to Australia  
the concert    the exam    you're waiting  
the course    the night

- Everybody was nervous before the exam.
- I usually work four hours in the morning and another three hours \_\_\_\_\_.
- The movie was really boring. We left \_\_\_\_\_.
- Anne went to night school to learn German. She learned a lot \_\_\_\_\_.
- My aunt and uncle lived in London \_\_\_\_\_.
- A: Somebody broke a window \_\_\_\_\_. Did you hear anything?  
B: No, I was asleep.
- Would you like to sit down \_\_\_\_\_?
- "Are you going home \_\_\_\_\_?" "Yes, we have to get up early tomorrow."

## 100.2 Write during/while/for.

- We didn't speak while \_\_\_\_\_ we were eating.
- We didn't speak during \_\_\_\_\_ the meal.
- Eric called \_\_\_\_\_ you were out.
- I stayed in Rome \_\_\_\_\_ five days.
- Karen wrote a lot of letters \_\_\_\_\_ she was on vacation.
- The students looked very bored \_\_\_\_\_ the class.
- I fell out of bed \_\_\_\_\_ I was asleep.
- Last night I watched TV \_\_\_\_\_ six hours.
- I don't usually watch TV \_\_\_\_\_ the day.
- Do you ever watch TV \_\_\_\_\_ you're having dinner?

## 100.3 Complete the sentences. Use -ing (doing, etc.).

- After doing \_\_\_\_\_ the dishes, they watched TV.
- I felt sick after \_\_\_\_\_ too much chocolate.
- I'm going to ask you a question. Think carefully before \_\_\_\_\_ it.
- I felt terrible when I got up this morning. I felt better after \_\_\_\_\_ a shower.
- After \_\_\_\_\_ my work, I left the office and went home.
- Before \_\_\_\_\_ to a foreign country, you should learn a little of the language.

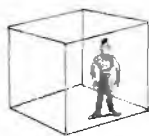
## 100.4 Write sentences with before + -ing and after + -ing.

- They did the dishes. Then they watched TV.  
After doing the dishes they watched TV.
- John finished high school. Then he worked in a department store for two years.  
John worked \_\_\_\_\_.
- I read for a few minutes. Then I went to sleep.  
Before \_\_\_\_\_.
- We walked for three hours. We were very tired.  
After \_\_\_\_\_.
- Let's have a cup of coffee. Then we'll go out.  
Let's \_\_\_\_\_.

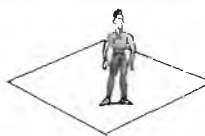
# In, at, and on (Places 1)

## A

in



in a room  
in a store  
in a car  
in the water



in a yard  
in a town  
in a park  
in Brazil

- "Where's David?" "In the kitchen. / In the back yard. / In Tokyo."
- What's in that box / in that bag / in that closet?
- Angela works in a store / in a bank / in a factory.
- I went for a swim in the river / in the pool / in the ocean.
- Milan is in northern Italy.
- I live in a city, but I'd like to live in the country.

## B

at



at the bus stop



at the door



at the traffic light



at her desk

- There's somebody at the bus stop / at the door.
- The car is waiting at the traffic light.
- Julia is working at her desk.

Also: at the top / at the bottom / at the end (of ...)

- Write your name at the top of the page.
- My house is at the end of the block.

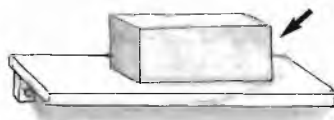
at the top (of the page)



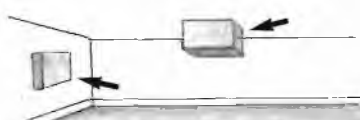
at the bottom (of the page)

## C

on



on a shelf  
on a plate  
on a balcony  
on the floor, etc.

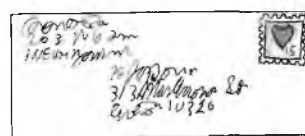


on a wall  
on the ceiling  
on a door, etc.

- There are some books on the shelf and some pictures on the wall.
- There are a lot of apples on those trees.
- Don't sit on the grass. It's wet.
- There's a stamp on the envelope.

Also: on a horse / on a bicycle / on a motorcycle

- Who's that man on the motorcycle?



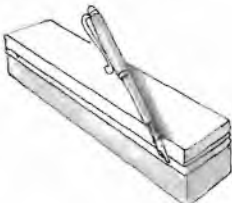





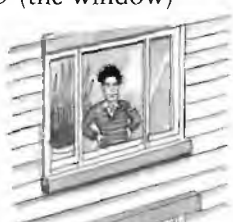





stamp

envelope

# Exercises

101.1 Answer the questions. Use *in/at/on* + the words in parentheses ( ).

1 (the kitchen) 	2 (the box) 	3 (the box) 	4 (the wall) 
5 (the bus stop) 	6 (the field) 	7 (the balcony) 	8 (the pool) 
9 (the window) 	10 (the ceiling) 	11 (the table) 	12 (the table) 

- |                                       |                                   |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. Where is he? <i>In the kitchen</i> | 7. Where are they standing? _____ |
| 2. Where are the shoes? _____         | 8. Where is she swimming? _____   |
| 3. Where is the pen? _____            | 9. Where is he standing? _____    |
| 4. Where is the clock? _____          | 10. Where is the spider? _____    |
| 5. Where is the bus? _____            | 11. Where is he sitting? _____    |
| 6. Where are the horses? _____        | 12. Where is she sitting? _____   |

101.2 Write *in/at/on*.

- Don't sit on the grass. It's wet.
- What do you have \_\_\_\_\_ the bag?
- Look! There's a man \_\_\_\_\_ the roof. What's he doing?
- There are a lot of fish \_\_\_\_\_ this river.
- Our house is number 45 – the number is \_\_\_\_\_ the door.
- "Is the post office near here?" "Yes, turn left \_\_\_\_\_ the traffic light."
- I have a small vegetable garden \_\_\_\_\_ the back yard.
- My sister lives \_\_\_\_\_ Mexico City.
- There's a small park \_\_\_\_\_ the top of the hill.
- I think I heard the doorbell. There's somebody \_\_\_\_\_ the door.
- Munich is a large city \_\_\_\_\_ southern Germany.
- There's a gas station \_\_\_\_\_ the end of the block.
- It's difficult to carry a lot of things \_\_\_\_\_ a bicycle.
- I looked at the list of names. My name was \_\_\_\_\_ the bottom of the list.
- There's a mirror \_\_\_\_\_ the wall \_\_\_\_\_ the living room.

**In, at, and on (Places 2)****A****in**

in bed  
in prison / jail  
in the hospital  
in the sky  
in the world  
in a newspaper / in a book  
in a photograph / in a picture  
in a car / in a taxi  
in the middle (of . . . )

- “Where’s Kate?” “She’s **in** bed.”
- Karen’s husband is **in** jail for driving without a license.
- David’s father is sick. He’s **in** the hospital.
- I like to look at the stars **in** the sky at night.
- What’s the largest city **in** the world?
- I read about the accident **in** the newspaper.
- You look sad **in** this photograph.
- Did you come here **in** your car?
- There’s a big tree **in** the middle of the yard.

**B****at**

at work  
at the station / at the airport  
at the post office / at the supermarket  
at Tracy’s (house) / at the doctor’s  
(office) / at the hairdresser’s, etc.  
at a concert / at a party / at a football  
game, etc.

- “Where’s Kate?” “She’s **at** work.”
- Do you want me to meet you **at** the airport?
- I saw your brother **at** the post office today.
- “Where were you Friday?” “**At** my sister’s.”
- I saw Tom **at** the doctor’s.
- There weren’t many people **at** the party.

You can say **be/stay at home** or **be/stay home** (with or without **at**).

- Is Tom **at home**? or Is Tom **home**?

You can often use **in** or **at** for hotels and restaurants.

- We stayed **at** a nice hotel. or We stayed **in** a nice hotel.

**C**

You can say **in school** or **at school**, but there is a difference.

She’s **at school** = she is there now

- “Where’s your sister? Is she home?” “No, she’s **at school**.”

She’s **in school** = she is a student (in high school / college / medical school, etc.)

- “Does your sister have a job?” “No, she’s still **in school**.”

**D****on**









on a bus / on a train / on a plane / on a boat  
on the first floor (or ground floor) / on the  
second floor, etc.  
on a street  
on the way (to . . . ) / on the way home

- Did you come here **on** the bus?
- The office is **on** the first floor.  
(not in the first floor)
- My brother lives **on** a nice street.
- I met Lee **on** the way to work / **on**  
my way home.



# Exercises

## 102.1 Answer the questions. Use *in/at/on* + the words in parentheses ( ).

1 (the hospital) 	2 (the airport) 	3 (bed) 	4 (a boat) 
5 (the sky) 	6 (a party) 	7 (the doctor's) 	8 (the second floor) 
9 (work) 	10 (a plane) 	11 (a taxi) 	12 (a wedding) 

- Where is she? *In the hospital.*
- Where are they? \_\_\_\_\_
- Where is he? \_\_\_\_\_
- Where are they? \_\_\_\_\_
- Where are the stars? \_\_\_\_\_
- Where are they? \_\_\_\_\_
- Where is Brian? \_\_\_\_\_
- Where is the restaurant? \_\_\_\_\_
- Where is she? \_\_\_\_\_
- Where are they? \_\_\_\_\_
- Where are they? \_\_\_\_\_
- Where are they? \_\_\_\_\_

## 102.2 Write *in/at/on*.

- "Where's your sister? Is she home?" "No, she's at school."
- There was a big table \_\_\_\_\_ the middle of the room.
- What is the longest river \_\_\_\_\_ the world?
- Were there many people \_\_\_\_\_ the concert last night?
- Will you be \_\_\_\_\_ home tomorrow afternoon?
- Who is the man \_\_\_\_\_ this photograph? Do you know him?
- "Is your son going to get married soon?" "No, he's still \_\_\_\_\_ college."
- Eric is coming by train. I'm going to meet him \_\_\_\_\_ the station.
- Charlie is \_\_\_\_\_ the hospital. He had an operation yesterday.
- How many pages are there \_\_\_\_\_ that book?
- "Are you hungry after your trip?" "No, I ate \_\_\_\_\_ the plane."
- I'm sorry I'm late. My car broke down \_\_\_\_\_ the way.
- "Is Tom here?" "No, he's \_\_\_\_\_ his brother's."
- Don't believe everything you see \_\_\_\_\_ the newspaper!
- I walked to work, but I came home \_\_\_\_\_ the bus.
- A (*on the phone*): Can I speak to Anne, please?  
B: No, sorry. She'll be \_\_\_\_\_ the university until 5:00 today.



## A

to

go/come/return/walk (etc.) to ...

to New York →



- We're going to New York next week.
- I want to go to Mexico.
- We walked from my house to the mall.
- What time do you go to bed?



- The bus is going to the airport.
- Karen didn't go to work yesterday.
- I went to a party last night.
- We'd like you to come to our house.

in/at (see Units 101–102)

be / stay / do something (etc.) in ...



- The Statue of Liberty is in New York.
- My brother lives in Mexico.
- The best stores are in the mall.
- I like to read in bed.

be/stay/do (etc.) something at ...



- The bus is at the airport.
- Amy wasn't at work yesterday.
- I met her at a party.
- Amy stayed at her brother's house.

## B

home

go/come/walk (etc.) to home

- I'm tired. I'm going home.  
(not to home)
- Did you walk home?

be/stay (at) home (with or without at)

- I'm staying home tonight. (or I'm staying at home.)
- But: do something (work, watch TV, etc.) at home
- Dan doesn't go to an office. He works at home.  
(not he works home)

## C

arrive and get

arrive in a country or town (arrive in Mexico / arrive in Tokyo, etc.)

- They arrived in Brazil last week. (not arrived to Brazil)

arrive at other places (arrive at the station / arrive at work, etc.)

- What time did you arrive at the hotel? (not arrive to the hotel)

get to (a place)

- What time did you get to the hotel?
- When did you get to Tokyo?

get home / arrive home (no preposition)

- I was tired when I got home. (or I was tired when I arrived home.)

# Exercises

## 103.1 Write *to* or *in*.

1. I like to read *in* bed.
2. We're going \_\_\_\_\_ Italy next month.
3. Sue is on vacation \_\_\_\_\_ Chile right now.
4. I have to go \_\_\_\_\_ the bank today.
5. I was tired, so I stayed \_\_\_\_\_ bed.
6. What time do you go \_\_\_\_\_ bed?
7. Does this bus go \_\_\_\_\_ the airport?
8. Would you like to live \_\_\_\_\_ another country?

## 103.2 Write *to* or *at* if necessary. Sometimes no preposition is necessary.

1. Paula didn't go *to* work yesterday.
2. I'm tired. I'm going \_\_\_\_\_ home. (*no preposition*)
3. Amy is sick. She went \_\_\_\_\_ the doctor.
4. Would you like to come \_\_\_\_\_ a party on Saturday?
5. "Is Liz \_\_\_\_\_ home?" "No, she went \_\_\_\_\_ work."
6. There were 20,000 people \_\_\_\_\_ the football game.
7. Why did you go \_\_\_\_\_ home early last night?
8. A boy jumped into the river and swam \_\_\_\_\_ the other side.
9. There were a lot of people waiting \_\_\_\_\_ the bus stop.
10. We had dinner \_\_\_\_\_ a restaurant, and then we went back \_\_\_\_\_ the hotel.

## 103.3 Write *to*, *at*, or *in* if necessary. Sometimes no preposition is necessary.

1. Joe is coming tomorrow. I'm meeting him *at* the airport.
2. We're going \_\_\_\_\_ a concert tomorrow night.
3. I went \_\_\_\_\_ Chile last year.
4. How long did you stay \_\_\_\_\_ Chile?
5. Next year we hope to go \_\_\_\_\_ Japan to visit some friends.
6. Do you want to go \_\_\_\_\_ the movies tonight?
7. Did you park your car \_\_\_\_\_ the airport?
8. After the accident three people were taken \_\_\_\_\_ the hospital.
9. How often do you go \_\_\_\_\_ the dentist?
10. "Is Diane here?" "No, she's \_\_\_\_\_ Amy's."
11. My house is \_\_\_\_\_ the end of the block on the left.
12. I went \_\_\_\_\_ Mary's house, but she wasn't \_\_\_\_\_ home.
13. There were no taxis, so we had to walk \_\_\_\_\_ home.
14. "Who did you see \_\_\_\_\_ the party?" "I didn't go \_\_\_\_\_ the party."

## 103.4 Write *to*, *at*, or *in* if necessary. Sometimes no preposition is necessary.

1. What time do you get \_\_\_\_\_ work?
2. What time do you get \_\_\_\_\_ home?
3. I arrived \_\_\_\_\_ the party after 9:00.
4. When did you arrive \_\_\_\_\_ Dallas?
5. The plane got \_\_\_\_\_ Paris on time.
6. We arrived \_\_\_\_\_ home very late.

## 103.5 Complete these sentences about yourself. Use *to/in/at*.

1. At three o'clock this morning I was *in bed* \_\_\_\_\_.
2. Yesterday I went \_\_\_\_\_.
3. At 11 o'clock yesterday morning I was \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Someday I'd like to go \_\_\_\_\_.
5. At 9 o'clock last night I was \_\_\_\_\_.

# Next to, between, under, etc.

A

next to / between / in front of / in back of



- Adam is **next to** Bob.
- Bob is **between** Adam and Carla.
- Don is **in front of** Bob.
- Carla is **in back of** Don.

Also:

- Adam is **on the left**.
- Ellen is **on the right**.
- Don is **in the middle** (of the group).

B

across from / in front of



- Anne is sitting **in front of** Bruce.
- Anne is sitting **across from** Christa.
- Christa is sitting **across from** Anne.

C

by (= next to)



by the window

- Our house is **by the ocean**.  
(= next to the ocean)
- Who is that man **by the window**?
- "Is there a pay phone here?"  
"Yes, **by the door**."

D

under



under the table

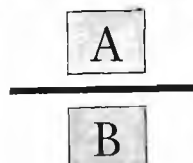


under a tree

- The cat is **under the table**.
- The girl is standing **under a tree**.
- I'm wearing a jacket **under my coat**.

E

above and below



- A is **above the line**.  
(= higher than the line)
- B is **below the line**.  
(= lower than the line)



- The pictures are **above the shelves**.
- The shelves are **below the pictures**.

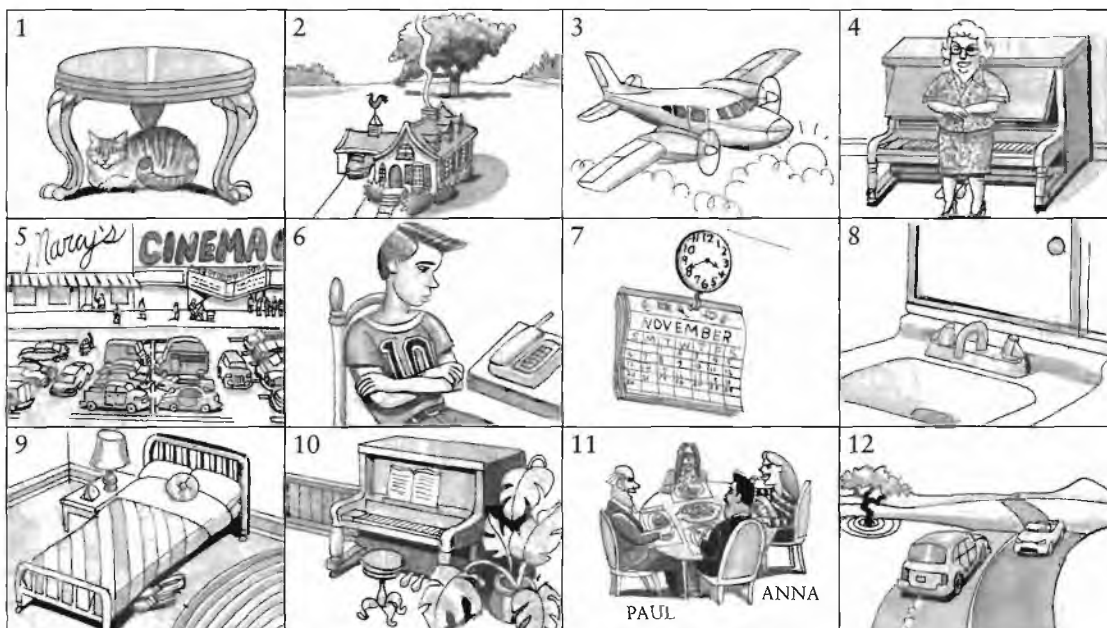
# Exercises

## 104.1 Where are the people in the picture? Complete the sentences.



1. Dot is standing between Alan and Chris.
2. Chris is standing \_\_\_\_\_ Fred.
3. Beth is sitting \_\_\_\_\_ Alan.
4. Emily is sitting \_\_\_\_\_ Beth and Fred.
5. Chris is standing \_\_\_\_\_ Dot.
6. Alan is standing \_\_\_\_\_ Beth.
7. Alan is standing \_\_\_\_\_ left.
8. Fred is sitting \_\_\_\_\_ right.
9. Emily is sitting \_\_\_\_\_ middle.

## 104.2 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences.



1. The cat is under the table.
2. There's a big tree \_\_\_\_\_ the house.
3. The plane is flying \_\_\_\_\_ the clouds.
4. She's standing \_\_\_\_\_ the piano.
5. The movie theater is \_\_\_\_\_ the right.
6. He's sitting \_\_\_\_\_ the phone.
7. The calendar is \_\_\_\_\_ the clock.
8. The cabinet is \_\_\_\_\_ the sink.
9. There are some shoes \_\_\_\_\_ the bed.
10. The plant is \_\_\_\_\_ the piano.
11. Paul is sitting \_\_\_\_\_ Anna.
12. In Japan people drive \_\_\_\_\_ the left.

## 104.3 Write sentences about the picture. Use the words in parentheses ( ).



1. (next to) The bank is next to the bookstore
2. (in front of) The \_\_\_\_\_.
3. (across from) \_\_\_\_\_
4. (next to) \_\_\_\_\_
5. (above) \_\_\_\_\_
6. (between) \_\_\_\_\_

## Up, over, through, etc.



- Tracy is going to Hawaii next week.
- We walked **from** the hotel **to** the restaurant.
- A lot of English words come **from** Latin.

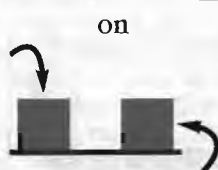


into (in)

- We jumped **into** the water.
  - A man came **out of** the house and got **into** a car.
  - Why are you looking **out of** the window?
  - I took the old batteries **out of** the radio.
- We say **put** something **in** . . . (*not usually into*).
- I **put** new batteries **in** the radio.

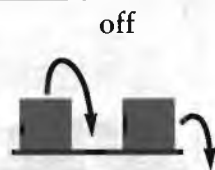


out of

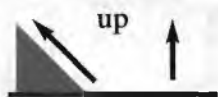


on

- Don't put your feet **on** the table.
- Please take your feet **off** the table.
- I'm going to hang some pictures **on** the wall.
- Be careful! Don't fall **off** your bicycle.
- We got **on** the bus downtown.



off

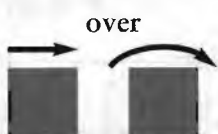


up

- We walked **up** the hill to the house.
- Be careful! Don't fall **down** the stairs.



down

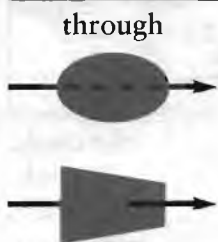


over

- The plane flew **over** the mountains.
- I climbed **over** the wall into the yard.
- Some people say it is unlucky to walk **under** a ladder.

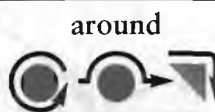


under



through

- A bird flew into the room **through** a window.
- The old highway goes **through** the city.
- The new highway goes **around** the city.
- The bus stop is just **around** the corner.
- I walked **around** the town and took some pictures.



around



around the town

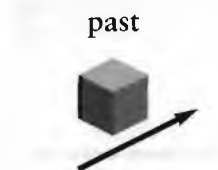


along

- I was walking **along** the street with my dog.
- Let's go for a walk **along** the river.
- The dog swam **across** the river.

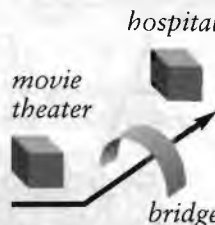


across



past

- They walked **past** me without speaking.
- A: Excuse me, how do I get to the hospital?
- B: Go along this street, **past** the movie theater, under the bridge, and the hospital is on the left.



hospital

movie  
theater

bridge

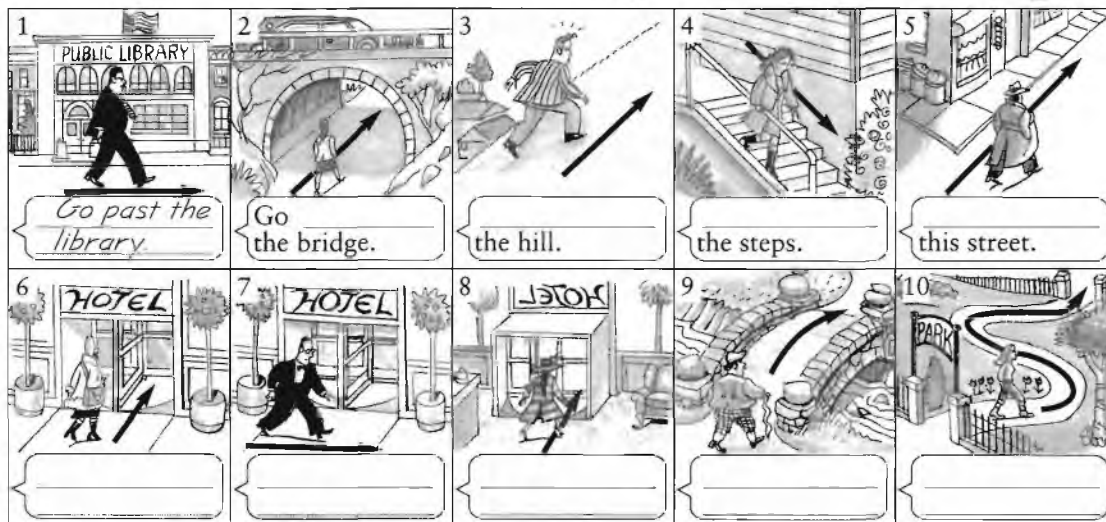
# Exercises

## 105.1 Somebody asks you for directions.

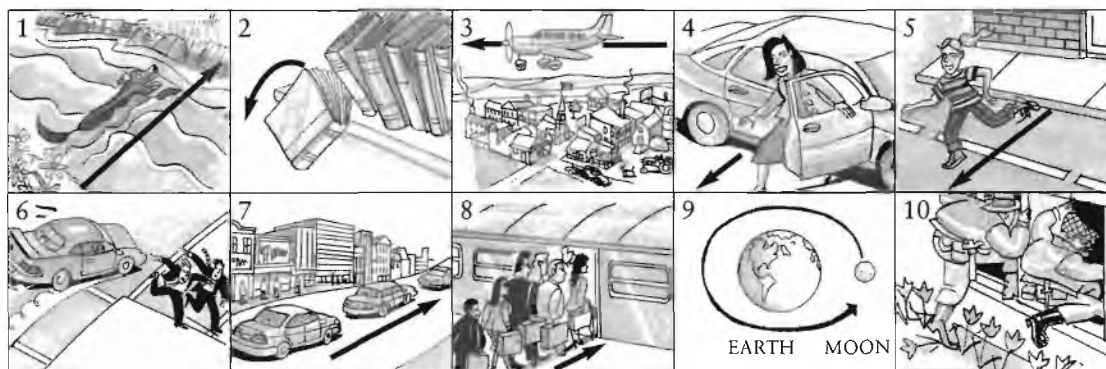
Look at the pictures and write sentences beginning *Go . . .*

Excuse me, where is . . . ?

Go . . .



## 105.2 Look at the pictures. Complete the sentences with a preposition.



- The dog swam across the river.
- A book fell \_\_\_\_\_ the shelf.
- A plane flew \_\_\_\_\_ the town.
- A woman got \_\_\_\_\_ the car.
- A girl ran \_\_\_\_\_ the street.
- Suddenly a car came \_\_\_\_\_ the corner.
- They all drove \_\_\_\_\_ the town.
- They got \_\_\_\_\_ the train.
- The moon travels \_\_\_\_\_ the earth.
- They got \_\_\_\_\_ the house \_\_\_\_\_ a window.

## 105.3 Write a preposition (*over / from / out of*, etc.).

- I looked \_\_\_\_\_ the window and watched the people in the street.
- My house is very near here. It's just \_\_\_\_\_ the corner.
- Do you know how to put film \_\_\_\_\_ this camera?
- How far is it \_\_\_\_\_ here \_\_\_\_\_ the airport?
- We walked \_\_\_\_\_ the museum for an hour and saw a lot of beautiful pictures.
- You can put your coat \_\_\_\_\_ the back of the chair.
- In tennis, you have to hit the ball \_\_\_\_\_ the net.
- Silvia took a key \_\_\_\_\_ her bag and opened the door.



# On, at, by, with, and about

## A

on

on vacation

on television

on the radio

on the phone

on fire

on time (= not late)

- Tracy isn't at work this week. She's **on vacation**.
- We watched the news **on television**.
- We listened to the news **on the radio**.
- I spoke to Carol **on the phone** last night.
- The house is **on fire**! Call the fire department.
- "Was the train late?" "No, it was **on time**."

## B

at (the age of) 21 / at 50 kilometers an hour / at 100 degrees, etc.

- Lisa got married **at 21**. (*or ... at the age of 21*)
- A car uses more gas **at 70 miles an hour** than at 55.
- Water boils **at 100 degrees Celsius**.

## C

by car / by bus / by plane (*or by air*) / by boat / by bicycle, etc.

- Do you like traveling **by train**?
- Can you get there **by bike**?

But: on foot

- You can't get there **by car**.
- You have to go **on foot**.

a book **by ...** / a painting **by ...** /

a piece of music **by ...**, etc.

- Have you read any books **by Charles Dickens**?
- Who is that painting **by**? Picasso?

by after the passive (see Unit 22)

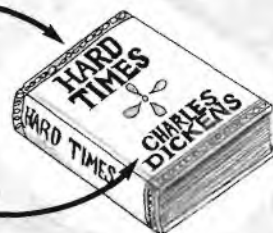
- I was bitten **by** a dog.

by bus



on foot

(the title)  
by  
(the writer)



## D

with/without

- Did you stay at a hotel or **with friends**?
- Wait for me. Please don't go **without me**.
- Do you like your coffee **with or without milk**?
- I cut the paper **with a pair of scissors**.

a man **with** a beard / a woman **with** glasses, etc.

- Do you know that man **with the beard**?
- I'd like to have a house **with a big yard**.


a man with  
a beard

a woman  
with glasses

## E

talk/speak/think/hear/know about ...

- Some people **talk about** their work all the time.
- I don't **know much about** cars.

a book / a question / a program (etc.) about ...

- Did you see the program **about computers** on TV last night?

# Exercises

## 106.1 Complete the sentences. Use *on* + one of these:

the phone ~~the radio~~ TV time vacation

1. We listened to the news on the radio.
2. Please don't be late. Try to be here \_\_\_\_\_.
3. I won't be here next week. I'm going \_\_\_\_\_.
4. "Did you see Nicole?" "No, but I talked to her \_\_\_\_\_."
5. "What's \_\_\_\_\_ tonight?" "There's a movie at 9 o'clock."

## 106.2 Look at the pictures. Complete the sentences with a preposition (*at/by*, etc.).



1. I cut the paper with a pair of scissors.
2. Last year, they took a trip around the world \_\_\_\_\_ boat.
3. Who's the woman \_\_\_\_\_ short hair?
4. They're talking \_\_\_\_\_ the weather.
5. That car is \_\_\_\_\_ fire!
6. She's listening to some music \_\_\_\_\_ Mozart.
7. They're \_\_\_\_\_ vacation.
8. He's reading a book \_\_\_\_\_ grammar \_\_\_\_\_ Vera P. Bull.

## 106.3 Complete the sentences with a preposition (*at/by/with*, etc.).

1. In tennis, you hit the ball \_\_\_\_\_ a racket.
2. It's cold today. Don't go out \_\_\_\_\_ a coat.
3. *Hamlet*, *Othello*, and *Macbeth* are plays \_\_\_\_\_ William Shakespeare.
4. Do you know anything \_\_\_\_\_ computers?
5. My grandmother died \_\_\_\_\_ the age of 98.
6. How long does it take to go from New York to Los Angeles \_\_\_\_\_ plane?
7. I didn't go to the football game, but I watched it \_\_\_\_\_ television.
8. My house is the one \_\_\_\_\_ the red door.
9. These trains are very fast. They can travel \_\_\_\_\_ 200 miles an hour.
10. You can't get there \_\_\_\_\_ car. There's no road.
11. Can you give me some information \_\_\_\_\_ hotels in this town?
12. I was arrested \_\_\_\_\_ two policemen and taken to the police station.
13. The buses here are very good. They're almost always \_\_\_\_\_ time.
14. What would you like to drink \_\_\_\_\_ your meal?
15. We traveled from Paris to Moscow \_\_\_\_\_ train.
16. The museum has some paintings \_\_\_\_\_ Rembrandt.



# Afraid of, good at, etc. (Adjective + Preposition) At -ing, with -ing, etc. (Preposition + -ing)

## A

afraid of / good at, etc. (*adjective + preposition*)

Help!

He's afraid of me.



I'm not very good at math.



I'm tired of my job.



afraid of . . .

angry/mad at somebody  
angry/mad about something

different from . . . /  
different than . . .

full of . . .

good at . . .  
bad at . . .

interested in . . .

married to . . .

nice/kind of somebody to . . .  
nice/kind to somebody

sorry about something  
sorry for somebody

tired of . . .

- Are you afraid of dogs?
- Why are you mad at me? What did I do?
- Are you angry about last night?  
(= something that happened last night)
- Lynn is very different from her sister.  
or Lynn is very different than her sister.
- The room was full of people.
- Are you good at math?
- Tina is very bad at writing letters.
- I'm not interested in sports.
- Sue is married to a dentist. (= her husband is a dentist)
- It was kind of you to help us. Thank you very much.
- David is very friendly. He's always very nice to me.
- I'm sorry about your accident. Was anyone hurt?
- I feel sorry for them. They work hard, but they never have enough money.
- I'm tired of my job. I need a change.

## B

Preposition + -ing

After a preposition (at/with/for, etc.), a verb ends in -ing.

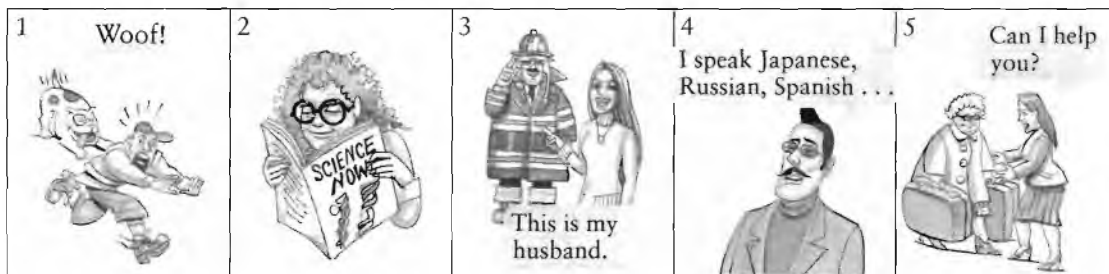
I'm not very good at  
Are you tired of  
Thank you for  
Mark is thinking of  
Tom left without  
After

telling  
doing  
helping  
buying  
saying  
doing

stories.  
the same thing every day?  
me.  
a new car.  
goodbye. (= he didn't say goodbye)  
the housework, they went out.

# Exercises

**107.1** Look at the pictures. Complete the sentences with a preposition (*of, in, etc.*).



1. He's afraid of dogs.
2. She's interested in science.
3. She's married to a firefighter.
4. He's very good at languages.
5. "Can I help you?" "Thanks, that's very nice of you."

**107.2** Write the correct preposition (*of/for/about, etc.*).

1. I'm not interested in sports.
2. I'm not very good at sports.
3. I like Sarah. She's always very nice to me.
4. I'm sorry about your broken window. It was an accident.
5. He's very brave. He isn't afraid of anything.
6. It was very nice of Julia to let us stay in her apartment.
7. Life today is very different from life 50 years ago.
8. Are you interested in politics?
9. I feel sorry for her, but I can't help her.
10. Chris was angry about what happened.
11. These boxes are very heavy. They're full of books.
12. What's wrong? Are you mad at me?

**107.3** Complete the sentences.

1. I'm not very good at telling stories. (good / tell)
2. I wanted to go to the movies, but Paula wasn't interested. (interested / go)
3. Sue isn't very up in the morning. (good / get)
4. Let's go! I'm tired. (tired / wait)
5. Sorry I'm late! thank you (thank you / wait)

**107.4** Complete the sentences. Use *without -ing*.

1. (Tom left / he didn't say goodbye) Tom left without saying goodbye.
2. (Sue walked past me / she didn't speak) Sue walked without speaking.
3. (don't do anything / ask me first) Don't ask me first.
4. (I went out / I didn't lock the door) I went out without locking the door.

**107.5** Write sentences about yourself. Use the words in parentheses ( ).

1. (interested) I'm interested in sports.
2. (afraid) I'm afraid of dogs.
3. (not very good) I'm not very good at swimming.
4. (not interested) I'm not interested in politics.
5. (tired) I'm tired after a long day.

# Listen to . . . , look at . . . , etc. (Verb + Preposition)

## A

ask somebody for . . .

belong to . . .

happen to . . .

listen to . . .

look at . . .

look for . . .

speak/talk to somebody  
about . . .

take care of . . .

thank somebody for . . .

think about . . .  
or think of . . .

wait for . . .

- A man stopped me and asked me for money.
- Does this book **belong to** you? (= Is this your book?)
- I can't find my pen. What **happened to** it?
- Listen to this music. It's great!
- She's **looking at** her watch.
- Look at these flowers! They're beautiful.
- Why are you **looking at** me like that?
- He lost his key.  
He's **looking for** it.
- I'm **looking for** Sarah.  
Have you seen her?
- Did you talk to Paul **about** the problem?
- (*on the phone*) Can I **speak to** Chris, please?
- When Pat is at work, a friend of hers **takes care of** her children.
- Don't lose this book. **Take care of** it.
- Thank you very much for your help.
- He never **thinks about** (*or of*) other people.
- Mark is **thinking of** (*or about*) buying a new car.
- Wait for me! I'm almost ready.



## B

write and call

write (to) somebody

- I never get letters. Nobody **writes to** me. (*or Nobody writes me.*)

call somebody (*no preposition*)

- I have to **call** my parents.  
(*not call to . . .*)

## C

depend

We say **depend on** . . . :

- A: Do you like to eat in restaurants?
- B: Sometimes. It **depends on** the restaurant. (*not it depends of*)

You can say it **depends what/where/how**, etc., with or without **on**.

- A: Do you want to go out with us?
- B: It **depends where** you're going. (*or It depends on where you're going.*)

# Exercises

**108.1** Look at the pictures. Complete the sentences with a preposition (to/for etc.).



1. He's looking at his watch.
2. He's listening to the radio.
3. They're waiting for a taxi.
4. Paul is talking to Tracy.
5. They're looking at a picture.
6. Sue is looking for Tom.

**108.2** Complete the sentences with a preposition (to/for/about, etc.) if necessary.

1. Thank you very much for your help.
2. This isn't my umbrella. It belongs to a friend of mine.
3. Who's going to take care of your dog while you're out of town?
4. (*on the phone*) Can I speak to Mr. Davis, please?
5. (*on the phone*) Thank you for calling. Goodbye.
6. Excuse me, I'm looking for Hill Street. Can you tell me where it is?
7. We're thinking of going to Australia next year.
8. We asked the waiter for tea, but he brought us coffee.
9. "Do you like to read books?" "It depends on the book."
10. John was talking, but nobody was listening to what he was saying.
11. I want to take your picture. Please look at the camera and smile.
12. We waited for Karen until 2 o'clock, but she didn't come.
13. What happened to Mary last night? Why didn't she come to the party?
14. Don't forget to call home your mother tonight.
15. He's alone all day. He never talks to anybody.
16. "How much does it cost to stay at this hotel?" "It depends on the room."
17. Kathy is thinking of changing jobs.
18. I looked at the newspaper, but I didn't read it carefully.
19. When you're sick, you need somebody to take care of you.
20. Barry is looking for a job. He wants to work in a hotel.

**108.3** Answer these questions with *It depends* . . . .

1. Do you want to go out with us? It depends where you're going.
2. Do you like to eat in restaurants? It depends on the restaurant.
3. Do you enjoy watching TV? It depends on the program.
4. Can you do something for me? It depends on how much time I have.
5. Are you leaving town this weekend? It depends on the weather.
6. Can you lend me some money? It depends on how much I need.

# Go in, fall off, run away, etc. (Two-Word Verbs 1)

A *two-word verb* is a verb (go/look/be, etc.) + in/out/up/down, etc.

**in**



- Erin opened the door of the car and **got in**. (= into the car)
- I waited outside the house. I didn't **go in**.

**out**



- The car stopped and two women **got out**. (= out of the car)
- I went to the window and **looked out**.

**on**



- The bus came, and I **got on**.

**off**



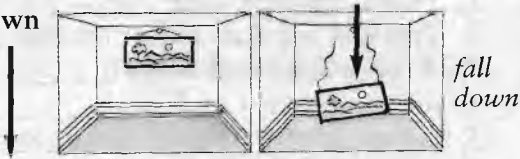
- Be careful! Don't **fall off**.

**up**



- He **stood up** and left the room.
- I usually **get up** early. (= get out of bed)
- We **looked up** at the stars.

**down**



- Would you like to **sit down**?
- The picture **fell down**.
- Lie **down** on the floor.

**away or off**



- The thief **ran away**. (or . . . **ran off**)
- Erin got into the car and **drove away**. (or . . . **drove off**)

**back**



- We went out for dinner and then **went back** to our hotel.
- Go **away** and don't **come back**!

**be/go away** (= in/to another place)

- Erin has **gone away** for a few days.

**be back**

- Erin is **away**. She'll **be back** on Monday.

**around**



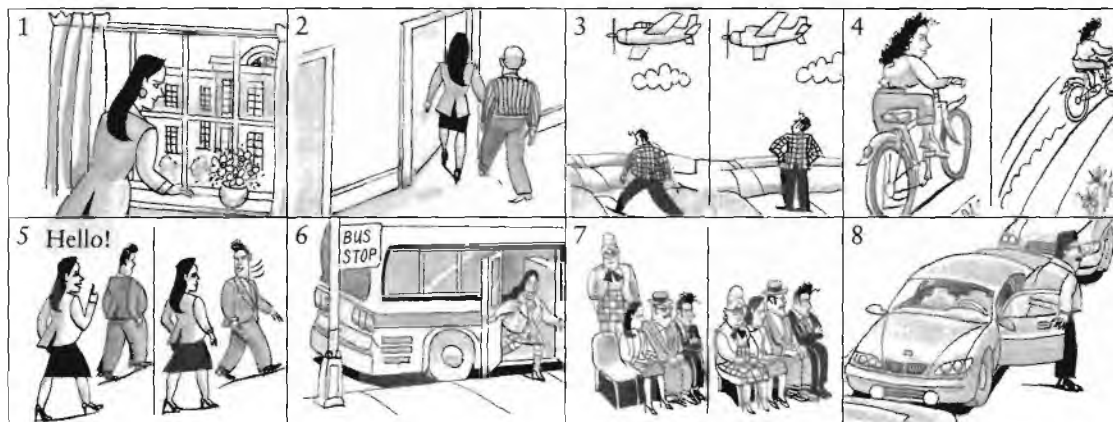
- I'm not sure what kind of car I want. I want to **look around** first.
- Somebody shouted my name, so I **turned around**.
- We went for a long walk. After six miles we **turned around** and went back.



# Exercises

**109.1** Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use the verbs + *in/out/up*, etc.

got got looked looked rode sat turned went



1. I went to the window and looked out.
2. The door was open, so we \_\_\_\_\_.
3. He heard a plane, so he \_\_\_\_\_.
4. She got on her bike and \_\_\_\_\_.
5. I said hello, and he \_\_\_\_\_.
6. The bus stopped, and she \_\_\_\_\_.
7. The seat was free, so she \_\_\_\_\_.
8. A car stopped, and a man \_\_\_\_\_.

**109.2** Complete the sentences. Use *out/away/back*, etc.

1. "What happened to the picture on the wall?" "It fell down."
2. Please don't walk \_\_\_\_\_. Listen to me!
3. She heard a noise in back of her, so she turned \_\_\_\_\_.
4. I'm going \_\_\_\_\_ now to do some shopping. I'll be \_\_\_\_\_ at 5 o'clock.
5. I'm really tired. I'm going to lie \_\_\_\_\_ on the sofa for a few minutes.
6. The Hans don't know the city very well. They need to look \_\_\_\_\_ before buying a house.
7. Jim is from Utah. He lives in Boston now, but he wants to go \_\_\_\_\_ to Utah.
8. We don't have a key to the house, so we can't get \_\_\_\_\_.
9. I was very tired this morning. I couldn't get \_\_\_\_\_.
10. "When are you going \_\_\_\_\_?" "On the fifth. I'm coming \_\_\_\_\_ on the tenth."

**109.3** Complete the sentences. Choose from the boxes. If necessary, put the verb in the correct form. All these verbs (*wake up*, etc.) are in Appendix 6.

break	give	slow	take	work
get	hurry	speak	wake	

+

along	off	up
down	out	

1. I went to sleep at 10 o'clock and wake up at nine o'clock the next morning.
2. The train \_\_\_\_\_ and finally stopped.
3. I tried to find a job, but I \_\_\_\_\_. It was impossible.
4. I like flying, but I'm always nervous when the plane \_\_\_\_\_.
5. It's difficult to hear you. Can you \_\_\_\_\_ a little?
6. This car isn't very good. It has \_\_\_\_\_ many times.
7. Ben has gained weight because he doesn't \_\_\_\_\_ any more.
8. \_\_\_\_\_, we have to leave. The movie starts in ten minutes.
9. Tony doesn't see his sister much. They don't \_\_\_\_\_ very well.

# Put on your shoes and put your shoes on (Two-Word Verbs 2)

## A

Sometimes a two-word verb (**put on** / **take off**, etc.) has an *object*. For example:

verb    object  
**put on** your coat



*put on*



You can say:

**put on** your coat  
**put** your coat **on**

verb    object  
**take off** your shoes



*take off*



You can say:

**take off** your shoes  
**take** your shoes **off**

But **it**/**them** (*pronouns*) always go before **on/off**, etc.

**put it on** (*not put on it*)

**take them off** (*not take off them*)

- It was cold, so I **put on** my coat.  
or ... I **put** my coat **on**.
- Here's your coat. **Put it on**.
- I'm going to **take off** my shoes.  
or ... **take** my shoes **off**.
- Your shoes are dirty. **Take them off**.

## B

More two-word verbs + object

**turn on** / **turn off** (lights, machines, faucets, etc.)

- It was dark, so I **turned on** the light.  
or ... I **turned** the light **on**.
- I don't want to watch this program.  
You can **turn it off**.



on

*turn off*



off

**pick up** / **put down**

- Those are my keys on the floor.  
Can you **pick them up** for me?
- I stopped reading and **put** my book **down**. or ... **put down** my book.



pick up



put down

**bring back** / **take back** / **give back** / **put back**

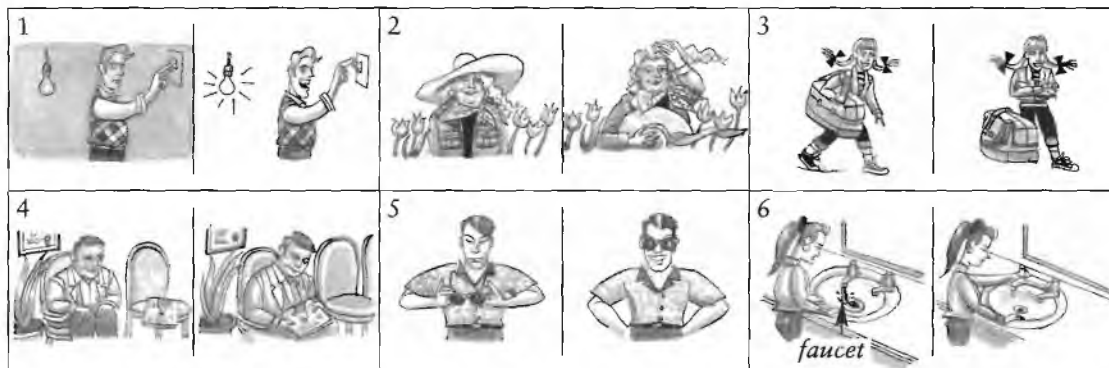
- You can take my umbrella but please **bring it back**.
- I **took** my new sweater **back** to the store.  
It was too small.
- I have Diane's keys. I have to **give them back** to her.
- I read the letter and then **put it back** in the envelope.





# Exercises

## 110.1 Look at the pictures. What did these people do?



1. He turned on the light.
2. She \_\_\_\_\_.
3. She \_\_\_\_\_.
4. He \_\_\_\_\_.
5. He \_\_\_\_\_.
6. She \_\_\_\_\_.

## 110.2 You can write these sentences in three different ways. Complete the table.

- |                          |                            |                        |
|--------------------------|----------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. I turned on the TV.   | <u>I turned the TV on.</u> | <u>I turned it on.</u> |
| 2. He put on his jacket. | He _____.                  | He _____.              |
| 3. I _____.              | I gave the keys back.      | _____.                 |
| 4. She took off her hat. | _____.                     | _____.                 |
| 5. Put down your pens.   | _____.                     | _____.                 |
| 6. _____.                | I turned the lights off.   | _____.                 |

## 110.3 Complete the sentences. Use one of the verbs in the list + *it/them*.

bring pick take ~~turn~~ turn (+ on/off/up/back)

1. I wanted to watch something on television, so I turned it on.
2. My new lamp doesn't work. I'm going to \_\_\_\_\_ to the store.
3. Your gloves were on the floor, so I \_\_\_\_\_ and put them on the table.
4. When I finished working on the computer, I \_\_\_\_\_.
5. Thank you for lending me these books. I won't forget to \_\_\_\_\_.

## 110.4 Complete the sentences. Choose from the boxes. These verbs are in Appendix 7.

your cigarette	ten houses	or	me	them	+	around	down	out	up
some shoes	a glass		it			away	on	over	

1. They tore ten houses down OR down ten houses to build the new road.
2. That music is very loud. Can you turn it down?
3. I knocked \_\_\_\_\_ and broke it.
4. If you don't know a word, you can look \_\_\_\_\_ in a dictionary.
5. I want to keep these magazines. Please don't throw \_\_\_\_\_.
6. Somebody gave me a form and told me to fill \_\_\_\_\_.
7. I tried \_\_\_\_\_ at the store, but I didn't buy them.
8. I visited the school. One of the teachers showed \_\_\_\_\_.
9. Mike loves skiing, but he had to give \_\_\_\_\_ when he hurt his leg.
10. You're not allowed to smoke here. Please put \_\_\_\_\_.



A

and but or so because

We use these words (*conjunctions*) to join two sentences. They make one longer sentence from two shorter sentences:

sentence A   The car stopped.    $\neg$    The driver got out.   sentence B

The car stopped, and the driver got out.

B

and/but/or

*sentence A*

*sentence B*

We stayed at home	and	(we)* watched television.	*We and she are
My sister is married	and	(she)* lives in London.	not necessary here.
He doesn't like her,	and	she doesn't like him.	
I bought a newspaper,	but	I didn't read it.	
It's a nice house,	but	it hasn't got a garage.	
Do you want to go out,	or	are you too tired?	

\*We and she are  
not necessary here.

In lists, we use commas (,). We use **and** between the last two things.

- I got home, had something to eat, sat down to watch TV, **and** fell asleep.
- Amy is at work, Sue went shopping, **and** Chris is playing football.

C

so (the result of something)

*sentence A*

*sentence B*

It was very hot, so we opened the window.  
They had some free time, so they went for a drive.  
I don't like to travel, so I haven't been to many places.

D

**because** (the reason for something)

*sentence A*

*sentence B*

We opened the window **because** it was very hot.  
They didn't go for a drive **because** they didn't have time.  
Lisa is hungry **because** she didn't have breakfast.

Because is also possible at the beginning. We use a comma.

- Because they didn't have time, they didn't go for a drive.

E

In these examples there is more than one conjunction.

- It was late **and** I was tired, so I went to bed.
- I love New York, **but** I wouldn't like to live there **because** it's too big.

# Exercises

## 111.1 Write sentences. Choose from the boxes and use *and*/*but*/*or*.

I stayed at home.  
I bought a newspaper.  
I went to the window.  
I wanted to call you.  
I jumped into the river.  
I usually drive to work.  
Do you want me to come with you?

I didn't have your number.  
Should I wait here?  
~~I didn't read it.~~  
I took the bus this morning.  
~~I watched television.~~  
I swam to the other side.  
I looked out.

1. *I stayed at home and watched television.*
2. *I bought a newspaper, but I didn't read it.*
3. I \_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_\_\_
6. \_\_\_\_\_
7. \_\_\_\_\_

## 111.2 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use *and*/*but*/*so*/*because*.



1. It was very hot, *so he opened the window*.
2. They didn't play tennis \_\_\_\_\_.
3. They went to the museum, \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Bill wasn't hungry, \_\_\_\_\_.
5. Amy was late \_\_\_\_\_.
6. Sue said \_\_\_\_\_.

## 111.3 Write sentences about what you did yesterday. Use the words in parentheses ( ).

1. (and) *Last night I stayed home and studied.*
2. (because) *I went to bed very early because I was tired.*
3. (but) \_\_\_\_\_
4. (and) \_\_\_\_\_
5. (so) \_\_\_\_\_
6. (because) \_\_\_\_\_

## A

When I went out, it was raining.

This sentence has two parts:

**when I went out** + **it was raining**

The **when** part can be first or second.

- { **When I went out**, it was raining.
- { It was raining **when I went out**.

We use a comma (,) if the **when** part is first.

- { **When you're tired**, don't drive.
- { Don't drive **when you're tired**.
- { Joy was very happy **when she passed the exam**.
- { **When Joy passed the exam**, she was very happy.

We do the same in sentences with **before/while/after**.

- { Always look both ways **before** you cross the street.
- { **Before** you cross the street, always look both ways.
- { **While** I was waiting for the bus, it began to rain.
- { It began to rain **while** I was waiting for the bus.
- { He never played football again **after** he broke his leg.
- { **After** he broke his leg, he never played football again.



## B

When I am . . . / When I go . . . , etc.

Next week Kim is going to New York. She has a friend, Lily, who lives in New York, but Lily is also going away – to Mexico. So they won't see each other in New York.

Lily **will be** in Mexico **when** Kim is in New York.

The time is *future* (next week), but we say: . . . **when** Kim is in New York. (*not* when Kim will be)



LILY

KIM

We use the *present* (I am / I go, etc.) with a *future meaning* after **when**.

- **When I get home tonight**, I'm going to take a shower. (*not* When I will get home)
- I can't talk now. I'll talk to you later **when I have** more time.

We do the same after **before/while/after/until**.

- Please close the windows **before** you go out. (*not* before you will go)
- Julia is going to stay in our apartment **while** we are away. (*not* while we will be)
- I'll wait here **until** you come back. (*not* until you will come back)

# Exercises

## 112.1 Write sentences beginning with *when*. Choose from the boxes.

**When +**

I ~~went out~~  
I'm tired  
I called her  
I go on vacation  
the program was over  
I got to the hotel

+

I turned off the TV  
I always go to the same place  
there were no rooms  
~~it was raining~~  
there was no answer  
I like to watch TV

1. *When I went out, it was raining.*
2. \_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_\_\_
6. \_\_\_\_\_

## 112.2 Complete the sentences. Choose from the box.

somebody broke into the house	before they came here	when they heard the news
<del>before they crossed the street</del>	while they were away	they didn't believe me
they went to live in New Zealand		

1. They looked both ways *before they crossed the street*.
2. They were very surprised \_\_\_\_\_.
3. After they got married, \_\_\_\_\_.
4. The letter arrived \_\_\_\_\_.
5. Where did they live \_\_\_\_\_?
6. While they were asleep, \_\_\_\_\_.
7. When I told them the news, \_\_\_\_\_.

## 112.3 Which is right? Choose the correct form.

1. I stay / I'll stay here until you come / ~~you'll come~~ back. (*I'll stay* and *you come* are right.)
2. I'm going to bed when I finish / I'll finish my work.
3. We should do something before it's / it will be too late.
4. Julia is moving soon. I'm / I'll be very sad when she leaves / she'll leave.
5. Don't go out yet. Wait until the rain stops / will stop.
6. We come / We'll come and visit you when we're / we'll be in Toronto again.
7. When I come / I'll come to see you tomorrow, I bring / I'll bring your CDs.
8. I'm going to Quebec next week. I hope to see Sam while I'm / I'll be there.
9. "I need your address." "OK, I give / I'll give it to you before I go / I'll go."

## 112.4 Use your own ideas to complete these sentences.

1. Can you close the window before *you go out* \_\_\_\_\_?
2. What are you going to do when \_\_\_\_\_?
3. When I have more time, \_\_\_\_\_.
4. I'll wait for you while \_\_\_\_\_.
5. When I start my new job, \_\_\_\_\_.
6. Will you be here when \_\_\_\_\_?

# If we go . . . , If you see . . . , etc.

A



If can be at the beginning of a sentence or in the middle.

If at the beginning

If we take the bus, it will be cheaper.  
If you don't hurry, you'll miss the train.  
If you're hungry, have something to eat.  
If the phone rings, can you answer it, please?

if in the middle

It will be cheaper if we take the bus.  
You'll miss the train if you don't hurry.  
I'm going to the concert if I can get a ticket.  
Is it OK if I use your phone?

In conversation, we often use the if part of the sentence alone.

- "Are you going to the concert?" "Yes, if I can get a ticket."

B

if you see Amy tomorrow, etc.

After if, we use the present (*not* will). We say if you see . . . (*not* if you will see).

- If you see Amy tomorrow, can you ask her to call me?
- If I'm late tonight, don't wait for me. (*not* if I will be)
- What should we do if it rains? (*not* if it will rain)
- If I don't feel well tomorrow, I'll stay home.

C

if and when

if I go out = it is possible that I will go out, but I'm not sure

- A: Are you going out later?
- B: Maybe. If I go out, I'll close the windows.

when I go out = I'm going out (for sure)

- A: Are you going out later?
- B: Yes, I am. When I go out, I'll close the windows.
- When I get home tonight, I'm going to take a shower.
- If I'm late tomorrow, don't wait for me. (*not* When I'm late)
- We're going to play tennis if it doesn't rain. (*not* when it doesn't rain)



# Exercises

## 113.1 Write sentences beginning with *If*. Choose from the boxes.

If +

~~you don't hurry~~  
you pass the driving test  
you fail the driving test  
you don't want this magazine  
you want those pictures  
you're busy now  
you're hungry  
you need money

+

we can have lunch now  
you can have them  
I can lend you some  
you'll get your license  
~~you'll be late~~  
I'll throw it away  
we can talk later  
you can take it again

1. *If you don't hurry, you'll be late.*
2. If you pass \_\_\_\_\_.
3. If \_\_\_\_\_.
4. \_\_\_\_\_.
5. \_\_\_\_\_.
6. \_\_\_\_\_.
7. \_\_\_\_\_.
8. \_\_\_\_\_.

## 113.2 Which is right?

1. If I'm / I'll be late tonight, don't wait for me. (*I'm* is right.)
2. Will you write to me if I give / I'll give you my address?
3. If there is / will be a fire, the alarm will ring.
4. If I don't see you tomorrow morning, I call / I'll call you in the afternoon.
5. I'm / I'll be surprised if Mark and Julia get / will get married.
6. Do you go / Will you go to the party if they invite / they'll invite you?

## 113.3 Use your own ideas to complete these sentences.

1. I'm going to the concert if I can get a ticket.
2. If you don't hurry you'll miss the train.
3. I don't want to go swimming if \_\_\_\_\_.
4. If you go to bed early tonight, \_\_\_\_\_.
5. Turn the television off if \_\_\_\_\_.
6. Lisa won't pass her driving test if \_\_\_\_\_.
7. If I have time tomorrow, \_\_\_\_\_.
8. We can go to the beach tomorrow if \_\_\_\_\_.

## 113.4 Write *if* or *when*.

1. If \_\_\_\_\_ I'm late tomorrow, don't wait for me.
2. I'm going shopping now. \_\_\_\_\_ I come back, we can have lunch.
3. I'm thinking of going to see Tim. \_\_\_\_\_ I go, will you come with me?
4. \_\_\_\_\_ you don't want to go out tonight, we can stay home.
5. Do you mind \_\_\_\_\_ I close the window?
6. John is still in high school. \_\_\_\_\_ he finishes, he wants to go to college.
7. Do you want to go on a picnic tomorrow \_\_\_\_\_ the weather is good?
8. We're going to Oslo tomorrow. We're going to look for a hotel \_\_\_\_\_ we get there. I don't know what we'll do \_\_\_\_\_ we don't find a room.

## A

Dan likes fast cars, but he doesn't have one. He doesn't have enough money.

If he **had** the money, he **would** buy a fast car.

Usually **had** is *past*, but in this sentence **had** is *not* past. If he **had** the money = if he had the money *now* (but he doesn't have it).

If I had the money . . .



If	I	had/knew/went (etc.) . . . ,	I	buy . . .
	you	didn't have/know/go (etc.) . . . ,	you	be . . .
it	it	could have/know/go (etc.) . . . ,	it	have . . .
	they, etc.	was/were . . . ,	they, etc.	go . . .

I'd / she'd / they'd, etc. = I would / she would / they would, etc.

- I don't know the answer. If I **knew** the answer, I'd **tell** you.
- It's raining, so we're not going out. We'd **get** wet if we **went** out.
- Ellie lives in a city. She **wouldn't be** happy if she **lived** in the country.
- If you **didn't have** a job, what **would** you do? (but you have a job)
- I'm sorry I can't help you. I'd **help** you if I **could**. (but I can't)
- If we **had** a car, we **could** travel more. (but we don't have a car)

## B

if I were/was . . .

You can say if (I/he/she/it) **were** or **was** . . .

- It's cold. If I **were** you, I'd **put** a coat on.  
(or If I **was** you . . .)
- It's not a good restaurant. I **wouldn't** eat there  
if I **were** you. (or . . . if I **was** you)
- I'd be happier if the weather **were** (or **was**) nicer.

I wouldn't go out if I were you.



## C

Compare:

if I have / if it is, etc.

- I want to go and see Judy.  
If I **have** time, I **will** go today.  
(= maybe I'll have time, so maybe I'll go)
- I like that jacket.  
I'll **buy** it if it **isn't** too expensive.  
(= maybe it is not too expensive)
- I'll **help** you if I **can**. (= maybe I can help)

if I had / if it was, etc.

- I want to go and see Judy.  
If I **had** time, I **would** go today.  
(= I don't have time today, so I won't go)
- I like that jacket, but it's very expensive.  
I'd **buy** it if it **weren't** so expensive. (= it is expensive, so I'm not going to buy it)
- I'd **help** you if I **could**, but I can't.

## 114.1 Complete the sentences.

1. I don't know the answer. If I knew the answer, I'd tell you.
2. I have a car. I couldn't travel much if I didn't have a car.
3. I don't want to go out. If I \_\_\_\_\_ to go out, I'd go.
4. We don't have a key. If we \_\_\_\_\_ a key, we could get into the house.
5. I'm not hungry. I would have something to eat if I \_\_\_\_\_ hungry.
6. Sue enjoys her work. She wouldn't do it if she \_\_\_\_\_ it.
7. You can't drive. If you \_\_\_\_\_ drive, I would lend you my car.
8. He speaks too fast. I could understand him better if he \_\_\_\_\_ more slowly.
9. I have a lot to do today. If I \_\_\_\_\_ so much to do, we could go out.

## 114.2 Write the verb in the correct form.

1. If he had the money, he would buy a fast car. (he / have)
2. If I wanted to learn Chinese, \_\_\_\_\_ to China. (I / go)
3. I haven't told Joy what happened. She'd be angry if \_\_\_\_\_. (she / know)
4. If \_\_\_\_\_ a map, I could show you where I live. (we / have)
5. What would you do if \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of money? (you / win)
6. It's not a very good hotel. \_\_\_\_\_ there if I were you. (I / not / stay)
7. If \_\_\_\_\_ closer to Miami, we would go there more often. (we / live)
8. I'm sorry you have to go. \_\_\_\_\_ nice if you had more time. (it / be)
9. I'm not going to take the job. I'd take it if \_\_\_\_\_ better. (the salary / be)
10. I don't understand cars. If my car broke down, \_\_\_\_\_ what to do. (I / not / know)
11. If you could change one thing in the world, what \_\_\_\_\_ ? (you / change)

## 114.3 Complete the sentences. Choose from the box and put the verb in the correct form.

we (have) a bigger house	<del>it (be) a little cheaper</del>	I (watch) it
we (buy) a bigger house	every day (be) the same	I (be) bored
we (have) some pictures on the wall	the air (be) cleaner	

1. I'd buy that jacket if it were a little cheaper.
2. If there was a good film on TV tonight, \_\_\_\_\_.
3. This room would be nicer if \_\_\_\_\_.
4. If there weren't so much traffic, \_\_\_\_\_.
5. Life would be boring if \_\_\_\_\_.
6. If I had nothing to do, \_\_\_\_\_.
7. We could invite all our friends to stay if \_\_\_\_\_.
8. If we had more money, \_\_\_\_\_.

## 114.4 Complete the sentences. Use your own ideas.

1. I'd go to the dentist if I had a toothache.
2. If I could go anywhere in the world, \_\_\_\_\_.
3. I wouldn't be very happy if \_\_\_\_\_.
4. I'd buy a house if \_\_\_\_\_.
5. If I saw an accident in the street, \_\_\_\_\_.
6. The world would be a better place if \_\_\_\_\_.



# A person who . . . and a thing that/which . . . (Relative Clauses 1)

## A

I can speak six languages.



I met a woman. **She** can speak six languages. 2 sentences

I met a woman **who** can speak six languages. 1 sentence



Jim was wearing a hat. **It** was too big for him. 2 sentences

Jim was wearing a hat **that** was too big for him. 1 sentence

Jim was wearing a hat **or which** was too big for him. 1 sentence

## B

Who is for people (not things).

A thief is a **person**  
Do you know **anybody**  
The **man**  
The **people**

**who** steals things.  
**who** can play the piano?  
**who** called  
**who** work in the office

didn't give his name.  
are very friendly.

## C

That is for things or people.

An airplane is a **machine**  
Amy lives in a **house**  
The **people**

**that** flies.  
**that** is 100 years old.  
**that** work in the office

are very friendly.

You can use **that** for people, but **who** is more usual.

## D

Which is for things (not people).

An airplane is a **machine**  
Amy lives in a **house**

**which** flies. (*not* a machine **who** . . . )  
**which** is 100 years old.

Do not use **which** for people.

■ Do you know the woman **who** sang at the party? (*not* the woman **which** . . . )

# Exercises

**115.1** Choose from the boxes and write sentences: A . . . *is a person who* . . . . Use a dictionary if necessary.

a <del>thief</del>	a dentist
a butcher	a fool
a musician	a genius
a patient	a liar

doesn't tell the truth	is seeing a doctor
takes care of your teeth	<del>steals things</del>
is very intelligent	does stupid things
plays music	sells meat

1. *A thief is a person who steals things.*
2. A butcher is a person \_\_\_\_\_.
3. A musician \_\_\_\_\_.
4. \_\_\_\_\_.
5. \_\_\_\_\_.
6. \_\_\_\_\_.
7. \_\_\_\_\_.
8. \_\_\_\_\_.

**115.2** Make one sentence from two.

1. (A man phoned. He didn't give his name.)  
*The man who phoned didn't give his name.*
2. (A woman opened the door. She was wearing a yellow dress.)  
The woman \_\_\_\_\_ a yellow dress.
3. (Some students took the exam. Most of them passed.)  
Most of the students \_\_\_\_\_.
4. (A police officer stopped our car. He wasn't very friendly.)  
The \_\_\_\_\_.

**115.3** Write *who* or *which*.

1. I met a woman *who* \_\_\_\_\_ can speak six languages.
2. What's the name of the woman \_\_\_\_\_ lives next door?
3. What's the name of the river \_\_\_\_\_ flows through the town?
4. Where is the picture \_\_\_\_\_ was hanging on the wall?
5. Do you know anybody \_\_\_\_\_ wants to buy a car?
6. You always ask questions \_\_\_\_\_ are difficult to answer.
7. I have a friend \_\_\_\_\_ is very good at repairing cars.
8. I think everybody \_\_\_\_\_ went to the party enjoyed it a lot.
9. Why does he always wear clothes \_\_\_\_\_ are too small for him?

**115.4** Right or wrong? Correct the mistakes.

1. A thief is a person which steals things. *a person who steals*
2. An airplane is a machine that flies. *OK*
3. A coffee maker is a machine who makes coffee. \_\_\_\_\_
4. Have you seen the money that was on the table? \_\_\_\_\_
5. I don't like people which never stop talking. \_\_\_\_\_
6. I know somebody that can help you. \_\_\_\_\_
7. I know somebody who works in that store. \_\_\_\_\_
8. Correct the sentences who are wrong. \_\_\_\_\_

# The people we met and the hotel you stayed at (Relative Clauses 2)

## A



The man is carrying a bag. } 2 sentences  
It's very heavy. }

The bag (that) he is carrying is very heavy. 1 sentence



Kim took some pictures. } 2 sentences  
Did you see them? }

Did you see the pictures (that) Kim took? 1 sentence

You can say:

- The bag **that** he is carrying . . . or The bag he is carrying . . . (with or without **that**)
- . . . the pictures **that** Kim took? or . . . the pictures Kim took?

You do not need **that/who/which** when it is the *object*.

subject      verb      object

the man	was carrying	a bag	→ the bag (that) the man was carrying
Kim	took	some pictures	→ the pictures (that) Kim took
you	wanted	the book	→ the book (that) you wanted
we	met	some people	→ the people (who) we met

- Did you find the book you wanted? or . . . the book **that** you wanted?
- The people we met were very nice. or The people **who** we met . . .
- Everything I said was true. or Everything **that** I said . . .

Note that we say:

- The movie **we** saw was very good. (*not* The movie we saw it was . . .)

## B

Sometimes there is a *preposition* (*to/in/at*, etc.) after the verb.

Erica is talking to a man.	→ Do you know the man Erica is talking to?
We stayed at a hotel.	→ The hotel we stayed at was near the station.
I told you about some books.	→ These are the books I told you about. ( <i>not</i> the books I told you about them)

You can say (a place) **where** . . . .

- The hotel **where** we stayed was near the station. (= The hotel we stayed at . . .)

## C

You must use **that/who/which** when it is the *subject* (see Unit 115).

- I met a woman **who** can speak six languages. (**who** is the subject)
- Jim was wearing a hat **that** was too big for him. (**that** is the subject)

# Exercises

## 116.1 Make one sentence from two.

- (Kim took some pictures. Did you see them?)  
Did you see the pictures Kim took?
- (You gave me a pen. I lost it.)  
I lost the \_\_\_\_\_.
- (Sue is wearing a jacket. I like it.)  
I like the \_\_\_\_\_.
- (I gave you some flowers. Where are they?)  
Where are the \_\_\_\_\_?
- (He told us a story. I didn't believe it.)  
I \_\_\_\_\_.
- (You bought some oranges. How much were they?)  
How \_\_\_\_\_?

## 116.2 Make one sentence from two.

- (I was carrying a bag. It was very heavy.)  
The bag I was carrying was very heavy.
- (You cooked a meal. It was excellent.)  
The \_\_\_\_\_.
- (I'm wearing shoes. They aren't very comfortable.)  
The shoes \_\_\_\_\_.
- (We invited some people to dinner. They didn't come.)  
The \_\_\_\_\_.

## 116.3 Complete the sentences. Use the information in the box.

I looked at a map	I was sitting on a chair	you were looking for some keys
they live in a house	we were waiting for a bus	Nicole is dancing with a man
<del>you stayed at a hotel</del>	you spoke to some people	

- What's the name of the hotel you stayed at?
- Who are the people \_\_\_\_\_?
- Did you find the \_\_\_\_\_?
- The \_\_\_\_\_ is too small for them.
- The \_\_\_\_\_ wasn't very clear.
- I fell off \_\_\_\_\_.
- \_\_\_\_\_ was very late.
- Who is \_\_\_\_\_?

## 116.4 Read the situations and complete the questions. Use *where*.

- John stayed at a hotel. You ask him: Did you like the hotel where you stayed?
- Sue had dinner at a restaurant. You ask her:  
What's the name of the restaurant \_\_\_\_\_?
- Sarah lives in a town. You ask her:  
Do you like \_\_\_\_\_?
- Richard works in a factory. You ask him:  
How big is \_\_\_\_\_?

## APPENDIX 2: List of Irregular Verbs

See Unit 25.

<i>base form</i>	<i>simple past</i>	<i>past participle</i>	<i>base form</i>	<i>simple past</i>	<i>past participle</i>
be	was/were	been	lie	lay	lain
beat	beat	beaten	light	lit	lit
become	became	become	lose	lost	lost
begin	began	begun	make	made	made
bite	bit	bitten	mean	meant	meant
blow	blew	blown	meet	met	met
break	broke	broken	pay	paid	paid
bring	brought	brought	put	put	put
build	built	built	quit	quit	quit
buy	bought	bought	read	read*	read*
catch	caught	caught	ride	rode	ridden
choose	chose	chosen	ring	rang	rung
come	came	come	rise	rose	risen
cost	cost	cost	run	ran	run
cut	cut	cut	say	said	said
do	did	done	see	saw	seen
draw	drew	drawn	sell	sold	sold
drink	drank	drunk	send	sent	sent
drive	drove	driven	shine	shone	shone
eat	ate	eaten	shoot	shot	shot
fall	fell	fallen	show	showed	shown/showed
feel	felt	felt	shut	shut	shut
fight	fought	fought	sing	sang	sung
find	found	found	sit	sat	sat
fly	flew	flown	sleep	slept	slept
forget	forgot	forgotten	speak	spoke	spoken
get	got	gotten	spend	spent	spent
give	gave	given	stand	stood	stood
go	went	gone	steal	stole	stolen
grow	grew	grown	swim	swam	swum
hang	hung	hung	take	took	taken
have	had	had	teach	taught	taught
hear	heard	heard	tear	tore	torn
hide	hid	hidden	tell	told	told
hit	hit	hit	think	thought	thought
hold	held	held	throw	threw	thrown
hurt	hurt	hurt	understand	understood	understood
keep	kept	kept	wake	woke	woken
know	knew	known	wear	wore	worn
leave	left	left	win	won	won
lend	lent	lent	write	wrote	written
let	let	let			

\*pronounced [red]

## APPENDIX 3: Irregular Verbs in Groups

*Simple past and past participle are the same.*

---

1. cost → cost	let → let
cut → cut	put → put
hit → hit	quit → quit
hurt → hurt	shut → shut

---

2. lend → lent	lose → lost
send → sent	shoot → shot
spend → spent	
	light → lit
build → built	sit → sat

---

keep → kept	feel → felt
sleep → slept	leave → left
	meet → met
	dream → dreamed
	or dreamt
	mean → meant

---

3. bring → brought
buy → bought
fight → fought
think → thought

---

catch → caught
teach → taught

---

4. sell → sold
tell → told

---

find → found
have → had
hear → heard
hold → held
read → read*
say → said
*pronounced [red]

---

pay → paid
make → made

---

stand → stood
understand → understood

---

*Simple past and past participle are different.*

---

1. break → broke	broken
choose → chose	chosen
speak → spoke	spoken
steal → stole	stolen
wake → woke	woken

---

2. drive → drove	driven
ride → rode	ridden
rise → rose	risen
write → wrote	written

---

beat → beat	beaten
bite → bit	bitten
hide → hid	hidden

---

3. eat → ate	eaten
fall → fell	fallen
forget → forgot	forgotten
get → got	gotten
give → gave	given
see → saw	seen
take → took	taken

---

4. blow → blew	blown
grow → grew	grown
know → knew	known
throw → threw	thrown
fly → flew	flown

---

draw → drew	drawn
show → showed	shown

---

5. begin → began	begun
drink → drank	drunk
swim → swam	swum

---

ring → rang	rung
sing → sang	sung

---

run → ran	run
-----------	-----

---

6. come → came	come
become → became	become

---

## APPENDIX 4: Short Forms (*he's/I'd/don't*, etc.)

- 4.1** In spoken English, we usually pronounce *I am* as one word. The short form (*I'm*) is a way of writing this.

*I am* → *I'm*  
*it is* → *it's*  
*they have* → *they've*

- *I'm* feeling tired this morning.
- "Do you like this jacket?" "Yes, *it's* very nice."
- "Where are your friends?" "They've gone home."

When we write short forms, we use an *apostrophe* (').

*I am* → *I'm*    *he is* → *he's*    *you have* → *you've*    *she will* → *she'll*

- 4.2** We use 'm / 's / 're / 've / 'd / 'll with *I/he/she*, etc.

	<i>I</i>	<i>he</i>	<i>she</i>	<i>it</i>	<i>we</i>	<i>you</i>	<i>they</i>
<i>am</i> → 'm	<i>I'm</i>						
<i>is</i> → 's		<i>he's</i>	<i>she's</i>	<i>it's</i>			
<i>are</i> → 're					<i>we're</i>	<i>you're</i>	<i>they're</i>
<i>have</i> → 've	<i>I've</i>				<i>we've</i>	<i>you've</i>	<i>they've</i>
<i>has</i> → 's		<i>he's</i>	<i>she's</i>	<i>it's</i>			
<i>had</i> → 'd	<i>I'd</i>	<i>he'd</i>	<i>she'd</i>		<i>we'd</i>	<i>you'd</i>	<i>they'd</i>
<i>will</i> → 'll	<i>I'll</i>	<i>he'll</i>	<i>she'll</i>		<i>we'll</i>	<i>you'll</i>	<i>they'll</i>
<i>would</i> → 'd	<i>I'd</i>	<i>he'd</i>	<i>she'd</i>		<i>we'd</i>	<i>you'd</i>	<i>they'd</i>

- *I've* lost your address.
- *We'll* probably go out tonight.
- *It's* 10 o'clock. *You're* late again.

's = *is* or *has*

- *She's* going out tonight. (*she's* going = *she is* going)
- *She's* gone out. (*she's* gone = *she has* gone)

'd = *would* or *had*

- A: What *would* you like to eat?  
 B: *I'd* like a salad, please. (*I'd* like = *I would* like)
- I told the police that *I'd* lost my passport. (*I'd* lost = *I had* lost)

Do not use 'm / 's / 're / 've / 'd / 'll at the end of a sentence (see Unit 41).

- "Are you tired?" "Yes, *I am*." (*not* Yes, *I'm*)
- *She isn't* tired, but *he is*. (*not* *he's*)

- 4.3** We use short forms with *I/you/he/she*, etc., but you can use short forms (especially 's) with other words too.

- *Who's* your favorite singer? (= *who is*)
- *What's* the time? (= *what is*)
- *There's* a big tree in the yard. (= *there is*)
- *My sister's* working in London. (= *my sister is* working)
- *Paul's* gone out. (= *Paul has* gone out)
- *What color's* your car? (= *What color is* your car?)

#### 4.4 Negative short forms (see Unit 44)

<b>isn't</b> (= is not)	<b>don't</b> (= do not)	<b>hasn't</b> (= has not)
<b>aren't</b> (= are not)	<b>doesn't</b> (= does not)	<b>haven't</b> (= have not)
<b>wasn't</b> (= was not)	<b>didn't</b> (= did not)	<b>hadn't</b> (= had not)
<b>weren't</b> (= were not)		
<b>can't</b> (= cannot)	<b>won't</b> (= will not)	<b>mustn't</b> (= must not)
<b>couldn't</b> (= could not)	<b>wouldn't</b> (= would not)	<b>shouldn't</b> (= should not)

- We went to her house but she **wasn't** at home.
- "Where's David?" "I **don't** know. I **haven't** seen him."
- You work all the time. You **shouldn't** work so hard.
- I **won't** be here tomorrow. (= I will not)

#### 4.5 's (apostrophe + s) can mean different things.

1. 's = is or has (see section 4.2 of this appendix)
2. let's = let us (see Unit 37)
  - The weather is nice. **Let's** go out. (= Let **us** go out.)
3. Kate's camera (= her camera) / my brother's car (= his car) / the manager's office (= his/her office), etc. (see Unit 65)

Compare:

- Kate's camera was very expensive. (Kate's camera = her camera)
- Kate's a very good photographer. (Kate's = Kate is)
- Kate's got a new camera. (Kate's got = Kate has got)



## APPENDIX 5: Spelling

### 5.1 Words + -s and -es (birds/watches, etc.)

*noun* + s (plural) (see Unit 67)

bird → birds

mistake → mistakes

hotel → hotels

*verb* + s (he/she/it -s) (see Unit 5)

think → thinks

live → lives

remember → remembers

But:

+ es after -s / -sh / -ch / -x

bus → buses

pass → passes

address → addresses

dish → dishes

wash → washes

finish → finishes

watch → watches

teach → teaches

sandwich → sandwiches

box → boxes

*also*

potato → potatoes

tomato → tomatoes

do → does

go → goes

-f / -fe → -ves

shelf → shelves

knife → knives

*but* roof → roofs

### 5.2 Words ending in -y (baby → babies / study → studied, etc.)

-y → -ies

study → studies (*not* studys) family → families (*not* familys)

story → stories

city → cities

baby → babies

try → tries

marry → marries

fly → flies

-y → -ied (see Unit 11)

study → studied (*not* studied)

try → tried

marry → married

copy → copied

-y → -ier / -iest (see Units 88 and 91)

easy → easier/easiest (*not* easier/easiest)

happy → happier/happiest lucky → luckier/luckiest

heavy → heavier/heaviest funny → funnier/funniest

-y → -ily (see Unit 87)

easy → easily (*not* easily)

happy → happily

lucky → luckily

heavy → heavily

Y does not change to i if the ending is -ay / -ey / -oy / -uy.

holiday → holidays (*not* holidaias)

enjoy → enjoys/enjoyed

stay → stays/stayed

buy → buys

key → keys

*but*

say → said

pay → paid

(*irregular verbs*)

### 5.3 -ing

Verbs that end in -e (make/write/drive, etc.) → <del>x</del> ing			
make → making	write → writing	come → coming	dance → dancing
Verbs that end in -ie → -ying			
lie → lying	die → dying	tie → tying	

### 5.4 stop → stopped, big → bigger, etc.

Vowels and consonants

*Vowel letters:* a e i o u

*Consonant letters:* b c d f g k l m n p r s t w y

Sometimes a word ends in a *vowel* + a *consonant*, for example, stop, big, get. Before -ing / -ed / -er / -est, the consonant at the end (-p / -g / -t, etc.) is “doubled” (-pp- / -gg- / -tt-, etc.). For example:

V+C					
stop	ST O P	p → pp	stopping	stopped	V = <i>vowel</i> C = <i>consonant</i>
run	R U N	n → nn	running		
get	G E T	t → tt	getting		
swim	SW I M	m → mm	swimming		
big	B I G	g → gg	bigger	biggest	
hot	H O T	t → tt	hotter	hottest	
thin	TH I N	n → nn	thinner	thinnest	

The letters are not doubled:

(1) if the word ends in *two* consonant letters (C + C)

C+C			
help	HE L P	helping	helped
work	WO R K	working	worked
fast	FA S T	faster	fastest

(2) if the word ends in two vowel letters + a consonant letter (V + V + C)

V+V+C			
need	N E E D	needing	needed
wait	W A I T	waiting	waited
cheap	CH E A P	cheaper	cheapest

(3) in longer words (two syllables or more) if the last part of the word is *not* stressed

<i>stress</i>			
happen	HAP-pen	→	happening/happened ( <i>not</i> happenned)
visit	VIS-it	→	visiting/visited
remember	re-MEM-ber	→	remembering/remembered
<i>but</i> prefer	pre-FER ( <i>stress at the end</i> )	→	preferring/preferred
begin	be-GIN ( <i>stress at the end</i> )	→	beginning

(4) if the word ends in -y or -w (At the end of words, y and w are not consonants.)

enjoy/enjoying/enjoyed      snow/snowing/snowed      few/fewer/fewest

## APPENDIX 6: Two-Word Verbs (*look out / take off, etc.*)

This is a list of some important two-word verbs (see Unit 109).

**out**      **look out / watch out** = be careful

- Look out! There's a car coming!

**work out** = exercise (to become stronger or more fit)

- Sarah **works out** at the gym two or three times a week.



**on**      **come on** = be quick / hurry

- Come on! Everybody is waiting for you.

**go on** = continue

- I'm sorry I interrupted you. **Go on.** (= continue what you were saying)
- How long will my cold **go on**, Doctor?

**keep on** = continue (talking, etc.)

- I asked them to be quiet, but they **kept on** talking.

**off**      **take off** = leave the ground (for airplanes)

- The plane **took off** 20 minutes late but landed on time.

*take off*



**up**      **wake up** = stop sleeping

- I often **wake up** in the middle of the night.

**speak up** = speak more loudly

- I can't hear you. Can you **speak up**, please?

**hurry up** = do something more quickly

- **Hurry up!** We haven't got much time.

**clean up** = make neat or clean

- After the party, it took two hours to **clean up**.

**grow up** = become an adult

- What does your son want to do when he **grows up**?

**give up** = stop trying

- I know it's difficult, but don't **give up**.



*wake up*



1980      2002  
*grow up*

**down**      **slow down** = go more slowly

- You're driving too fast. **Slow down!**

**break down** = stop working (for cars/machines, etc.)

- Sue was very late because her car **broke down**.



*break down*

**along**      **get along** = be together without problems

- Do you like living with Mike? Do you two **get along**?
- Sam doesn't visit his parents often. He doesn't **get along** with his father.

## APPENDIX 7: Two-Word Verbs + Object (*put out a fire / try on clothes, etc.*)

This is a list of some important two-word verbs + object (see Unit 110).

**out**      **put out** (a fire / a cigarette)

- The fire department arrived and **put the fire out**.

**cross out** (a mistake / a word, etc.)

- If you make a mistake, **cross it out**.

**fill out** (a form) = complete

- Can you **fill out this form**, please?



**on**      **try on** (clothes) = put on clothes to see if they fit you

- (*in a store*) Where can I **try these pants on**?

**up**      **give up** (something) = stop doing/having something

- Tom's doctor told him he had to **give up smoking**. (= stop smoking)
- Sheila **gave up her job** when her baby was born.

**call up** = call on the telephone

- Sue **called me up** last night. *or* Sue **called me** last night. (*without up*)

**look up** (a word in a dictionary, etc.)

- I didn't know the meaning of the word, so I **looked it up**.

**turn up** = make louder (TV, radio, music, etc.)

- Can you **turn the radio up**? I can't hear it.

**wake up** = make someone stop sleeping

- The baby just fell asleep. Try to be quiet so you don't **wake her up**.

**down**      **tear down** (a building) = demolish

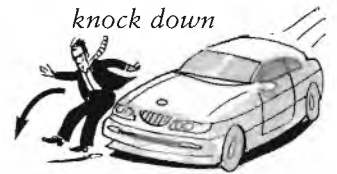
- They are going to **tear down** the school and build a new one.

**knock down** = make (somebody) fall

- A man was **knocked down** by the car.

**turn down** = make quieter (TV, radio, music, etc.)

- The music is too loud. Can you **turn it down**?



**back**      **pay somebody back** (money that you borrowed)

- Thank you for lending me the money. I'll **pay you back** next week.

**away**      **throw away** (things you don't want)

- These apples are bad. Shall I **throw them away**?
- Don't **throw away that picture**. I want it.



**put away** = put something in the place where you usually keep it

- After they finished playing, the children **put their toys away**.

**over**      **knock over** (a cup / a glass, etc.)

- Be careful! Don't **knock your cup over**.

**around**      **show (somebody) around** = take somebody on a tour of a place

- We visited a factory last week. The manager **showed us around**.

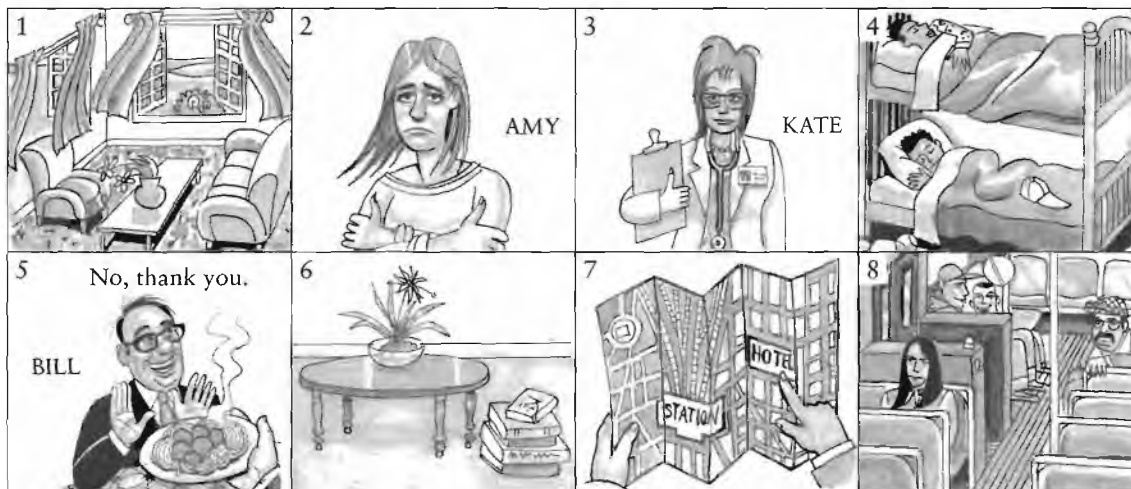
# Additional Exercises

Exercises 1–2	<i>Am/is/are</i>	Units 1–2
Exercise 3	Present Continuous	Units 3–4
Exercise 4	Simple Present	Units 5–7
Exercises 5–7	<i>Am/is/are</i> , Simple Present, <i>have / have got</i>	Units 1–2, 5–7, 9
Exercises 8–9	Present Continuous and Simple Present	Units 3–8
Exercises 10–13	<i>Was/were</i> and Simple Past	Units 10–12
Exercise 14	Simple Past and Past Continuous	Units 11–14
Exercise 15	Present and Past	Units 3–14
Exercises 16–18	Present Perfect	Units 16–20
Exercises 19–22	Present Perfect and Simple Past	Units 16–21
Exercise 23	Present, Past, and Present Perfect	Units 3–21
Exercises 24–27	Passive	Units 22–23
Exercise 28	Future	Units 26–29
Exercise 29	Past, Present and Future	Units 3–21, 26–29
Exercise 30	<i>-ing</i> and <i>to</i> . . .	Units 52–56, 100, 107
Exercises 31–32	<i>A</i> and <i>the</i>	Units 66, 70–74
Exercise 33	Prepositions	Units 98–103, 106

## Am/is/are

Units 1–2

1 Write sentences for the pictures. Use the words in the boxes + *is/isn't/are/aren't*.



The windows  
Amy  
Kate  
The children  
Bill  
The books  
The hotel  
The bus

a doctor  
asleep  
crowded  
~~happy~~  
hungry  
near the station  
on the table  
~~open~~

- The windows are open.*
- Amy isn't happy*
- Kate \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_
- \_\_\_\_\_

## 2 Complete the sentences.

1. "Are you hungry?" "No, but I'm thirsty."
2. "How are your parents?" "They're fine."
3. "Is Lisa at home?" "No, \_\_\_\_\_ at work."
4. "\_\_\_\_\_ my keys?" "In the kitchen."
5. Where is John from? \_\_\_\_\_ American or Canadian?
6. \_\_\_\_\_ very hot today. The temperature is 38 degrees Celsius.
7. "Are you a teacher?" "No, \_\_\_\_\_ a student."
8. "\_\_\_\_\_ your umbrella?" "Green."
9. Where's your car? \_\_\_\_\_ in the parking lot?
10. "\_\_\_\_\_ tired?" "No, I'm fine."
11. "\_\_\_\_\_ these oranges?" "Seventy-five cents each."

---

### Present Continuous (*I'm working / are you working?*, etc.)

Units 3-4

## 3 Write sentences. Use the words in parentheses ( ).

1. A: Where are your parents?  
B: They're watching TV (they / watch / TV)
2. A: Paula is going out.  
B: Where's she going? (where / she / go?)
3. A: Where's David?  
B: \_\_\_\_\_ (he / take / a bath)
4. A: \_\_\_\_\_ (the children / play?)  
B: No, they're asleep.
5. A: \_\_\_\_\_ (it / rain?)  
B: No, not any more.
6. A: Where are Sue and Steve?  
B: \_\_\_\_\_ (they / come / now)
7. A: \_\_\_\_\_ (why / you / stand / here?)  
B: \_\_\_\_\_ (I / wait / for somebody)

---

### Simple Present (*I work / she doesn't work / do you work?*, etc.)

Units 5-7

## 4 Complete the sentences. Use the simple present.

1. Sue always gets to work early. (Sue / always / get)
2. We don't watch TV very often. (we / not / watch)
3. How often do you wash your hair? (you / wash)
4. I want to go to the movies, but \_\_\_\_\_ to go. (Chris / not / want)
5. \_\_\_\_\_ to go out tonight? (you / want)
6. \_\_\_\_\_ near here? (Amy / live)
7. \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of people. (Sarah / know)
8. I enjoy traveling, but \_\_\_\_\_ very much. (I / not / travel)
9. What time \_\_\_\_\_ in the morning? (you / usually / get up)
10. My parents are usually home in the evening.  
\_\_\_\_\_ very often. (they / not / go out)
11. \_\_\_\_\_ work at five o'clock. (Adam / always / leave)
12. A: What \_\_\_\_\_ ? (Kim / do)  
B: \_\_\_\_\_ in a hotel. (she / work)

**5 Read the questions and Claire's answers. Write sentences about Claire.**

CLAIRE

- Are you married? No.  
Do you live in Toronto? Yes.  
Are you a student? Yes.  
Do you have a car? No.  
Do you go out a lot? Yes.  
Do you have a lot of friends? Yes.  
Do you like Toronto? No.  
Do you like to dance? Yes.  
Are you interested in sports? No.



1. *She isn't married.*  
2. *She lives in Toronto.*  
3. \_\_\_\_\_  
4. \_\_\_\_\_  
5. \_\_\_\_\_  
6. \_\_\_\_\_  
7. \_\_\_\_\_  
8. \_\_\_\_\_  
9. \_\_\_\_\_

**6 Complete the questions.**

1. *What's your name* \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
\_\_\_\_\_ married?  
Where \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
\_\_\_\_\_ any children?  
How \_\_\_\_\_ ?

Brian.  
Yes, I am.  
On State Street.  
Yes, a daughter.  
She's three.



2. \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
\_\_\_\_\_ ?  
\_\_\_\_\_ your job?  
\_\_\_\_\_ a car?  
\_\_\_\_\_ to work?

I'm 29.  
I work in a supermarket.  
No, I hate it.  
Yes, I do.  
No, I usually take the bus.



3. Who is this man?  
\_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_ in New York?












That's my brother.  
Alex.  
He's a travel agent.  
No, Los Angeles.

**7 Write sentences with these words. All of the sentences are present.**

1. (Sarah often / tennis) *Sarah often plays tennis.*  
2. (they / a new car) *They have a new car. OR They've got a new car.*  
3. (my shoes / dirty) *My shoes are dirty.*  
4. (Sonia / 32 years old) Sonia \_\_\_\_\_  
5. (he / six sisters) \_\_\_\_\_  
6. (we often / TV at night) \_\_\_\_\_  
7. (Amy never / a hat) \_\_\_\_\_  
8. (my car / a flat tire) \_\_\_\_\_  
9. (these flowers / beautiful) \_\_\_\_\_  
10. (Mary / German very well) \_\_\_\_\_

8 Complete the sentences.

<p>1 (I / work) Please be quiet. <i>I'm working.</i></p> 	<p>2 (you / often go) <i>Do you often go</i> to the movies?</p> 	<p>3 (you / cook) What _____ ?</p> 
<p>4 (play) Roy the piano very well.</p> 	<p>5 (I / leave) _____ now. Good night.</p> 	<p>6 (it / rain) Can I take this umbrella?</p> 
<p>7 (I / not / watch) _____ TV very much.</p> 	<p>8 (we / look) Excuse me, _____ for the museum.</p> 	<p>9 (you / pronounce) What's this word? How _____ it?</p> 

9 Which is right?

1. "Are you speaking / Do you speak English?" "Yes, a little." (*Do you speak* is right.)
2. Sometimes *we're going* / *we go* away on weekends.
3. It's a nice day today. The sun *is shining* / *shines*.
4. (*You meet Amy in the street.*) Hello, Amy. Where *are you going* / *do you go*?
5. How often *are you taking* / *do you take* a vacation?
6. Emily is a writer. *She's writing* / *She writes* books for children.
7. *I'm never reading* / *I never read* newspapers.
8. "Where are Ed and Lee?" "*They're watching* / *They watch* TV in the living room."
9. Beth is in her office. *She's talking* / *She talks* to somebody.
10. What time *are you usually having* / *do you usually have* dinner?
11. John isn't home right now. *He's visiting* / *He visits* some friends.
12. "Would you like some tea?" "No, thank you. *I'm not drinking* / *I don't drink* tea."



## 10 Complete the sentences. Use only one word.

1. I got up early and took a shower.
2. Tom was tired last night, so he \_\_\_\_\_ to bed early.
3. I \_\_\_\_\_ this pen on the floor. Is it yours?
4. Kate got married when she \_\_\_\_\_ 23.
5. Beth is learning to drive. She \_\_\_\_\_ her first lesson yesterday.
6. "I've got a new job." "Yes, I know. David \_\_\_\_\_ me."
7. "Where did you buy that book?" "It was a present. Andy \_\_\_\_\_ it to me."
8. We \_\_\_\_\_ hungry, so we had something to eat.
9. "Did you enjoy the movie?" "Yes, I did. I \_\_\_\_\_ it was very good."
10. "Did Ed come to your party?" "No, I \_\_\_\_\_ him, but he didn't come."

## 11 Look at the questions and Joe's answers. Write about Joe when he was a child.

When you were a child . . .

- |                                |      |
|--------------------------------|------|
| Were you tall?                 | No.  |
| Did you like school?           | Yes. |
| Were you good at sports?       | Yes. |
| Did you play basketball?       | Yes. |
| Did you work hard in school?   | No.  |
| Did you have a lot of friends? | Yes. |
| Did you have a bicycle?        | No.  |
| Were you a quiet child?        | No.  |



JOE

1. He wasn't tall.
2. He liked school.
3. He
4. \_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_\_\_
6. \_\_\_\_\_
7. \_\_\_\_\_
8. \_\_\_\_\_

## 12 Complete the questions.

1. Did you have a nice vacation?
2. Where did you go ?
3. \_\_\_\_\_ there?
4. \_\_\_\_\_ Vancouver?
5. \_\_\_\_\_ ?
6. \_\_\_\_\_ good?
7. \_\_\_\_\_ back?

- Yes, it was great, thanks.  
To Vancouver.  
Five days.  
Yes, very much.  
I have friends there. I stayed with them.  
Yes, it was warm and sunny.  
Yesterday.

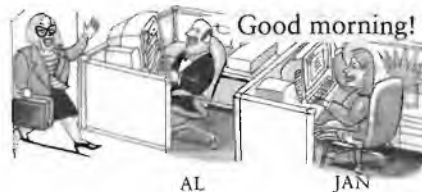
## 13 Put the verb in the right form (positive, negative, or question).

1. It was a good party. I enjoyed it. (I / enjoy)
2. "Did you do the dishes?" (you / do) "No, I didn't have time." (I / have)
3. "Did you call Alan?" "No, I'm sorry. \_\_\_\_\_" (I / forget)
4. I like your watch. Where \_\_\_\_\_ it? (you / get)
5. I saw Lucy at the party, but \_\_\_\_\_ to her. (I / speak)
6. "\_\_\_\_\_ a nice weekend?" (you / have) "Yes, I saw a friend of mine."
7. Paul was sick yesterday, so \_\_\_\_\_ to work. (he / go)
8. "Is Mary here?" "Yes, \_\_\_\_\_ here five minutes ago." (she / get)
9. Where \_\_\_\_\_ before he moved here? (Bob / live)
10. The restaurant wasn't expensive. \_\_\_\_\_ very much. (the meal / cost)

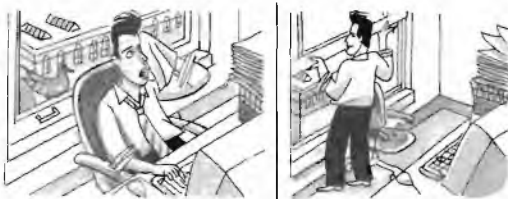
## 14 Complete the sentences. Use the simple past or past continuous.



1. It was raining (rain) when we went (go) out.



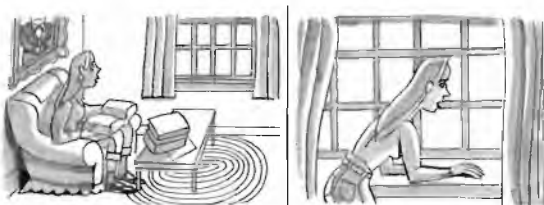
2. When I got to the office, Al and Jan                      (work).



3. I                      (open) the window because it was hot.



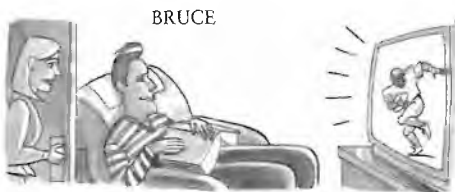
4. The phone                      (ring) while Sue                      (cook) dinner.



5. I                      (hear) a noise, so I                      (look) out the window.



6. Tom                      (look) out the window when the accident                      (happen).



7. Bruce had a book in his hand, but he                      (not / read) it. He                      (watch) TV.



8. Erin bought a magazine, but she                      (not / read) it. She didn't have time.



9. I                      (finish) lunch,                      (pay), and                      (leave) the restaurant.



10. I                      (see) Kate this morning. I                      (walk) along the street, and she                      (wait) for the bus.

15 Complete the sentences. Use one of these forms.

the simple present (*I work*, etc.)    the present continuous (*I am working*, etc.)  
the simple past (*I worked*, etc.)    the past continuous (*I was working*, etc.)

1. You can turn off the TV. I 'm not watching (not / watch) it.
2. Last night Amy fell (fall) asleep while she was reading (read).
3. Listen! Somebody \_\_\_\_\_ (play) the piano.
4. "Do you have my key?" "No, I \_\_\_\_\_ (give) it back to you."
5. David is very lazy. He \_\_\_\_\_ (not / like) to work hard.
6. Where \_\_\_\_\_ (your family / go) for vacation last year?
7. I \_\_\_\_\_ (see) Diane yesterday. She \_\_\_\_\_ (drive) her new car.
8. "\_\_\_\_\_ (you / watch) TV very much?" "No, I don't have a TV."
- 9 A: What \_\_\_\_\_ (you / do) at six o'clock last Sunday morning?  
B: I was in bed asleep.
10. Andy isn't at home very much. He \_\_\_\_\_ (go) out a lot.
11. I \_\_\_\_\_ (try) to find a job right now. It's very hard.
12. I'm tired this morning. I \_\_\_\_\_ (not / sleep) very well last night.

Present Perfect (*I have done / she has been*, etc.)

Units 16-20

16 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use the present perfect.



5. \_\_\_\_\_ to Chile?



6. How long \_\_\_\_\_ here?



7. Do you know Al?

Yes, we \_\_\_\_\_ each other for years.



8. The weather is terrible today. It \_\_\_\_\_ all day.



### 17 Complete the sentences (1, 2 or 3 words).

1. Mark and Liz are married. They have been married for five years.
2. David has been watching TV since five o'clock.
3. Mark is at work. He \_\_\_\_\_ at work since 8:30.
4. "Did you just arrive in Ottawa?" "No, I've been here \_\_\_\_\_ five days."
5. I've known Amy \_\_\_\_\_ we were in high school.
6. "My brother lives in Los Angeles." "Really? How long \_\_\_\_\_ there?"
7. Eric has had the same job \_\_\_\_\_ twenty years.
8. Some friends are staying with us. They \_\_\_\_\_ here since Monday.

### 18 Complete the sentences. Write about yourself.

1. I've never ridden a horse.
2. I've been to Los Angeles many times.
3. I've \_\_\_\_\_  
(once / twice / a few times / many times)
4. I haven't \_\_\_\_\_ yet.
5. I've never \_\_\_\_\_.
6. I've \_\_\_\_\_ since \_\_\_\_\_.
7. I've \_\_\_\_\_ for \_\_\_\_\_.

**19 Present perfect or simple past? Complete the sentences (positive or negative).**

1. A: Do you like London?  
B: I don't know. I haven't been there.
2. A: Have you seen Amy?  
B: Yes, I saw her five minutes ago.
3. A: That's a nice sweater. Is it new?  
B: Yes, I bought it last week.
4. A: Are you tired this morning?  
B: Yes, I went to bed late last night.
5. A: Is that new French movie good?  
B: Yes, really good. I've seen it three times.
6. A: The weather isn't very nice today, is it?  
B: No, but it was nice yesterday.
7. A: Was Lisa at the party on Saturday?  
B: I don't think so. I didn't see her there.
8. A: How long does it take to make pizza?  
B: I have no idea. I don't know pizza.
9. A: Is your son still in school?  
B: No, he graduated college two years ago.
10. A: Is Sylvia married?  
B: Yes, she has been married for five years.
11. A: Have you heard of George Washington?  
B: Of course. He was the first President of the United States.

**20 Write sentences with the words in parentheses ( ). Use the present perfect or the simple past.**

1. A: Have you been to Thailand?  
B: Yes, I went there last year. (I / go / there / last year)
2. A: Do you like London?  
B: I don't know. I've never been there. (I / never / there)
3. A: Where is Paul these days?  
B: He's living in Chicago. He moved there last May. (live / there / since last May)
4. A: Has Erin gone home?  
B: Yes, she left at four o'clock. (she / leave / at four o'clock)
5. A: New York is my favorite city.  
B: Is it? I've been there many times. (how many times / you / there?)
6. A: You look tired.  
B: Yes, I've been tired all day. (I / tired / all day)
7. A: I can't find my address book. Have you seen it?  
B: I found it on the table last night. (it / on the table / last night)
8. A: Is that restaurant good?  
B: Yes, it is. I've eaten there many times. (eat / there / many times)
9. A: Paula and Sue are here.  
B: They are? They arrived at 8 o'clock. (what time / they / arrive?)

**21 Present perfect or simple past? Complete the sentences.**

1. A: Have you been to France?  
 B: Yes, many times.  
 A: When \_\_\_\_\_  
 the last time?  
 B: Two years ago.



2. A: Is this your car?  
 B: Yes, it is.  
 A: How long \_\_\_\_\_ it?  
 B: It's new. I \_\_\_\_\_ it yesterday.



3. A: Where do you live?  
 B: On Maple Street.  
 A: How long \_\_\_\_\_ there?  
 B: Five years. Before that \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_ on Mill Road.  
 A: Really? How long \_\_\_\_\_  
 \_\_\_\_\_ on Mill Road?  
 B: About three years.

Where do  
you live?



4. A: What do you do?  
 B: I work in a store.  
 A: How long \_\_\_\_\_ there?  
 B: Almost two years.  
 A: What \_\_\_\_\_  
 before that?  
 B: I \_\_\_\_\_ taxi driver.

What do you do?



**22 Write sentences about yourself.**

1. (yesterday morning) I was late for work yesterday morning.  
 2. (last night) \_\_\_\_\_  
 3. (yesterday afternoon) \_\_\_\_\_  
 4. (. . . days ago) \_\_\_\_\_  
 5. (last week) \_\_\_\_\_  
 6. (last year) \_\_\_\_\_

**Present, Past, and Present Perfect**

Units 3-21

**23 Which is right?**

1. "\_\_\_\_?" "No, she's on vacation."  
 A. Does Sue work B. Is working Sue C. Is Sue working D. Does work Sue  
 2. "Where \_\_\_\_?" "In Dallas."  
 A. lives your uncle B. does your uncle live C. your uncle lives  
 D. does live your uncle  
 3. I speak Italian, but \_\_\_\_ French.  
 A. I no speak B. I'm not speaking C. I doesn't speak D. I don't speak  
 4. "Where's Tom?" "\_\_\_\_ a shower right now."  
 A. He's taking B. He take C. He takes D. He has taken

5. Why \_\_\_\_ angry with me yesterday?  
A. were you    B. was you    C. you were    D. have you been
6. My favorite film is *Cleo's Dream*. \_\_\_\_ it four times.  
A. I'm seeing    B. I see    C. I seen    D. I've seen
7. I \_\_\_\_ out last night. I was too tired.  
A. don't go    B. didn't went    C. didn't go    D. haven't gone
8. Liz is from Chicago. She \_\_\_\_ there all her life.  
A. is living    B. has lived    C. lives    D. lived
9. My friend \_\_\_\_ for me when I arrived.  
A. waited    B. has waited    C. was waiting    D. has been waiting
10. "How long \_\_\_\_ English?" "Six months."  
A. do you learn    B. are you learning    C. you are learning  
D. have you been learning
11. Joel is Canadian, but he lives in Chile. He has been there \_\_\_\_.  
A. for three years    B. since three years    C. three years ago    D. during three years
12. "What time \_\_\_\_?" "About an hour ago."  
A. has Amy called    B. Amy called    C. did Amy call    D. is Amy calling
13. What \_\_\_\_ when you saw her?  
A. did Sue wear    B. was Sue wearing    C. has Sue worn    D. was wearing Sue
14. "Can you drive?" "No, \_\_\_\_ a car, but I want to learn."  
A. I never drive    B. I'm never driving    C. I've never driven    D. I was never driving
15. I saw Ruth at the train station this morning, but she \_\_\_\_ me.  
A. didn't see    B. don't see    C. hasn't seen    D. didn't saw

## Passive

## Units 22-23, Appendix 1

### 24 Complete the sentences.



1. These houses were built 20 years ago. Before that there was a church here, but the church \_\_\_\_\_ (damage) in a fire and had to \_\_\_\_\_ (tear down).



2. This bridge \_\_\_\_\_ (build) in 1925. It \_\_\_\_\_ (use) by hundreds of people every day. At present the bridge \_\_\_\_\_ (paint).



3. This street \_\_\_\_\_ (call) Kennedy Street. It used to \_\_\_\_\_ (call) Hill Street, but the name \_\_\_\_\_ (change) in 1964.



4. This is a bicycle factory. Bicycles \_\_\_\_\_ (make) here since 1931. It is the oldest bicycle factory in the country. Thousands of bicycles \_\_\_\_\_ (produce) here every year.

**25 Complete the sentences.**

1. We were invited to the party, but we didn't go. (invite)
2. The museum is very popular. Every year it \_\_\_\_\_ by thousands of people. (visit)
3. Many buildings \_\_\_\_\_ in the storm last week. (damage)
4. A new road is going to \_\_\_\_\_ next year. (build)
5. "Where's your jacket?" "It \_\_\_\_\_. It will be ready tomorrow." (clean)
6. She's famous now, but in a few years her name will \_\_\_\_\_. (forget)
7. "Are you happy with your washing machine?" "Not really. It \_\_\_\_\_ three times since we bought it." (repair)
8. Milk should \_\_\_\_\_ in the refrigerator. (keep)
9. \_\_\_\_\_ by a snake? (you / ever / bite)
10. My bag \_\_\_\_\_ from my car yesterday afternoon. (steal)

**26 Write a new sentence with the same meaning.**

1. Somebody has stolen my keys. My keys have been stolen.
2. Somebody stole my car last week. My car \_\_\_\_\_.
3. Somebody wants you on the phone. You \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Somebody has eaten the ice cream. The \_\_\_\_\_.
5. Somebody will repair the machine. The \_\_\_\_\_.
6. Somebody is watching us. We \_\_\_\_\_.
7. Somebody has to buy the food. The \_\_\_\_\_.

**27 Active or passive? Complete the sentences.**

1. They are building a new airport now. (build)
2. These shirts are clean now. They have been washed OR were washed. (wash)
3. "How did you fall?" "Somebody \_\_\_\_\_ me." (push)
4. "How did you fall?" "I \_\_\_\_\_." (push)
5. I can't find my bag. Somebody \_\_\_\_\_ it! (take)
6. My watch is broken. It \_\_\_\_\_ at the moment. (repair)
7. Who \_\_\_\_\_ the camera? (invent)
8. When \_\_\_\_\_? (the camera / invent)
9. The letter was for me, so why \_\_\_\_\_ it to you? (they / send)
10. The information will \_\_\_\_\_ to you as soon as possible. (send)

**Future**

**Units 26-29**

**28 Which is right?**

1. \_\_\_\_\_ a party next Sunday. I hope you can come.  
(A) We're having    B. We'll have
2. Did you hear about Karen? \_\_\_\_\_ her job. She told me last week.  
A. She's going to quit    B. She'll quit
3. There's a program on TV that I want to watch. \_\_\_\_\_ in five minutes.  
A. It starts    B. It's starting
4. The weather is nice now, but I think \_\_\_\_\_ later.  
A. it's raining    B. it will rain



5. "What \_\_\_\_ next weekend?" "Nothing special. Why?"  
A. are you doing B. do you do
6. "When you see Amy, can you ask her to call me?" "OK, \_\_\_\_ her."  
A. I ask B. I'll ask
7. "What would you like to drink, tea or coffee?" "\_\_\_\_ tea, please."  
A. I have B. I'll have
8. Don't take that newspaper away. \_\_\_\_ it.  
A. I'm going to read B. I'll read
9. Rachel is sick, so \_\_\_\_ to the party tomorrow night.  
A. she doesn't come B. she isn't coming
10. I want to meet Sarah at the station. What time \_\_\_\_?  
A. does her train arrive B. is her train arriving
11. "Will you be at home tomorrow night?" "No, \_\_\_\_."  
A. I'm going out B. I go out
12. "\_\_\_\_ you at six tomorrow?" "Yes, fine."  
A. Do I call B. Shall I call

## Past, Present, and Future

Units 3–21, 26–29

### 29 Complete the sentences.

1. A: Did you go (you / go) out last night?  
B: No, \_\_\_\_ (I / stay) home.  
A: What \_\_\_\_ (you / do) ?  
B: \_\_\_\_ (I / watch) TV.  
A: \_\_\_\_ (you / go) out tomorrow night?  
B: Yes, \_\_\_\_ (I / go) to the movies.  
A: What movie \_\_\_\_ (you / see) ?  
B: \_\_\_\_ (I / not / know) .  
\_\_\_\_ (I / not / decide) yet.
2. A: Are you visiting here?  
B: Yes, we are.  
A: How long \_\_\_\_ (you / be) here?  
B: \_\_\_\_ (we / arrive) yesterday.  
A: And how long \_\_\_\_ (you / stay) ?  
B: Until the end of next week.  
A: And \_\_\_\_ (you / like) it here?  
B: Yes, \_\_\_\_ (we / have) a wonderful time.
3. A: Oh, \_\_\_\_ (I / just / remember) –  
\_\_\_\_ (Kim / call) while you were out.  
B: \_\_\_\_ (she / always / call) when I'm not here.  
\_\_\_\_ (she / leave) a message?  
A: No, but \_\_\_\_ (she / want) you to call her back as soon as possible.  
B: OK, \_\_\_\_ (I / call) her now.  
\_\_\_\_ (you / know) her number?  
A: It's in my address book. \_\_\_\_ (I / get) it for you.



4. A: \_\_\_\_\_ (I / go) out with Chris and Steve tonight.  
 \_\_\_\_\_ (you / want) to come with us?  
 B: Yes, where \_\_\_\_\_ (you / go)?  
 A: To the Italian restaurant on North Street.  
 \_\_\_\_\_ (you / ever / eat) there?  
 B: Yes, \_\_\_\_\_ (I / be) there two or three times. In fact I  
 \_\_\_\_\_ (go) there last night, but I'd love to go again!
5. A: \_\_\_\_\_ (I / lose) my glasses again.  
 \_\_\_\_\_ (you / see) them?  
 B: \_\_\_\_\_ (you / wear) them when  
 \_\_\_\_\_ (I / come) in.  
 A: Well, \_\_\_\_\_ (I / not / wear) them  
 now, so where are they?  
 B: \_\_\_\_\_ (you / look) in the kitchen?  
 A: No. \_\_\_\_\_ (I / go) and look now.



### -ing and to . . .

Units 52–56, 100, 107

#### 30 Which is right?

1. Don't forget \_\_\_\_\_ off the light when you leave.  
 A. turn    **B. to turn**    C. turning
2. It's late. I should \_\_\_\_\_ now.  
 A. go    B. to go    C. going
3. I'm sorry but I haven't got time \_\_\_\_\_ to you now.  
 A. for talking    B. to talk    C. talking
4. Bill is always in the kitchen. He enjoys \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. cook    B. to cook    C. cooking
5. We've decided \_\_\_\_\_ away for a few days.  
 A. go    B. to go    C. going
6. You're making too much noise. Can you please stop \_\_\_\_\_?  
 A. shout    B. to shout    C. shouting
7. Would you like \_\_\_\_\_ to dinner on Sunday?  
 A. come    B. to come    C. coming
8. That bag is too heavy for you. Let me \_\_\_\_\_ you.  
 A. help    B. to help    C. helping
9. There's a swimming pool near my house. I go \_\_\_\_\_ every day.  
 A. swim    B. to swimming    C. swimming
10. Did you use a dictionary \_\_\_\_\_ the letter?  
 A. to translate    B. for translating    C. for translate
11. I'd love \_\_\_\_\_ a car like yours.  
 A. have    B. to have    C. to having
12. Could you \_\_\_\_\_ me with this bag, please?  
 A. help    B. to help    C. helping
13. I don't mind \_\_\_\_\_ here, but I'd prefer to sit by the window.  
 A. sit    B. to sit    C. sitting
14. Do you want \_\_\_\_\_ you?  
 A. that I help    B. me to help    C. me helping

15. I always read the newspaper before \_\_\_\_ work.  
A. start B. to start C. starting
16. I wasn't feeling very well, but the medicine made me \_\_\_\_ better.  
A. feel B. to feel C. feeling
17. Shall I call the restaurant \_\_\_\_ a table?  
A. for reserve B. for reserving C. to reserve
18. Tom looked at me without \_\_\_\_ anything.  
A. say B. saying C. to say

## A and the

Units 66, 70-74

### 31 Complete the sentences.

<p>1 Can you pass <u>the sugar</u>, please?</p> 	<p>2 Do you have _____?</p>  <p>No, I can't drive.</p>
<p>3 Have you got any milk? Yes, there's some in _____.</p> 	<p>4 What do you do?</p>  <p>I'm _____.</p>
<p>5 I don't feel very well. I don't want to go to _____.</p> 	<p>6 What did you do last night?</p>  <p>We went to _____.</p>
<p>7 Shall we walk home?</p>  <p>No, let's take _____.</p>	<p>8 Can you play _____?</p>  <p>Yes, but not very well.</p>
<p>9 I'm interested in _____.</p> 	<p>10 What's the difference between those cars?</p>  <p>Nothing. They're _____.</p>

**32 Write a/an or the if necessary.**

1. Who is the best player on your team?
2. I don't watch — television very often.
3. "Is there a bank near here?" "Yes, at the end of this block."
4. I can't ride — horse.
5. — sky is very clear tonight.
6. Do you live here, or are you — tourist?
7. What did you have for — lunch?
8. Who was — first President of — United States?
9. "What time is it?" "I don't know. I don't have — watch."
10. I'm sorry but I've forgotten your name. I can never remember — names.
11. What time is — next train to Boston?
12. Kate never writes — letters. She prefers to call people.
13. "Where's Sue?" "She's in — yard."
14. Excuse me, I'm looking for — Majestic Hotel. Is it near here?
15. Gary was sick — last week, so he didn't go to — work.
16. Everest is — highest mountain in — world.
17. I usually listen to — radio while I'm having — breakfast.
18. I like — sports. My favorite sport is — basketball.
19. Julia is — doctor. Her husband is — art teacher.
20. My apartment is on — second floor. Turn left at — top of — stairs, and it's on — right.
21. After — dinner, we watched — television.
22. I've been to — northern Mexico, but not to — south.

---

**Prepositions****Units 98–103, 106****33 Write a preposition (in/for/by, etc.).**

1. Beth is studying math in college.
2. What is the longest river — Europe?
3. Is there anything — television tonight?
4. We arrived — the hotel after midnight.
5. "Where's Mike?" "He's — vacation."
6. Tom hasn't gotten up yet. He's still — bed.
7. Lisa is away. She's been away — Monday.
8. The next meeting is — April 15.
9. We traveled across Canada — train.
10. There's too much sugar — my coffee.
11. Kevin lived in Chicago — six months. He didn't like it very much.
12. Were there a lot of people — the party?
13. I don't know any of the people — this photograph.
14. The train was very slow. It stopped — every station.
15. I like this room. I like the pictures — the walls.
16. "Did you buy that picture?" "No, it was given to me — a friend of mine."
17. I'm going away — a few days. I'll be back — Thursday.
18. Lynn has gone — Italy. She's — Milan right now.
19. Amy quit school — sixteen and got a job — a bookstore.

# Study Guide

If you are not sure which units you need to study, use this study guide.

You have to decide which alternative is right (A, B, C, etc.). **Sometimes more than one alternative is correct.**

If you don't know (or if you are not sure) which alternatives are correct, study the unit (or units) on the right. You will find the correct sentence in the unit.

The Answer Key to this study guide is on page 296.

## IF YOU ARE NOT SURE WHICH IS RIGHT

## STUDY UNIT

### Present

- |      |   |           |
|------|---|-----------|
| 1.1  | _____ . Can you close the window, please?<br>A. I cold    B. I'm cold    C. I have cold    D. It has cold   | 1         |
| 1.2  | Tom _____ in politics.<br>A. isn't interested    B. not interested    C. doesn't interested    D. don't interest  | 1         |
| 1.3  | "_____ ?" "No, she's out."<br>A. Is at home your mother    B. Does your mother at home<br>C. Is your mother at home    D. Are your mother at home                   | 2         |
| 1.4  | "How much _____ ?" "Fifty cents."<br>A. are these postcards    B. is these postcards    C. these postcards<br>D. do these postcards                                 | 2         |
| 1.5  | Look at Michiko! _____ her new hat.<br>A. She wearing    B. She has wearing    C. She is wearing    D. She's wearing  | 3, 24     |
| 1.6  | You can turn off the television. _____ it.<br>A. I'm not watch    B. I'm not watching    C. I not watching    D. I don't watching                                   | 3, 24     |
| 1.7  | "_____ today?" "No, he's at home."<br>A. Is working Luis    B. Is work Luis    C. Is Luis work    D. Is Luis working  | 4, 24     |
| 1.8  | Look, there's Hannah! _____ ?<br>A. Where she is going    B. Where she go    C. Where's she going<br>D. Where she going   | 4, 24     |
| 1.9  | The earth _____ around the sun.<br>A. going    B. go    C. goes    D. does go    E. is go   | 5, 24     |
| 1.10 | We _____ late on weekends.<br>A. often sleep    B. sleep often    C. often sleeping    D. are often sleep   | 5, 24, 95 |
| 1.11 | We _____ television very often.<br>A. not watch    B. doesn't watch    C. don't watch    D. don't watching  | 6, 24     |
| 1.12 | "_____ on Saturdays?" "No, not usually."<br>A. Do you work    B. Are you work    C. Does you work    D. Do you working  | 7, 24     |
| 1.13 | I don't understand this sentence. What _____ ?<br>A. mean this word    B. means this word    C. does mean this word<br>D. does this word mean    E. this word means | 7, 24     |

- 1.14 Please be quiet. \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. I working B. I work C. I'm working D. I'm work
- 1.15 Tom \_\_\_\_\_ a shower every morning.  
A. takes B. taking C. is taking D. take
- 1.16 What \_\_\_\_\_ on weekends?  
A. do you usually B. are you usually doing C. are you usually do  
D. do you usually do E. you do usually
- 1.17 Li Jing isn't feeling well. \_\_\_\_\_ a headache.  
A. She have B. She have got C. She has D. She's got
- 1.18 Mr. and Mrs. Harris \_\_\_\_\_ any children.  
A. don't have B. doesn't have C. no have D. haven't got

**Past**

- 2.1 The weather \_\_\_\_\_ last week.  
A. is nice B. was nice C. were nice D. nice E. had nice
- 2.2 Why \_\_\_\_\_ late this morning?  
A. you was B. did you C. was you D. you were E. were you
- 2.3 Terry \_\_\_\_\_ in a bank from 1987 to 1998.  
A. work B. working C. works D. worked E. was work
- 2.4 Caroline \_\_\_\_\_ to the movies three times last week.  
A. go B. went C. goes D. got E. was
- 2.5 I \_\_\_\_\_ television yesterday.  
A. didn't watch B. didn't watched C. wasn't watch D. don't watch  
E. didn't watching
- 2.6 "How \_\_\_\_\_ ?" "I don't know. I didn't see it"  
A. happened the accident B. did happen the accident C. does the accident happen  
D. did the accident happen E. the accident happened
- 2.7 What \_\_\_\_\_ at 11:30 yesterday?  
A. were you doing B. was you doing C. you were doing D. were you do  
E. you was doing
- 2.8 Eric was reading a book when the phone \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. ringing B. rang C. was ringing D. was ring
- 2.9 I saw Lucy and Steve this morning. They \_\_\_\_\_ at the bus stop.  
A. waiting B. waited C. were waiting D. was waiting E. were waited
- 2.10 Dave \_\_\_\_\_ in a factory. Now he works in a supermarket.  
A. working B. works C. worked D. use to work E. used to work

**Present Perfect**

- 3.1 My mother \_\_\_\_\_ by plane.  
A. has never travel B. has never traveled C. is never traveled  
D. has never been traveled E. have never traveled

8, 24

8

7, 8, 24

9, 59

9, 59

10

10

11, 24

11

12, 24

12

13

14

14

15

16, 24

- 3.2 \_\_\_\_\_ that woman before, but I can't remember where.  
A. I see B. I seen C. I've saw D. I've seen E. I've seeing 16, 24
- 3.3 "How long \_\_\_\_\_ married?" "Since 1992."  
A. you are B. you have been C. has you been D. are you  
E. have you been 17
- 3.4 "Do you know Lynn?" "Yes, \_\_\_\_\_ her for a long time."  
A. I knew B. I've known C. I know D. I am knowing 17
- 3.5 Richard has been in Canada \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. for six months B. since six months C. six months ago D. in six months 18, 99
- 3.6 "When did Tom go out?" "\_\_\_\_\_."  
A. For ten minutes B. Since ten minutes C. Ten minutes ago  
D. In ten minutes 18
- 3.7 "Is Peter here?" "No, \_\_\_\_\_ home."  
A. he went B. he have gone C. he's went D. he's gone E. he go 19, 21
- 3.8 "Are you hungry?" "No, \_\_\_\_\_ dinner."  
A. I just had B. I just have C. I just having D. I've just had 20
- 3.9 We \_\_\_\_\_ a vacation last year.  
A. don't take B. haven't taken C. hasn't taken D. didn't take  
E. didn't took 21
- 3.10 Where \_\_\_\_\_ on Sunday afternoon? I couldn't find you.  
A. you were B. you have been C. was you D. have you been E. were you 21

**Passive**

- 4.1 This house \_\_\_\_\_ 100 years ago.  
A. is built B. is building C. was building D. was built E. built 22, 24
- 4.2 We \_\_\_\_\_ to the party last week.  
A. didn't invite B. didn't invited C. weren't invited D. wasn't invited  
E. haven't been invited 22, 23
- 4.3 "Where \_\_\_\_\_ born?" "In Los Angeles."  
A. you are B. you were C. was you D. are you E. were you 22
- 4.4 I took the bus this morning because my car \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. is being repaired B. is repairing C. has been repaired D. repaired 23
- 4.5 I can't find my keys. I think \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. they've been stolen B. they are stolen C. they've stolen  
D. they're being stolen 23

**Verb Forms**

- 5.1 It \_\_\_\_\_, so we went out.  
A. wasn't rained B. wasn't rain C. didn't raining D. wasn't raining 24
- 5.2 Somebody \_\_\_\_\_ this window.  
A. has broke B. has broken C. has break D. has break 25

**Future**

- 6.1 Andrew \_\_\_\_\_ tennis tomorrow. 26  
A. is playing B. play C. plays D. is play
- 6.2 \_\_\_\_\_ out tonight? 26  
A. Are you going B. Are you go C. Do you go D. Go you E. Do you going
- 6.3 What time \_\_\_\_\_ tonight? 26  
A. is the concert start B. does the concert start C. starts the concert  
D. does the concert starting
- 6.4 What \_\_\_\_\_ to the party tonight? 27  
A. are you wearing B. are you going to wear C. do you wear  
D. you are going to wear
- 6.5 I think Diana \_\_\_\_\_ her driver's test. 28  
A. passes B. will pass C. will be pass D. will passing
- 6.6 \_\_\_\_\_ to the movies on Saturday. Do you want to come with us? 26, 28  
A. We go B. We'll go C. We're going D. We will going
- 6.7 "\_\_\_\_\_ you tomorrow, OK?" "OK. Goodbye." 29  
A. I call B. I'll call C. I'm calling D. I calling
- 6.8 There's a good program on TV tonight. \_\_\_\_\_ it. 27, 29  
A. I watch B. I'll watch C. I'm going to watch D. I'll watching
- 6.9 It's a nice day. \_\_\_\_\_ for a walk? 29  
A. Do we go B. Shall we go C. Should we go

**Modals, Imperatives, etc.**

- 7.1 \_\_\_\_\_ to the movies tonight, but I'm not sure. 30  
A. I'll go B. I'm going C. I may go D. I might go
- 7.2 "\_\_\_\_\_ here?" "Sure." 30, 31  
A. Can I sit B. Do I sit C. May I sit D. Can I to sit
- 7.3 I'm having a party next week, but Scott and Angela \_\_\_\_\_. 31  
A. can't come B. can't to come C. can't coming D. couldn't come
- 7.4 Before Shu Ling came to Canada, she \_\_\_\_\_ understand much English. 31  
A. can B. can't C. not D. couldn't E. doesn't
- 7.5 You worked ten hours today. You \_\_\_\_\_ tired. 32  
A. must B. can C. must be D. can be E. must to be
- 7.6 Carlos takes the bus everywhere. He \_\_\_\_\_ a car. 32  
A. must have B. must not have C. must not to have D. no have
- 7.7 They were in a dangerous situation. They \_\_\_\_\_ careful. 32, 34  
A. must to be B. must be C. have to be D. had to be E. had be
- 7.8 I \_\_\_\_\_ study tonight, but I think I'll go to the movies. 33  
A. must B. have to C. should D. ought to E. will
- 7.9 What time \_\_\_\_\_ go to the dentist tomorrow? 34  
A. you must B. you have to C. have you to D. do you have to



- 7.10 “\_\_\_\_\_ some coffee?” “No, thank you.”  
A. Are you liking B. You like C. Would you like D. Do you like
- 7.11 I don't really want to go out. \_\_\_\_\_ home.  
A. I rather stay B. I'd rather stay C. I'd rather to stay D. I'd prefer to stay
- 7.12 Stay here. Please \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. don't go B. you no go C. you not to go D. go not
- 7.13 It's a nice day. \_\_\_\_\_ out.  
A. Let's to go B. Let's go C. Let's to go D. We go

### There and it

- 8.1 Excuse me, \_\_\_\_\_ a hotel near here?  
A. has there B. is there C. there is D. is it
- 8.2 \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of accidents on this road.  
A. Have B. It has C. There have D. They are E. There are
- 8.3 When I got home, I was hungry, but \_\_\_\_\_ anything to eat.  
A. there wasn't B. there weren't C. it wasn't D. there hasn't been
- 8.4 \_\_\_\_\_ three miles from our house to the mall.  
A. It's B. It has C. There is D. There are
- 8.5 \_\_\_\_\_ true that you're moving to Australia?  
A. Is there B. Is it C. Is D. Are you

### Auxiliary Verbs

- 9.1 I haven't seen the movie but my sister \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. does B. is C. has seen D. has E. hasn't
- 9.2 I don't like hot weather, but Megan \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. does B. doesn't C. do D. does like E. likes
- 9.3 “Nicole got married last week.” “\_\_\_\_\_ ? Really?”  
A. Got she B. She got C. She did D. She has
- 9.4 You haven't met my mother, \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
A. haven't you B. have you C. did you D. you have E. you haven't
- 9.5 Bill doesn't watch TV. He doesn't read newspapers \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. too B. either C. neither D. never
- 9.6 “I'd like to go to Australia.” “\_\_\_\_\_.”  
A. So do I B. So am I C. So would I D. Neither do I E. So I would
- 9.7 Sue \_\_\_\_\_ much on weekends.  
A. don't B. doesn't C. don't do D. doesn't do

### Questions

- 10.1 “When \_\_\_\_\_ ?” “I'm not sure. More than 100 years ago.”  
A. did the telephone invent B. was invented the telephone  
C. was the telephone invented D. the telephone was invented

35

36

37

37

38

38

39

40

40

41

41

42

42

43

43

44

45

- 10.2 "I broke my finger last week." "How \_\_\_\_\_ that?"  
A. did you B. you did C. you did do D. did you do 45
- 10.3 Why \_\_\_\_\_ me last night? I was waiting for you to call.  
A. didn't you call B. you no call C. you don't call D. you didn't call 45
- 10.4 "Who \_\_\_\_\_ in this house?" "I don't know."  
A. lives B. does live C. does lives D. living 46
- 10.5 What \_\_\_\_\_ when you told him the story?  
A. said Paul B. did Paul say C. Paul said D. did Paul said 46
- 10.6 "Tom's father is in the hospital." "\_\_\_\_\_?"  
A. In which hospital he is B. In which hospital he is in  
C. Which hospital he is in D. Which hospital is he in 47
- 10.7 Did you have a good vacation? \_\_\_\_\_?  
A. How was the weather like B. What was the weather like  
C. What the weather was like D. Was the weather like 47
- 10.8 \_\_\_\_\_ taller – Bill or Sam?  
A. Who is B. What is C. Which is D. Who has 48
- 10.9 There are four umbrellas here. \_\_\_\_\_ is yours?  
A. What B. Who C. Which D. How E. Which one 48, 76
- 10.10 How long \_\_\_\_\_ to get from Washington to New York by plane?  
A. is it B. does it need C. does it take D. it wants 49
- 10.11 I don't remember what \_\_\_\_\_ at the party.  
A. Dawn was wearing B. was wearing Dawn C. was Dawn wearing 50
- 10.12 "Do you know \_\_\_\_\_?" "Yes, I think so."  
A. if Jack is at home B. is Jack at home C. whether Jack is at home  
D. that Jack is at home 50

### Reported Speech

- 11.1 I saw Steve a week ago. He said \_\_\_\_\_ me but he didn't.  
A. he call B. he call C. he'll call D. he's going to call E. he would call 51
- 11.2 "Why did Tim go to bed so early?" "He \_\_\_\_\_."  
A. said he was tired B. said that he was tired C. said me he was tired  
D. told me he was tired 51

### -ing and to . . .

- 12.1 You shouldn't \_\_\_\_\_ so hard.  
A. working B. work C. to work D. worked 52
- 12.2 I \_\_\_\_\_ now. See you tomorrow.  
A. must to go B. have go C. have to going D. have to go 52
- 12.3 Tina has decided \_\_\_\_\_ her house.  
A. sell B. to sell C. selling D. to selling 53
- 12.4 I don't mind \_\_\_\_\_ early.  
A. get up B. to get up C. getting up D. to getting up 53

- 12.5 Do you like \_\_\_\_\_ early? 53  
A. get up B. to get up C. getting up D. to getting up
- 12.6 Do you want \_\_\_\_\_ you some money? 54  
A. me lend B. me lending C. me to lend D. that I lend
- 12.7 He's very funny. He makes \_\_\_\_\_. 54  
A. me laugh B. me laughing C. me to laugh D. that I laugh
- 12.8 Kelly went to the store \_\_\_\_\_ a newspaper. 55  
A. for buy B. for to buy C. for buying D. to buy E. buy

**Go, get, do, make, and have**

- 13.1 It's a nice day. Let's go \_\_\_\_\_. 56  
A. for a swim B. on a swim C. to swimming D. swimming
- 13.2 I'm sorry your mother is sick. I hope she \_\_\_\_\_ better soon. 57  
A. has B. makes C. gets D. goes
- 13.3 Kate \_\_\_\_\_ the car and drove away. 57  
A. went into B. went in C. got in D. got into
- 13.4 "Shall I open the window?" "No, it's OK. I'll \_\_\_\_\_ it. 58  
A. do B. make C. have
- 13.5 I'm sorry, I \_\_\_\_\_ a mistake. 58  
A. did B. made C. got D. had
- 13.6 "\_\_\_\_\_ a nice weekend?" "Yes, thanks. It was very nice!" 59  
A. Have you B. Had you C. Do you have D. Did you have

**Pronouns and Possessives**

- 14.1 I don't want this book. You can have \_\_\_\_\_. 60, 63  
A. it B. them C. her D. him
- 14.2 Sue and Kevin are going to the movies. Do you want to go with \_\_\_\_\_? 60, 63  
A. her B. they C. them D. him
- 14.3 I saw Mr. and Mrs. Lee with \_\_\_\_\_ daughter. 61, 63  
A. her B. his C. they D. their
- 14.4 Hawaii is famous for \_\_\_\_\_ beaches. 61  
A. his B. its C. it's D. their
- 14.5 I didn't have an umbrella, so Mary gave me \_\_\_\_\_. 62, 63  
A. her B. hers C. her umbrella D. she's
- 14.6 I went to the movies with a friend of \_\_\_\_\_. 62, 63  
A. mine B. my C. me D. I
- 14.7 We had a good vacation. We enjoyed \_\_\_\_\_. 64  
A. us B. our C. ours D. ourselves
- 14.8 Kim and Amy are good friends. They know \_\_\_\_\_ well. 64  
A. each other B. them C. themselves D. themselves

- 14.9 Have you met \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
 A. the wife of Mr. Suzuki    B. Mr. Suzuki wife    C. the wife Mr. Suzuki  
 D. Mr. Suzuki's wife    E. the Mr. Suzuki's wife

65

- 14.10 Have you seen \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
 A. the car of my parents    B. my parent's car    C. my parents' car  
 D. my parents car

65

**A and the**

- 15.1 I'm going to buy \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. hat and umbrella    B. a hat and a umbrella    C. a hat and an umbrella  
 D. an hat and an umbrella
- 15.2 "What do you do?" "\_\_\_\_\_."  
 A. I dentist    B. I'm a dentist    C. I'm dentist    D. I do dentist
- 15.3 I'm going shopping. I need \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. some new jeans    B. a new jeans    C. a new pair of jeans    D. a new pair jeans
- 15.4 I like the people here. \_\_\_\_\_ very friendly.  
 A. She is    B. They are    C. They is    D. It is
- 15.5 I'm very thirsty. I need \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. some water    B. a water    C. a glass of water
- 15.6 I need \_\_\_\_\_ about hotels in Mexico City.  
 A. some information    B. some informations    C. an information
- 15.7 We enjoyed our vacation. \_\_\_\_\_ was very nice.  
 A. Hotel    B. A hotel    C. An hotel    D. The hotel
- 15.8 The table is in \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. middle of room    B. middle of the room    C. the middle of the room  
 D. the middle of room
- 15.9 What did you have for \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
 A. the breakfast    B. breakfast    C. a breakfast
- 15.10 I finish \_\_\_\_\_ at five o'clock every day.  
 A. the work    B. work    C. a work
- 15.11 I never go to \_\_\_\_\_, but I go to the movies a lot.  
 A. the theater    B. theater    C. a theater
- 15.12 We don't eat \_\_\_\_\_ very often.  
 A. the meat    B. meat    C. a meat    D. some meat
- 15.13 \_\_\_\_\_ is in New York.  
 A. The Times Square    B. Times Square
- 15.14 My friends are staying at \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. the Milton Hotel    B. Milton Hotel

66, 68

66

67

67

68, 69

69

70, 71

71

71

71

72

73

74

74

**Determiners and Pronouns**

- 16.1 "I'm going on vacation next week." "Oh, \_\_\_\_\_ nice."  
 A. it's    B. this is    C. that's

75

- 16.2 "Is there a bank near here?" "Yes, there's \_\_\_\_\_ on the corner." 76  
A. some B. it C. one D. a one
- 16.3 This cup is dirty. Can I have \_\_\_\_\_? 76  
A. clean one B. a clean one C. clean D. a clean
- 16.4 There's \_\_\_\_\_ in the fridge. 77  
A. a milk B. some milk C. any milk
- 16.5 "Where's your luggage?" "I don't have \_\_\_\_\_." 77  
A. one B. some C. any
- 16.6 Karen and Steve \_\_\_\_\_. 78, 79  
A. have no children B. don't have no children C. don't have any children  
D. have any children
- 16.7 "How much money do you have?" "\_\_\_\_\_." 78  
A. No B. No one C. Any D. None
- 16.8 There's \_\_\_\_\_ in the room. It's empty. 79, 80  
A. anybody B. nobody C. anyone D. no one
- 16.9 "What did you say?" "\_\_\_\_\_." 79, 80  
A. Nothing B. Nobody C. Anything D. Not anything
- 16.10 I'm hungry. I want \_\_\_\_\_. 80  
A. something for eat B. something to eat C. something for eating
- 16.11 "How often do you read a newspaper?" "\_\_\_\_\_." 81  
A. All day B. All days C. Every days D. Every day
- 16.12 \_\_\_\_\_ friends. 81  
A. Everybody need B. Everybody needs C. Everyone need D. Everyone needs
- 16.13 \_\_\_\_\_ children like to play. 81  
A. Most B. The most C. Most of D. The most of
- 16.14 I like \_\_\_\_\_ those pictures. 83  
A. both B. both of C. either D. either of
- 16.15 I haven't read \_\_\_\_\_ these books. 83  
A. neither B. neither of C. either D. either of
- 16.16 Do you have \_\_\_\_\_ friends? 84  
A. a lot of B. much C. many D. much of E. many of
- 16.17 We like films, so we go to the movies \_\_\_\_\_. 84  
A. a lot of B. much C. many D. a lot
- 16.18 There were \_\_\_\_\_ people in the theatre. It was almost empty. 85  
A. a little B. few C. little D. a few of
- 16.19 They have \_\_\_\_\_ money, but they're not rich. 85  
A. a little B. a few C. few D. little E. little of

### Adjectives and Adverbs

- 17.1 Do you speak any \_\_\_\_\_? 86  
A. foreign languages B. languages foreign C. languages foreigners

- 17.2 He ate his dinner very \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. quick B. quicker C. quickly 87
- 17.3 You speak English very \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. good B. fluent C. well D. slow 87
- 17.4 Helen wants a \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. more big car B. car more big C. car bigger D. bigger car 88
- 17.5 "Do you feel better today?" "No, I feel \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. good B. worse C. more bad D. more worse 88
- 17.6 Athens is older \_\_\_\_\_ Rome.  
A. as B. than C. that D. of 89
- 17.7 I can run faster \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. than him B. that he can C. than he can D. as he can E. as he 89
- 17.8 Tennis isn't \_\_\_\_\_ soccer.  
A. popular as B. popular than C. so popular that D. as popular as 90
- 17.9 The weather today is the same \_\_\_\_\_ yesterday.  
A. as B. that C. than D. like 90
- 17.10 The Best West is \_\_\_\_\_ in town.  
A. the more expensive motel B. the most expensive motel  
C. the motel most expensive D. the motel the more expensive 91
- 17.11 The movie is very bad. I think it's the \_\_\_\_\_ movie I've ever seen.  
A. worse B. baddest C. most bad D. worst E. more worse 91
- 17.12 Why don't you buy a car? You have \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. enough money B. money enough C. enough of money 92
- 17.13 Is your English \_\_\_\_\_ a conversation?  
A. enough good to have B. good enough for have C. enough good for  
D. good enough to have 92
- 17.14 I'm \_\_\_\_\_ out.  
A. too tired for go B. too much tired for going C. too tired to go  
D. too much tired to go 93

**Word Order**

- 18.1 Sue is interested in the news. She \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. reads every day the newspaper B. reads the newspaper every day  
C. every day reads the newspaper 94
- 18.2 "Do you ever take the bus to work?" "No, \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. I go to work always by car B. I go always to work by car  
C. I always go to work by car D. always I go to work by car 95
- 18.3 I'm very healthy. \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. I am sick never B. I am never sick C. I never am sick D. Never I am sick 95
- 18.4 "Where's Diane?" "She \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. isn't here yet B. isn't here already C. isn't here still 96

- 18.5 I locked the door and I gave \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. Liz the keys    B. to Liz the keys    C. the keys to Liz    D. the keys Liz

**Prepositions**

- 19.1 Goodbye! See you \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. Friday    B. at Friday    C. in Friday    D. on Friday
- 19.2 Hurry! The train leaves \_\_\_\_\_ five minutes.  
A. at    B. on    C. from    D. after    E. in
- 19.3 "How long will you be away?" "\_\_\_\_\_ Monday."  
A. On    B. To    C. Until    D. Till    E. Since
- 19.4 We played tennis yesterday. We played \_\_\_\_\_ two hours.  
A. in    B. for    C. since    D. during
- 19.5 I always have breakfast before \_\_\_\_\_ to work.  
A. I go    B. go    C. to go    D. going
- 19.6 Write your name \_\_\_\_\_ the top of the page.  
A. at    B. on    C. in    D. to
- 19.7 There are a lot of apples \_\_\_\_\_ those trees.  
A. at    B. on    C. in    D. to
- 19.8 What's the largest city \_\_\_\_\_ the world?  
A. at    B. on    C. in    D. of
- 19.9 The office is \_\_\_\_\_ the first floor.  
A. at    B. on    C. in    D. to
- 19.10 I want to go \_\_\_\_\_ Mexico next year.  
A. at    B. on    C. in    D. to
- 19.11 I'm staying \_\_\_\_\_ tonight.  
A. home    B. at home    C. to home    D. in home
- 19.12 What time did you arrive \_\_\_\_\_ the hotel?  
A. at    B. on    C. in    D. to
- 19.13 "Where is Dennis in this picture?" "He's \_\_\_\_\_ Bob."  
A. at front of    B. in the front of    C. in front of    D. in front from
- 19.14 I climbed \_\_\_\_\_ the wall and into the yard.  
A. on    B. through    C. across    D. over    E. above
- 19.15 Tracy isn't at work this week. She's \_\_\_\_\_ vacation.  
A. on    B. in    C. for    D. to    E. at
- 19.16 Do you like traveling \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
A. with train    B. with the train    C. in train    D. on train    E. by train
- 19.17 Tina is very bad \_\_\_\_\_ writing letters.  
A. on    B. with    C. at    D. in    E. for
- 19.18 Tom left without \_\_\_\_\_ goodbye.  
A. say    B. saying    C. to say    D. that he said

- 19.19 I never get letters. Nobody writes \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. for me B. to me C. at me D. me
- 19.20 "Do you like to eat in restaurants?" "It depends \_\_\_\_\_ the restaurant."  
A. in B. at C. of D. on E. over

**Two-Word Verbs**

- 20.1 The car stopped and two women got \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. off B. down C. out D. out of
- 20.2 It was cold, so I \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. put on my coat B. put my coat on C. put me my coat D. put my coat
- 20.3 I have Diane's keys. I have to \_\_\_\_\_ to her.  
A. give back they B. give them back C. give back them D. give it back

**Conjunctions and Clauses**

- 21.1 I can't talk to you now. I'll talk to you later when \_\_\_\_\_ more time.  
A. I have B. I had C. I'll have D. I'm going to have
- 21.2 \_\_\_\_\_ late tomorrow, don't wait for me.  
A. If I'm B. If I'll be C. When I'm D. When I'll be
- 21.3 I don't know the answer. If I \_\_\_\_\_ the answer, I'd tell you.  
A. know B. would know C. have known D. knew
- 21.4 I like this jacket. \_\_\_\_\_ it if it weren't so expensive.  
A. I buy B. I'll buy C. I bought D. I'd bought E. I'd buy
- 21.5 Amy lives in a house \_\_\_\_\_ is 100 years old.  
A. who B. that C. which D. what
- 21.6 The people \_\_\_\_\_ work in the office are very friendly.  
A. who B. that C. which D. what
- 21.7 Did you find the book \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
A. who you wanted B. that you wanted C. what you wanted D. you wanted
- 21.8 I met \_\_\_\_\_ can speak six languages.  
A. a woman who B. a woman which C. a woman D. a woman she

108

108

109

110

110

112

113

114

114

115

115

116

116



# Answer Key to Additional Exercises

**1**

3. Kate is a doctor.
4. The children are asleep.
5. Bill isn't hungry.
6. The books aren't (are not) on the table.
7. The hotel is near the station.
8. The bus isn't crowded.

**2**

3. she's (she is)
4. Where are
5. Is he
6. It's (It is)
7. I'm (I am) or I'm not (I am not).  
I'm (I am)
8. What color is
9. Is it
10. Are you
11. How much are

**3**

3. He's taking (He is taking) a bath
4. Are the children playing?
5. Is it raining?
6. They're coming (They are coming) now.
7. Why are you standing here?  
I'm waiting (I am waiting) for somebody.

**4**

4. Chris doesn't want (does not want)
5. Do you want
6. Does Amy live
7. Sarah knows
8. I don't travel (do not travel)
9. do you usually get up
10. They don't go out (do not go out)
11. Adam always leaves
12. does Kim do; She works

**5**

3. She's (She is) a student.
4. She doesn't have (does not have) a car.
5. She goes out a lot.
6. She has a lot of friends.
7. She doesn't like (does not like) Toronto.
8. She likes to dance.
9. She isn't / 's not (She is not) interested in sports.

**6**

1. Are you; do you live; Do you have; old is she
2. How old are you; What do you do; Do you like; Do you have; Do you drive
3. What's (What is) his name; What does he do; Does he live

**7**

4. is 32 years old
5. He has six sisters.
6. We often watch TV at night.
7. Amy never wears a hat.
8. My car has a flat tire. or My car's got (car has got) a flat tire.
9. These flowers are beautiful.
10. Mary speaks German very well.

**8**

3. are you cooking
4. plays
5. I'm leaving (I am leaving)
6. It's raining (It is raining).
7. I don't watch (do not watch)
8. we're looking (we are looking)
9. do you pronounce

**9**

2. we go
3. is shining
4. are you going
5. do you take
6. She writes
7. I never read
8. They're watching
9. She's talking
10. do you usually have
11. He's visiting
12. I don't drink

**10**

- |             |                   |
|-------------|-------------------|
| 2. went     | 7. gave           |
| 3. found    | 8. were           |
| 4. was      | 9. thought        |
| 5. had/took | 10. invited/asked |
| 6. told     |                   |

**11**

3. was good at sports
4. He played basketball.
5. He didn't work (did not work) hard in school.
6. He had a lot of friends.

7. He didn't have (did not have) a bicycle.
8. He wasn't (was not) a quiet child.

**12**

3. How long were you
4. Did you like
5. Where did you stay
6. Was the weather
7. When did you get

**13**

3. I forgot.
4. did you get
5. I didn't speak (did not speak)
6. Did you have
7. he didn't go (did not go)
8. she got
9. did Bob live
10. The meal didn't cost (did not cost)

**14**

2. were working
3. opened
4. rang; was cooking
5. heard; looked
6. was looking; happened
7. wasn't reading (was not reading); was watching
8. didn't read (did not read)
9. finished; paid; left
10. saw; was walking; was waiting

**15**

3. is playing
4. gave
5. doesn't like (does not like)
6. did your family go
7. saw; was driving
8. Do you watch
9. were you doing
10. goes
11. 'm trying (am trying)
12. didn't sleep (did not sleep)

**16**

2. haven't read (have not read) or didn't read (did not read) or 've never read (have never read)
3. Have you seen or Did you see
4. 've had (have had)
5. Have you [ever] been or Did you [ever] go

6. have you lived
7. 've known (have known)
8. 's been raining (has been raining)  
or 's rained (has rained)

### 17

3. has been      6. has he lived
4. for            7. for
5. since          8. 've been (have been)

### 18

Sample sentences:

3. played golf a few times
4. had dinner
5. been to Australia
6. lived here; I was born
7. worked here; three years

### 19

3. bought/got
4. went
5. I've seen (I have seen)
6. was
7. didn't see (did not see)
8. 've never made (have never made)
9. finished / graduated from
10. 's been (has been)
11. was

### 20

3. He's lived (He has lived) there since last May.
4. she left at four o'clock
5. How many times have you been there?
6. I've been/felt (I have been/felt) tired all day
7. It was on the table last night.
8. I've eaten (I have eaten) there many times. or We've (We have) ...
9. What time did they arrive?

### 21

1. was
2. have you had/owned; bought/got
3. have you lived; I lived/was or we lived/were; did you live or were you
4. have you worked/been; did you do; was

### 22

Sample sentences:

2. I didn't go out (did not go out) last night.
3. I was at work yesterday afternoon.
4. I went to a party a few days ago.
5. It was my birthday last week.
6. I went to Europe last year.

### 23

- |      |       |       |
|------|-------|-------|
| 2. B | 7. C  | 12. C |
| 3. D | 8. B  | 13. B |
| 4. A | 9. C  | 14. C |
| 5. A | 10. D | 15. A |
| 6. D | 11. A |       |

### 24

1. was damaged; be torn down
2. was built; is used; is being painted
3. is called; be called; was changed
4. have been made; are produced

### 25

2. is visited
3. were damaged
4. be built
5. 's being cleaned (is being cleaned)
6. be forgotten
7. 's been repaired (has been repaired) or 's had to be repaired (has had to be repaired)
8. be kept
9. Have you ever been bitten
10. was stolen

### 26

2. was stolen last week
3. 're wanted (are wanted) on the phone
4. ice cream has been eaten
5. machine will be repaired
6. 're being watched (are being watched)
7. food has to be bought

### 27

3. pushed
4. was pushed
5. took or 's taken (has taken)
6. 's being repaired (is being repaired)
7. invented
8. was the camera invented
9. did they send
10. be sent

### 28

- |       |      |        |
|-------|------|--------|
| 2. A  | 6. B | 10. A* |
| 3. A* | 7. B | 11. A  |
| 4. B  | 8. A | 12. B  |
| 5. A  | 9. B |        |

\* The present continuous (B) is also possible, but it is less common.

### 29

1. I stayed; did you do; I watched; Are you going out; I'm going (I am going); are you seeing or are you going to see; I don't know (do not

know); I haven't decided (have not decided)

2. have you been; We arrived; are you staying or are you going to stay; do you like; we're having (we are having)
3. I just remembered; Kim called; She always calls or She's always calling (She is always calling); Did she leave; she wants or she wanted; I'll call (I will call); Do you know; I'll get (I will get)
4. I'm going (I am going); Do you want; are you going; Have you ever eaten; 've been (have been); went
5. I lost or I've lost (I have lost); Have you seen; You were wearing; I came in; I'm not wearing (I am not wearing); Have you looked; I'll go (I will go)

### 30

- |      |       |       |
|------|-------|-------|
| 2. A | 8. A  | 14. B |
| 3. B | 9. C  | 15. C |
| 4. C | 10. A | 16. A |
| 5. B | 11. B | 17. C |
| 6. C | 12. A | 18. B |
| 7. B | 13. C |       |

### 31

- |                             |               |
|-----------------------------|---------------|
| 2. a car                    | 6. the movies |
| 3. the refrigerator/ fridge | 7. a taxi     |
| 4. a teacher                | 8. the piano  |
| 5. school                   | 9. computers  |
|                             | 10. the same  |

### 32

- |             |               |
|-------------|---------------|
| 4. a        | 14. the       |
| 5. The      | 15. —; —      |
| 6. a        | 16. the; the  |
| 7. —        | 17. the; —    |
| 8. the; the | 18. —; —      |
| 9. a        | 19. a; an     |
| 10. —       | 20. the; the; |
| 11. the     | the; the      |
| 12. —       | 21. —; —      |
| 13. the     | 22. —; the    |

### 33

- |          |             |
|----------|-------------|
| 2. in    | 11. for     |
| 3. on    | 12. at      |
| 4. at    | 13. in      |
| 5. on    | 14. at      |
| 6. in    | 15. on      |
| 7. since | 16. by      |
| 8. on    | 17. for; on |
| 9. by    | 18. to; in  |
| 10. in   | 19. at; in  |

# Answer Key to Study Guide

## Present

1.1 B	1.10 A
1.2 A	1.11 C
1.3 C	1.12 A
1.4 A	1.13 D
1.5 C/D	1.14 C
1.6 B	1.15 A
1.7 D	1.16 D
1.8 C	1.17 C/D
1.9 C	1.18 A/D

## Past

2.1 B	2.6 D
2.2 E	2.7 A
2.3 D	2.8 B
2.4 B	2.9 C
2.5 A	2.10 C/E

## Present Perfect

3.1 B	3.6 C
3.2 D	3.7 A/D
3.3 E	3.8 A/D
3.4 B	3.9 D
3.5 A	3.10 E

## Passive

4.1 D	4.4 A
4.2 C	4.5 A
4.3 E	

## Verb Forms

5.1 D	5.2 B
-------	-------

## Future

6.1 A	6.6 C
6.2 A	6.7 B
6.3 B	6.8 C
6.4 A/B	6.9 B/C
6.5 B	

## Modals, Imperatives, etc.

7.1 C/D	7.8 C/D
7.2 A/C	7.9 D
7.3 A	7.10 C
7.4 D	7.11 B/D
7.5 C	7.12 A
7.6 B	7.13 B
7.7 D	

## There and it

8.1 B	8.4 A
8.2 E	8.5 B
8.3 A	

## Auxiliary Verbs

9.1 D	9.5 B
9.2 A	9.6 C
9.3 C	9.7 D
9.4 B	

## Questions

10.1 C	10.7 B
10.2 D	10.8 A
10.3 A	10.9 C/E
10.4 A	10.10 C
10.5 B	10.11 A
10.6 D	10.12 A/C

## Reported Speech

11.1 E	11.2 A/B/D
--------	------------

## -ing and to . . .

12.1 B	12.5 B/C
12.2 D	12.6 C
12.3 B	12.7 A
12.4 C	12.8 D

## Go, get, do, make, and have

13.1 A/D	13.4 A
13.2 C	13.5 B
13.3 C/D	13.6 D

## Pronouns and Possessives

14.1 A	14.6 A
14.2 C	14.7 D
14.3 D	14.8 A
14.4 B	14.9 D
14.5 B/C	14.10 C

## A and the

15.1 C	15.8 C
15.2 B	15.9 B
15.3 A/C	15.10 B
15.4 B	15.11 A
15.5 A/C	15.12 B
15.6 A	15.13 B
15.7 D	15.14 A

## Determiners and Pronouns

16.1 C	16.11 D
16.2 C	16.12 B/D
16.3 B	16.13 A
16.4 B	16.14 A/B
16.5 C	16.15 D
16.6 A/C	16.16 A/C
16.7 D	16.17 D
16.8 B/D	16.18 B
16.9 A	16.19 A
16.10 B	

## Adjectives and Adverbs

17.1 A	17.8 D
17.2 C	17.9 A
17.3 C	17.10 B
17.4 D	17.11 D
17.5 B	17.12 A
17.6 B	17.13 D
17.7 A/C	17.14 C

## Word Order

18.1 B	18.4 A
18.2 C	18.5 A/C
18.3 B	

## Prepositions

19.1 A/D	19.11 A/B
19.2 E	19.12 A
19.3 C/D	19.13 C
19.4 B	19.14 D
19.5 A/D	19.15 A
19.6 A	19.16 E
19.7 B	19.17 C
19.8 C	19.18 B
19.9 B	19.19 B/D
19.10 D	19.20 D

## Two-Word Verbs

20.1 C	20.3 B
20.2 A/B	

## Conjunctions and Clauses

21.1 A	21.5 B/C
21.2 A	21.6 A/B
21.3 D	21.7 B/D
21.4 E	21.8 A